

# Introduction to Theoretical Physics

Michał Stanisław Wojcik

December 31, 2022



# Contents

<b>1</b>	<b>Introduction to Physics</b>	<b>11</b>
1.0.1	Planck Units . . . . .	11
1.0.2	Natural Units . . . . .	14
<b>2</b>	<b>Classical Mechanics</b>	<b>17</b>
2.1	Energy . . . . .	17
2.1.1	System with potential energy . . . . .	17
2.1.2	Lagrangian picture . . . . .	18
2.1.3	Hamiltonian picture . . . . .	19
2.2	Euler-Lagrange equation . . . . .	20
2.3	Conservation Principles . . . . .	22
2.3.1	Canonical Momentum Conservation . . . . .	23
2.3.2	Energy Conservation Principle . . . . .	24
2.3.3	Hamilton–Jacobi equation . . . . .	25
2.4	Reduced Mass . . . . .	26
2.5	Statistical Mechanics . . . . .	27
2.5.1	Flux . . . . .	27
2.5.2	Liouville’s equation . . . . .	29
<b>3</b>	<b>Classical Electromagnetism</b>	<b>31</b>
3.1	Introduction . . . . .	31
3.1.1	Maxwell’s equations . . . . .	31
3.1.2	Magnetic Moment . . . . .	32
3.1.3	Magnetic Moment in Inhomogenous Magnetic Field . . . . .	34
3.1.4	Classical Relation Between Angular Momentum and Magnetic Moment . . . . .	35
3.1.5	Lagrangian and Hamiltonian Formulation of Magnetic Field . . . . .	35

<b>4</b>	<b>Special Relativity</b>	<b>39</b>
4.1	Minkowski space-time . . . . .	39
4.2	Lorentz group . . . . .	48
4.2.1	Rotation in $ij$ -plane . . . . .	49
4.2.2	Boost in $0j$ -plane . . . . .	50
4.2.3	Lorentz Group Representation . . . . .	52
4.3	Dynamics . . . . .	52
4.4	Symmetries - Noether's Theorem for Relativistic Fields . . . .	54
<b>5</b>	<b>General Relativity</b>	<b>63</b>
5.1	Basic properties . . . . .	63
5.1.1	Preliminaries . . . . .	63
5.1.2	Tensors . . . . .	63
5.1.3	Metric Tensor . . . . .	63
5.1.4	Christoffel symbols . . . . .	64
5.1.5	Geodesics . . . . .	64
5.1.6	Motionless particle . . . . .	64
5.1.7	The Ricci tensor . . . . .	65
5.1.8	A slow particle in weakly curved empty spacetime: The Newtonian approximation . . . . .	65
5.1.9	Four-velocity . . . . .	67
5.1.10	Static spacetime . . . . .	70
5.1.11	Stress-energy tensor . . . . .	72
<b>6</b>	<b>Quantum Mechanics</b>	<b>75</b>
6.1	Preliminaries . . . . .	75
6.1.1	Free particle (first overview) . . . . .	75
6.2	Quantum theory . . . . .	78
6.2.1	Naive Momentum and Position Operators . . . . .	78
6.2.2	Momentum operator in $n$ -dimensional space . . . . .	78
6.3	Harmonic oscillator (first attempt) . . . . .	80
6.4	Dirac Formulation of Quantum Mechanics . . . . .	82
6.4.1	Observables . . . . .	83
6.4.2	Commuting observables . . . . .	85
6.4.3	Some properties of Dirac $\delta$ . . . . .	87
6.4.4	Representations . . . . .	89
6.4.5	Unitary transformations . . . . .	90
6.4.6	Momentum and Position operators . . . . .	91
6.4.7	Wave packet . . . . .	92
6.5	Schrödinger and Heisenberg equations of motion . . . . .	94
6.5.1	Time independent Hamiltonian . . . . .	94

6.5.2	Time dependent Hamiltonian . . . . .	95
6.6	General Solution of $\frac{\partial}{\partial t}  \phi(t)\rangle = A(t)  \phi(t)\rangle$ . . . . .	97
6.7	Dirac's wave function decomposition . . . . .	98
6.7.1	Classical limit . . . . .	99
6.8	Uncertainty principle . . . . .	99
6.9	Spin formalism . . . . .	101
6.9.1	Pauli matrices and spin of $\frac{1}{2}$ . . . . .	104
6.10	Hydrogen Atom . . . . .	105
6.10.1	Angular Momentum . . . . .	105
6.10.2	Motivation for potential operator . . . . .	108
6.10.3	Proton-electron system . . . . .	108
6.11	Perturbation Theory . . . . .	110
6.11.1	Fermis's golden rule . . . . .	110
6.11.2	Stationary Perturbation . . . . .	118
6.11.3	Degeneracy . . . . .	119
6.11.4	Time-Dependent Perturbation . . . . .	119
<b>7</b>	<b>Quantum Field Theory</b>	<b>121</b>
7.1	Introduction . . . . .	121
7.1.1	Preliminaries . . . . .	121
7.1.2	Creation and annihilation algebra for bosons and fermions	127
7.1.3	Assembly of identical particles . . . . .	132
7.1.4	Non-relativistic interacting particles assembly . . . . .	136
<b>8</b>	<b>Experiments</b>	<b>141</b>
8.1	Secondary Cosmic Rays Detection with Two Geiger-Müller Tubes . . . . .	141
8.1.1	Introduction . . . . .	141
8.1.2	Description of the Experimental Setup . . . . .	142
8.1.3	Background readings . . . . .	143
8.1.4	Differentiating discharges in tubes caused by secondary cosmic ray from random nearly simultaneous discharges	143
8.1.5	Theoretical prediction of muons count rate in our ex- perimental setup . . . . .	145
8.1.6	Experimental symultaneous discharge count rate v. the- oretical muon count rate . . . . .	149
<b>9</b>	<b>Examples</b>	<b>151</b>
9.1	Quantum Probability . . . . .	151

<b>10 Mathematics</b>	<b>153</b>
10.1 Vector Analysis . . . . .	153
10.1.1 Vector Spaces . . . . .	154
10.1.2 Metric Tensor . . . . .	156
10.1.3 Contravariant and covariant coordinates . . . . .	164
10.2 Mathematical Analysis . . . . .	165
10.2.1 Fourier Transforms and Related Theorems . . . . .	170
10.2.2 Euler-Lagrange Equations . . . . .	175
10.3 Spectral Theory . . . . .	178
10.3.1 Spectral Measure . . . . .	178
10.3.2 Spectral Measure - Multidimensional representation . . . . .	182
10.4 Multidimensional Fourier Transform and Schwartz space . . . . .	183
10.4.1 Some important Integrals . . . . .	186
10.5 Theory of Distributions . . . . .	187
10.5.1 Measure Theory Preliminaries . . . . .	187
10.5.2 Topological Preliminaries . . . . .	187
10.5.3 Regular Distributions . . . . .	193
10.5.4 Tempered Distributions . . . . .	196
10.5.5 Schwartz Kernel Theorems . . . . .	199
10.5.6 Properties of $\delta_0$ . . . . .	199
10.6 Holomorphic Functions . . . . .	201
10.7 Tensor Product of Hilbert Spaces (first aproach) . . . . .	203
<b>11 Mathematical Methods</b>	<b>211</b>
11.1 Vector Analysis in $\mathbb{R}^n$ . . . . .	211
11.1.1 $\mathbb{R}^3$ Case . . . . .	211
11.1.2 Introduction to Differential Forms on Manifolds Embedded in Real Coordinate Space . . . . .	214
11.2 Group Theory . . . . .	219
11.2.1 Generators . . . . .	219
11.3 Tensor Analysis . . . . .	221
11.3.1 Vectors and dual vectors . . . . .	221
11.3.2 Tensors . . . . .	221
11.3.3 Manifolds . . . . .	223
11.3.4 Covariant derivative . . . . .	224
11.4 Introduction to Matrix Calculus . . . . .	225
11.4.1 Determinant . . . . .	231
11.5 Review of Statistical Learning Methods . . . . .	238
11.5.1 Linear Regression . . . . .	238
11.5.2 Ridge Regression . . . . .	241

<b>12 Physical Diary</b>	<b>243</b>
12.1 Leeds, Saturday, 13 October 2018 . . . . .	243
12.2 Leeds, Saturday, 20 October 2018 . . . . .	244
12.2.1 Phase Space Interpretation . . . . .	244
12.2.2 Spin . . . . .	246
12.3 Thursday, 1 November 2018 . . . . .	246
12.3.1 Formal derivation of Euler–Lagrange equation . . . . .	246
12.4 Saturday, 3 November 2018 . . . . .	247
12.4.1 Spacetime version of Gauss’s Theorem . . . . .	247
12.4.2 Euler–Lagrange equation for Classic Field Theory . . . . .	248
12.5 Saturday, 10 November 2018 . . . . .	249
12.5.1 Classical Field Theory – Free particle with no field . . . . .	249
12.5.2 Classical Field Theory – Particle in a field with a vector potential . . . . .	250
12.6 Saturday, 17 November 2018 . . . . .	253
12.6.1 The Millikan Oil Drop Experiment . . . . .	253
12.7 Saturday, 8 December 2018 . . . . .	254
12.7.1 Classical picture for studying Einstein-de Haas effect. . . . .	254
12.8 Thursday, 20 December 2018 . . . . .	256
12.8.1 Lifetime of excited states in Hydrogen . . . . .	256
12.9 Sunday, 27 January 2019 . . . . .	256
12.9.1 Momentum conservation in the quantum two-body prob- lem . . . . .	256
12.10 Saturday, 23 February 2019 . . . . .	258
12.10.1 Reduced mass in Quantum Mechanics . . . . .	258
12.11 Thursday, 16 May 2019 . . . . .	260
12.11.1 The electromagnetic field as an infinite system of har- monic oscillators . . . . .	260
12.12 Sunday, 26 May 2019 . . . . .	260
12.12.1 Derivation of the Schrödinger equation from the Ehren- fest theorems . . . . .	260
12.12.2 Ehrenfest theorem . . . . .	260
12.13 Monday, 27 May 2019 . . . . .	261
12.13.1 Hamiltonian of electromagnetic field . . . . .	261
12.14 Tuesday, 28 May 2019 . . . . .	262
12.14.1 Interaction with the orbital angular momentum . . . . .	262
12.15 Tuesday, 2 July 2019 . . . . .	262
12.15.1 Dirac Delta Function in the Context of Fourier Trans- form in Physical Texts . . . . .	262
12.16 Saturday, 3 August 2019 . . . . .	263

12.16.1 Futher investigation in mathematical rigor in Dirac notation . . . . .	263
12.16.2 Plan for rigorous theory which includes Dirac notation	264
12.17 Sunday, 18 August 2019 . . . . .	266
12.17.1 Rigorous Dirac Formulation . . . . .	266
12.18 Monday, 19 August 2019 . . . . .	269
12.18.1 Rigorous Dirac Formulation - Matrix as Distribution .	269
12.19 Friday, 23 August 2019 . . . . .	271
12.19.1 Rigorous Dirac Formulation - continuation (1) . . . . .	272
12.20 Monday, 26 August 2019 . . . . .	275
12.21 Wednesday, 28 August 2019 . . . . .	277
12.21.1 Rigorous Dirac Formulation - continuation (2) . . . . .	277
12.22 Sunday, 8 September 2019 . . . . .	286
12.22.1 Rigged Hilbert Space . . . . .	286
12.23 Sunday, 23 January 2022 . . . . .	287
12.24 Sunday, 07 March 2022 . . . . .	288
12.25 Saturday, 26 November 2022 . . . . .	289



# Preface

These are my private notes which help me to understand and remember some topics from theoretical physics. If you find them useful, it is my pleasure to be helpful in your learning or research process. However, don't be disappointed if not everything is to your liking – they are only my personal notes, which just happen to be placed on [github.com](https://github.com).



# Chapter 1

## Introduction to Physics

### 1.0.1 Planck Units

We will give values of physical constants up to 4 digits in SI units.

$$c = 2.9979 \cdot 10^8 \left[ \frac{m}{s} \right]. \quad (1.0.1.1)$$

$$G = 6.6741 \cdot 10^{-11} \left[ \frac{m^3}{kg \, s^2} \right]. \quad (1.0.1.2)$$

$$\hbar = 1.0546 \cdot 10^{-34} \left[ \frac{kg \, m^2}{s} \right]. \quad (1.0.1.3)$$

$$k_e = 8.9876 \cdot 10^9 \left[ \frac{m^3 \, kg}{s^2 C} \right]. \quad (1.0.1.4)$$

$$k_b = 1.3806 \cdot 10^{-23} \left[ \frac{kg \, m^2}{s^2 K} \right]. \quad (1.0.1.5)$$

Planck units will be  $t_p, l_p, m_p, q_p, T_p$  which satisfies the below 5 equations.

$$l_p = ct_p. \quad (1.0.1.6)$$

$$F_p = \frac{m_p l_p}{t_p^2} = G \frac{m_p^2}{l_p^2}. \quad (1.0.1.7)$$

$$E_p = F_p l_p = \frac{\hbar}{t_p}. \quad (1.0.1.8)$$

$$F_p = k_e \frac{q_p^2}{l_p^2}. \quad (1.0.1.9)$$

$$E_p = k_b T_p. \quad (1.0.1.10)$$

1. Equation (1.0.1.6) says that the light in a vacuum travels length  $l_p$  in time  $t_p$ .
2. Equation (1.0.1.7) introduces Planck unit of force  $F_p$  which by definition is equal to  $m_p$  times acceleration  $\frac{l_p}{t_p^2}$ . Also we require  $F_p$  to be equal to the gravitational force between two physical points with mass  $m_p$  being at distance  $l_p$ .
3. Equation (1.0.1.8) introduces Planck unit of energy as an energy needed to shift an object at distance  $l_p$  with a friction force  $F_p$ . Also we require  $E_p$  to be equal to an energy of photon with an angular frequency  $1/t_p$ .
4. Equation (1.0.1.9) States that the force  $F_p$  is also set to be equal to the electrostatic force between two physical points with charge  $q_p$  being at distance  $l_p$ .
5. Equation (1.0.1.10) provides a mapping from this characteristic microscopic energy  $E_p$  to the macroscopic temperature  $T_p$ .

**Corollary 1.0.1.1.** *In Planck units  $c = G = \hbar = k_e = k_b = 1$ .*

**Theorem 1.0.1.2.** *Equations (1.0.1.6), (1.0.1.7) and (1.0.1.8) are sufficient to uniquely establish  $l_p, t_p, m_p$  as*

$$t_p = \sqrt{\frac{G\hbar}{c^5}}, \quad (1.0.1.11)$$

$$l_p = \sqrt{\frac{G\hbar}{c^3}}, \quad (1.0.1.12)$$

$$m_p = \sqrt{\frac{\hbar c}{G}}. \quad (1.0.1.13)$$

*Proof.* Substituting  $l_p$  with  $ct_p$  in equation (1.0.1.7) leads to relation

$$m_p = t_p \frac{c^3}{G}. \quad (1.0.1.14)$$

On the other hand substituting  $l_p$  with  $ct_p$  in equation (1.0.1.8) leads to relation

$$m_p = \frac{\hbar}{c^2 t_p}. \quad (1.0.1.15)$$

From those two we get directly  $t_p = \sqrt{\frac{G\hbar}{c^5}}$ , which leads to (1.0.1.12) and (1.0.1.13).  $\square$

**Corollary 1.0.1.3.** *Additionally from equations (1.0.1.9) and (1.0.1.10) follows:*

$$q_p = \sqrt{\frac{\hbar c}{k_e}}, \quad (1.0.1.16)$$

$$T_p = \sqrt{\frac{\hbar c^5}{G k_b}}. \quad (1.0.1.17)$$

In equations in Planck units, all mentioned above physical constants are set to 1, like

$$E = \sqrt{p^2 + m^2} \quad (1.0.1.18)$$

or

$$i \frac{d\psi}{dt} = H\psi. \quad (1.0.1.19)$$

Taking the above equations as an example, we will investigate how to reconstruct constants to get equations in SI. In equation (1.0.1.18) we have  $E[\frac{m_p l_p^2}{t_p^2}]$  and  $p[\frac{m_p l_p}{t_p}]$  and  $m[m_p]$ . Thus in SI we need 2 constants  $C_1$  and  $C_2$  such that  $E = \sqrt{C_1^2 p^2 + C_2^2 m^2}$ . We have

$$\frac{m_p l_p^2}{t_p^2} = C_1 \frac{m_p l_p}{t_p} \quad (1.0.1.20)$$

and

$$\frac{m_p l_p^2}{t_p^2} = C_2 m_p. \quad (1.0.1.21)$$

Thus

$$C_1 = \frac{l_p}{t_p} = c. \quad (1.0.1.22)$$

and

$$C_2 = \frac{l_p^2}{t_p^2} = c^2. \quad (1.0.1.23)$$

Therefore equation (1.0.1.18) in SI has a form

$$E = \sqrt{c^2 p^2 + c^4 m^2}. \quad (1.0.1.24)$$

In equation (1.0.1.19) we have  $\frac{d\psi}{dt}[\frac{1}{t_p}]$  and  $H[E_p]$ , thus for SI we need constant  $C$  such that  $iC \frac{d\psi}{dt} = H\psi$ . We have

$$C \frac{1}{t_p} = \frac{\hbar}{t_p}, \quad (1.0.1.25)$$

Thus

$$C = \hbar. \quad (1.0.1.26)$$

Therefore equation (1.0.1.19) in SI has a form

$$i\hbar \frac{d\psi}{dt} = H\psi. \quad (1.0.1.27)$$

## 1.0.2 Natural Units

Assume we have a unit of energy  $U_E$ . We will express time, length and momentum as powers of  $U_E$ .

**Definition 1.0.2.1.** *The unit of length  $1U_E^{-1}$  is equal to a wavelength of a photon with energy of  $2\pi U_E$ .*

**Definition 1.0.2.2.** *The unit of time  $1U_E^{-1}$  is equal to the period of the wave of a photon with energy of  $2\pi U_E$ .*

**Corollary 1.0.2.3.** *In the above units  $c = 1$ .*

**Corollary 1.0.2.4.** *In the above units  $\hbar = 1$*

*Proof.* For a photon, we have

$$E = \frac{2\pi\hbar c}{\lambda}, \quad (1.0.2.1)$$

where  $E$  is energy of the photon and  $\lambda$  is a wavelength. We already established that  $c = 1$ , thus

$$\hbar = \frac{E}{2\pi}\lambda. \quad (1.0.2.2)$$

The above equation holds for a photon with energy  $2\pi U_E$  but such a photon, by Definition 1.0.2.1 has a wavelength  $1U_E^{-1}$ . Thus, after substitution to (1.0.2.2) we get  $\hbar = 1$ .  $\square$

**Proposition 1.0.2.5.** *To covert length of  $1U_E^{-1}$  to units system  $X$ , one needs to calculate in the units system  $X$*

$$\lambda = \frac{\hbar c}{U_E}. \quad (1.0.2.3)$$

*Proof.* Follows from the equation (1.0.2.2). □

**Proposition 1.0.2.6.** *To covert time of  $1U_E^{-1}$  to units system  $X$ , one needs to calculate in the units system  $X$*

$$t = \frac{\hbar}{U_E}. \quad (1.0.2.4)$$

*Proof.* Follows directly from the Definition (1.0.2.2). □

**Definition 1.0.2.7.** *The unit of mass  $1U_E$  is equal to the mass of an object with an rest energy  $U_E$ .*

**Proposition 1.0.2.8.** *To covert mass of  $1U_E$  to units system  $X$ , one needs to calculate in the units system  $X$*

$$m = \frac{U_E}{c^2}. \quad (1.0.2.5)$$

*Proof.* Follows from the equation  $E = mc^2$ . □

**Definition 1.0.2.9.** *The unit of momentum  $1U_E$  is equal to the magnitude of momentum of a photon in an energy  $U_E$ .*

**Proposition 1.0.2.10.** *To convert momentum of  $1U_E$  to units system  $X$ , one needs to calculate in the units system  $X$*

$$p = \frac{U_E}{c}. \quad (1.0.2.6)$$

**Definition 1.0.2.11.** *The unit of force  $1U_E^2$  is equal to the force which is equivalent to the change of  $1U_E$  momentum in  $1U_E^{-1}$  time.*

**Proposition 1.0.2.12.** *To convert a force of  $1U_E^2$  to units of system  $X$ , one needs to calculate in the units of system  $X$*

$$F = \frac{U_E^2}{\hbar c}. \quad (1.0.2.7)$$

*Proof.* By Proposition (1.0.2.10) and Proposition (1.0.2.6) □

Assume that we will take  $Q = \sqrt{\varepsilon_0 \hbar c}$  in SI as our unit of electric charge. Let's calculate a force  $F$  with which 2  $Q$  charges will repel each other from the distance of  $1U_E^{-1}$ . Let's do calculations in  $SI$ .

$$F = \frac{(\sqrt{\varepsilon_0 \hbar c})^2}{4\pi \varepsilon_0 \left(\frac{\hbar c}{U_E}\right)^2} = \frac{1}{4\pi} \frac{U_E^2}{\hbar c}. \quad (1.0.2.8)$$

That means that in units  $U_E$ ,  $F = \frac{1}{4\pi} U_E^2$ . Therefore that equation for the Coulomb force in units  $U_E$  is

$$F = \frac{q^2}{4\pi r^2}, \quad (1.0.2.9)$$

where  $q$  is charge dimensionless (or  $U_E^0$ ) and  $r$  is in  $U_E^{-1}$ . From that follows that in  $U_E$  system  $\varepsilon_0 = 1$ .

**Proposition 1.0.2.13.** *To convert 1 unit of electric charge to the units of system  $X$ , one needs to calculate in units of system  $X$*

$$Q = \sqrt{\varepsilon_0 \hbar c} \quad (1.0.2.10)$$

For example in SI  $Q = 5.290817690 \cdot 10^{-19} C$ . Since elementary charge (electron charge) in SI is

$$e = 1.60218 \cdot 10^{-19} C, \quad (1.0.2.11)$$

$e = 0.3028221209$  dimensionless in units  $U_E$ .

Note that we established a system where time and length have dimension  $U_E^{-1}$ , mass, energy and momentum have dimension  $U_E$ , force has dimension  $U_E^2$  and charge is dimensionless. Moreover

$$\boxed{\hbar = c = \varepsilon_0 = 1} \quad (1.0.2.12)$$

and elementary charge is 0.3028221209.



# Chapter 2

## Classical Mechanics

### 2.1 Energy

#### 2.1.1 System with potential energy

In the considerations below, we will not distinguish between column and row vectors. We will consider a system of particles, which positions will be denoted by

$$q = [\vec{q}_1 \quad \vec{q}_2 \quad \dots \quad \vec{q}_n] \quad (2.1.1.1)$$

where

$$\vec{q}_i = [q_i^1 \quad q_i^2 \quad q_i^3]. \quad (2.1.1.2)$$

We consider  $q$  as dependent on  $t$ . By  $\dot{q}$  we denote  $\frac{dq}{dt}$ .

Let

$$F = [\vec{F}_1 \quad \vec{F}_2 \dots \vec{F}_n] \quad (2.1.1.3)$$

where  $\vec{F}_i$  is a force acting on  $i$ -th particle.

Assume that we have some scalar value  $V$  which depends on  $q$  and

$$F = -\frac{\partial V}{\partial q}. \quad (2.1.1.4)$$

By this we assume that for our system of particles forces depend only on position of particles.

Assume now that our system evolve from a state  $q_0$  at  $t = t_0$  to a state  $q_1$  at  $t = t_1$ . Let's try to calculate work of the forces  $F$  when system changed from  $q_0$  to  $q_1$  for an arbitrary evolution in time  $q(t)$  with this constrain only

that  $q(t_0) = q_0$  and  $q(t_1) = q_1$ .

$$W = \int_{t_0}^{t_1} F \cdot \frac{dq}{dt} dt = - \int_{t_0}^{t_1} \frac{\partial V}{\partial q} \cdot \frac{dq}{dt} dt = - \int_{t_0}^{t_1} \frac{dV}{dt} dt = V(q_0) - V(q_1). \quad (2.1.1.5)$$

$$\boxed{W = V(q_0) - V(q_1)} \quad (2.1.1.6)$$

That's why we call  $V$  a potential energy in a state  $q$ . The energy that the forces of system needs to use is independent on the path of evolution. You can know this just but subtracting respectively potential energy of an start point and end point.

### 2.1.2 Lagrangian picture

Assume that the system from Subsection 2.1.1 is described by Lagrangian

$$L = T - V. \quad (2.1.2.1)$$

Where  $T$  is a kinetic energy of the system

$$T = \sum_{i=1}^n \frac{1}{2} m_i |\dot{q}_i|^2. \quad (2.1.2.2)$$

And we know about  $V$  only that it is dependent only on  $q$ . Now, let's check what we can get from Euler-Lagrange equation

$$\frac{\partial L}{\partial q} - \frac{d}{dt} \frac{\partial L}{\partial \dot{q}} = 0. \quad (2.1.2.3)$$

Firstly, note that it translates into

$$-\frac{\partial V}{\partial q} - \frac{d}{dt} \frac{\partial T}{\partial \dot{q}} = 0, \quad (2.1.2.4)$$

hence

$$\frac{d}{dt} \frac{\partial T}{\partial \dot{q}} = -\frac{\partial V}{\partial q}. \quad (2.1.2.5)$$

Note that

$$\frac{\partial T}{\partial \dot{q}_i} = m_i \dot{q}_i, \quad (2.1.2.6)$$

thus

$$\frac{d}{dt} \frac{\partial T}{\partial \dot{q}_i} = m_i \ddot{q}_i = \vec{F}_i. \quad (2.1.2.7)$$

Where  $\vec{F}_i$  is just a newtonian dynamical force, which can be measured just by mass times acceleration.

From that we get

$$F = -\frac{\partial V}{\partial q}, \quad (2.1.2.8)$$

which is the equation (2.1.1.4) and thus the rest of the Subsection 2.1.1 applies, so we can call  $V$  potential energy.

Because  $L$  doesn't depend on  $t$ , we get

$$L - \frac{\partial L}{\partial \dot{q}} \dot{q} = \text{const.} \quad (2.1.2.9)$$

The above follows immediately from Noether Theorem (Theorem 10.2.2.3) but also can be derived directly from calculating  $\frac{d}{dt}(L - \frac{\partial L}{\partial \dot{q}} \dot{q})$  and applying (2.1.2.3) to  $\frac{dL}{dt}$ .

$$\frac{\partial L}{\partial \dot{q}} \dot{q} = \frac{\partial T}{\partial \dot{q}} \dot{q} = \sum_{i=1}^n \frac{\partial T}{\partial \dot{\vec{q}}_i} \cdot \dot{\vec{q}}_i = \sum_{i=1}^n m_i |\dot{\vec{q}}_i|^2 = 2T. \quad (2.1.2.10)$$

Thus  $L - 2T = \text{const}$ , from which by (2.1.2.1) follows immediately

$$T + V = \text{const.} \quad (2.1.2.11)$$

Which is energy conservation principle.

### 2.1.3 Hamiltonian picture

Assume that the system from Subsection 2.1.1 is described by Hamiltonian

$$H = T + V, \quad (2.1.3.1)$$

where  $V$  is defined like in Subsection 2.1.2 and

$$T = \sum_{i=1}^n \frac{1}{2m_i} |\vec{p}_i|^2. \quad (2.1.3.2)$$

System satisfies Hamilton's equations:

$$\frac{\partial H}{\partial q} = -\dot{p}, \quad (2.1.3.3)$$

$$\frac{\partial H}{\partial p} = \dot{q}. \quad (2.1.3.4)$$

Let's try to calculate  $\ddot{q}$ .

$$\begin{aligned}\ddot{q}_i &= \frac{d}{dt} \frac{\partial H}{\partial \vec{p}_i} = \frac{\partial^2 H}{\partial \vec{p}_i \partial t} + \frac{\partial^2 H}{\partial \vec{p}_i \partial q} \frac{dq}{dt} + \frac{\partial^2 H}{\partial \vec{p}_i \partial p} \frac{dp}{dt} \\ &= \frac{\partial^2 H}{\partial \vec{p}_i \partial p} \dot{p} = \frac{\partial^2 H}{\partial \vec{p}_i \partial \vec{p}_i} \dot{\vec{p}}_i = \frac{1}{m_i} \dot{\vec{p}}_i.\end{aligned}\quad (2.1.3.5)$$

Thus

$$m_i \ddot{q}_i = \dot{\vec{p}}_i. \quad (2.1.3.6)$$

Therefore, from definition  $\vec{F}_i = \dot{\vec{p}}_i$  and  $F = \dot{p}$ . Hence, from (2.1.3.4)

$$F = -\frac{\partial V}{\partial q}, \quad (2.1.3.7)$$

which is the equation (2.1.1.4) and thus the rest of the Subsection 2.1.1 applies, so we can call  $V$  potential energy. Note that

$$\frac{d}{dt} H = \frac{\partial H}{\partial t} + \frac{\partial H}{\partial q} \dot{q} + \frac{\partial H}{\partial p} \dot{p} = \frac{\partial H}{\partial q} \frac{\partial H}{\partial p} - \frac{\partial H}{\partial p} \frac{\partial H}{\partial q} = 0. \quad (2.1.3.8)$$

Thus  $H = \text{const}$  and it immediately follows from (2.1.3.1) that

$$T + V = \text{const}. \quad (2.1.3.9)$$

Which is energy conservation principle.

## 2.2 Euler-Lagrange equation

We will give now more abstract treatment of classical mechanics. We will still use generalised trajectory  $q$  as defined in (2.1.1.1). We will assume we have a real value  $L$  which depends on values of generalised vectors  $q$ ,  $\dot{q}$  and  $t$ . It is our intention to show how  $L$  encodes the whole mechanics of the system.

Let's define an action functional

$$S(t_0, q_0, t_1, q_1, q) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \int_{t_0}^{t_1} L(q(t), \dot{q}(t), t) dt, \quad (2.2.0.1)$$

where  $q_0$  is a generalised starting position of system of particles,  $q_1$  is a generalised ending position of system of particles,  $t_0$  is start time,  $t_1$  is end time and by  $q$  we denote an arbitrary trajectory for which  $q_0 = q(t_0)$  and

$q_1 = q(t_1)$ . Note that by trajectory we understand positions in function of time, then in this sense trajectory encodes both position in given time and velocity as first derivative of  $q$ .

It should be noted that  $q$  in equations is slightly ambiguous. Once it denotes trajectory, other time position.

We define our mechanics by assumption that only those trajectories are “allowed” which are stationary trajectories of  $S$  for established  $t_0, q_0, t_1, q_1$ . Trajectory  $q$  is stationary in the above sense if for any infinitesimal variation  $\delta q$  such that  $\delta q(t_0) = \delta q(t_1) = 0$ , we have  $\delta S \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} S(q + \delta q) - S(q) = 0$  (i.e. difference in  $S$  is 0 up to order of magnitude of  $\delta q$ ).

Let us calculate  $\delta S$  in case of general infinitesimal variation  $\delta q$  not necessarily assuming that  $\delta q(t_0) = \delta q(t_1) = 0$  (we will deal with this assumption later).

$$\begin{aligned} \delta S &= \int_{t_0}^{t_1} \frac{\partial L}{\partial q} \delta q + \frac{\partial L}{\partial \dot{q}} \delta \dot{q} dt = \int_{t_0}^{t_1} \left( \frac{\partial L}{\partial q} - \frac{d}{dt} \frac{\partial L}{\partial \dot{q}} \right) \delta q + \frac{d}{dt} \left( \frac{\partial L}{\partial \dot{q}} \delta q \right) dt = \\ &= \int_{t_0}^{t_1} \left( \frac{\partial L}{\partial q} - \frac{d}{dt} \frac{\partial L}{\partial \dot{q}} \right) \delta q dt + \frac{\partial L}{\partial \dot{q}} \delta q \Big|_{t_0}^{t_1}. \end{aligned} \quad (2.2.0.2)$$

Thus, we got

$$\boxed{\delta S = \int_{t_0}^{t_1} \left( \frac{\partial L}{\partial q} - \frac{d}{dt} \frac{\partial L}{\partial \dot{q}} \right) \delta q dt + \frac{\partial L}{\partial \dot{q}} \delta q \Big|_{t_0}^{t_1}} \quad (2.2.0.3)$$

Now, for an arbitrary infinitesimal variation which satisfies  $\delta q(t_0) = \delta q(t_1) = 0$  the equation (2.2.0.3) becomes:

$$\delta S = \int_{t_0}^{t_1} \left( \frac{\partial L}{\partial q} - \frac{d}{dt} \frac{\partial L}{\partial \dot{q}} \right) \delta q dt. \quad (2.2.0.4)$$

Hence if we want  $\delta S = 0$  we can deduce from  $\delta q$  being arbitrary that the stationary trajectory  $q$  needs to satisfy the following equation:

$$\frac{\partial L}{\partial q} - \frac{d}{dt} \frac{\partial L}{\partial \dot{q}} = 0. \quad (2.2.0.5)$$

This is Euler-Lagrange equation.

## 2.3 Conservation Principles

In this section we will replace  $\vec{q}_i$  notation with  $\mathbf{q}_i$  notation, as the latter seems to be more convenient. In this sense our generic trajectory  $q$  of  $N$  particles is

$$q = [\mathbf{q}_1 \dots \mathbf{q}_N], \quad (2.3.0.1)$$

where  $\mathbf{q}_i$  are time dependent. Consider an infinitesimal symmetry transformation of  $\mathbb{R}^3$

$$\mathbf{x} \mapsto \mathbf{x} + \delta \mathbf{x}, \quad (2.3.0.2)$$

where in a generic form (written in Einstein's summation convention)

$$\delta x^n = \delta \varepsilon (G_m^n x^m + a^n) \quad (2.3.0.3)$$

with  $G$  is a generator of a certain symmetry group. This infinitesimal symmetry shifts the whole system of particles in direction  $-\delta \mathbf{x}$ . Under these shift the trajectories will transform in the following way

$$q \mapsto q + \delta q, \quad (2.3.0.4)$$

where

$$\delta q_i^n = \delta \varepsilon (G_m^n q_i^m + a^n). \quad (2.3.0.5)$$

We will show now how the assumption that lagrangian  $L$  of the system remains invariant under this transformation leads to certain conservation principles.

Assume that

$$L(q, \dot{q}, t) - L(q + \delta q, \dot{q} + \delta \dot{q}, t) = 0. \quad (2.3.0.6)$$

Thus

$$\frac{\partial L}{\partial q} \delta q + \frac{\partial L}{\partial \dot{q}} \delta \dot{q} = 0. \quad (2.3.0.7)$$

Recall Euler-Lagrange equation

$$\frac{\partial L}{\partial q} - \frac{d}{dt} \frac{\partial L}{\partial \dot{q}} = 0. \quad (2.3.0.8)$$

Thus we know that  $\frac{\partial L}{\partial q} = \frac{d}{dt} \frac{\partial L}{\partial \dot{q}}$  and we substitute  $\frac{\partial L}{\partial q}$  in (2.3.0.7) accordingly obtaining:

$$\frac{d}{dt} \frac{\partial L}{\partial \dot{q}} \delta q + \frac{\partial L}{\partial \dot{q}} \delta \dot{q} = 0. \quad (2.3.0.9)$$

But this is the same as

$$\frac{d}{dt}\left(\frac{\partial L}{\partial \dot{q}}\delta q\right) = 0, \quad (2.3.0.10)$$

from which follows a conservation principle

$$\boxed{\frac{\partial L}{\partial \dot{q}}\delta q = \text{const}} \quad (2.3.0.11)$$

### 2.3.1 Canonical Momentum Conservation

Assume that  $L$  is invariant over translations of  $\mathbb{R}^3$ . Thus (2.3.0.11) holds for

$$\delta q_i^n = \delta \varepsilon a^n \quad (2.3.1.1)$$

where  $\mathbf{a}$  has  $a^n = 0$  for all  $n \neq n_0$  and  $a^{n_0} = 1$ , where  $n_0$  is an arbitrary coordinate  $n_0 = 1, 2, 3$ . Hence

$$\sum_{i=1}^N \frac{\partial L}{\partial \dot{q}_i^{n_0}} = \text{const.} \quad (2.3.1.2)$$

along each coordinate  $n_0 = 1, 2, 3$ . Thus

$$\boxed{\sum_{i=1}^N \frac{\partial L}{\partial \dot{\mathbf{q}}_i} = \text{const.}} \quad (2.3.1.3)$$

The expression  $\frac{\partial L}{\partial \dot{\mathbf{q}}_i}$  is called a *conjugate* or *canonical* momentum of an  $i$ -th particle of a system.

Note that for a particular example of Lagrangian from 2.1.2.1, we have

$$\frac{\partial L}{\partial \dot{\mathbf{q}}_i} = m_i \mathbf{q}_i. \quad (2.3.1.4)$$

Hence, under the assumption that potential  $V$  is invariant under space translation (e.g. for gravitational multiparticle potential  $V = \frac{1}{2} \sum_{i \neq j} G \frac{m_i m_j}{|\mathbf{q}_i - \mathbf{q}_j|}$ ), we have

$$\sum_{i=1}^N m_i \mathbf{q}_i = \text{const.} \quad (2.3.1.5)$$

This is of course a classical mechanical momentum conservation principle.

### 2.3.2 Energy Conservation Principle

We will show now how the assumption that Lagrangian  $L$  doesn't depend on time leads to energy conservation principle. Assume that  $\frac{\partial L}{\partial t} = 0$ . In general, we have

$$\frac{d}{dt}L = \frac{\partial L}{\partial q}\dot{q} + \frac{\partial L}{\partial \dot{q}}\ddot{q} + \frac{\partial L}{\partial t}, \quad (2.3.2.1)$$

but because of our assumption, we get

$$\frac{d}{dt}L = \frac{\partial L}{\partial q}\dot{q} + \frac{\partial L}{\partial \dot{q}}\ddot{q}. \quad (2.3.2.2)$$

Because of Lagrange equation, we have  $\frac{\partial L}{\partial q} = \frac{d}{dt}\frac{\partial L}{\partial \dot{q}}$  and thus we can substitute  $\frac{\partial L}{\partial q}$  in the above equation accordingly obtaining:

$$\frac{d}{dt}L = \frac{d}{dt}\frac{\partial L}{\partial \dot{q}}\dot{q} + \frac{\partial L}{\partial \dot{q}}\ddot{q}, \quad (2.3.2.3)$$

which simplifies to

$$\frac{d}{dt}L = \frac{d}{dt}\left(\frac{\partial L}{\partial \dot{q}}\dot{q}\right), \quad (2.3.2.4)$$

and thus

$$\frac{d}{dt}\left(\frac{\partial L}{\partial \dot{q}}\dot{q} - L\right) = 0. \quad (2.3.2.5)$$

And this gives us a conservation principle

$$\boxed{\frac{\partial L}{\partial \dot{q}}\dot{q} - L = \text{const}} \quad (2.3.2.6)$$

We will call  $\frac{\partial L}{\partial \dot{q}}\dot{q} - L$  an energy of a system of particles with Lagrangian  $L$ .

Note that we obtained this earlier for a particular example of Lagrangian (2.1.2.1) by calculations in (2.1.2.10). In that case we had

$$\frac{\partial L}{\partial \dot{q}}\dot{q} - L = T + V, \quad (2.3.2.7)$$

where  $T$  was a kinetic energy of a system and  $V$  its potential energy. Recall that the mentioned Lagrangian does not depend on time which is in perfect agreement with our generic derivation.



### 2.3.3 Hamilton–Jacobi equation

Let's analyse an action functional  $S$  as defined in (2.2.0.1) but now we will be only interested in action along stationary trajectories  $q$ . That's why we will see  $S$  as dependent only on  $t_0, q_0, t_1, q_1$ . For the purpose of notation we will replace  $t_1$  and  $q_1$  by  $t$  and  $q$ . This will introduce ambiguity between  $q$  as trajectory and  $q$  as ending point of trajectory  $q = q(t)$ , but this ambiguity is not problematic if we remember about it.

Let's fix  $q_0$  and  $t_0$ . In this context  $S$  depends on end position  $q$  and end time  $t$ . Consider an infinitesimal variation  $\delta q$  of trajectory  $q$  such that  $\delta q(t_0) = 0$  where  $q + \delta q$  is also stationary.

Let's quote the equation (2.2.0.3)

$$\delta S = \int_{t_0}^t \left( \frac{\partial L}{\partial q} - \frac{d}{dt} \frac{\partial L}{\partial \dot{q}} \right) \delta q dt' + \frac{\partial L}{\partial \dot{q}} \delta q \Big|_{t_0}^t. \quad (2.3.3.1)$$

Because trajectory  $q$  is stationary, Euler-Lagrange equation holds and we have

$$\delta S = \frac{\partial L}{\partial \dot{q}} \delta q \Big|_{t_0}^t = \frac{\partial L}{\partial \dot{q}} \delta q(t). \quad (2.3.3.2)$$

If we see  $S$  as dependedn on  $t$  and  $q$ , then  $dq = \delta q(t)$  and thus

$$\boxed{\frac{\partial S}{\partial q} = \frac{\partial L}{\partial \dot{q}}} \quad (2.3.3.3)$$

Analise  $S$  along stationary trajectory  $q$ . Then we have

$$\frac{dS}{dt} = \frac{\partial S}{\partial q} \dot{q} + \frac{\partial S}{\partial t}. \quad (2.3.3.4)$$

On the other hand

$$\frac{dS}{dt} = L. \quad (2.3.3.5)$$

Thus

$$\frac{\partial S}{\partial t} = L - \frac{\partial S}{\partial q} \dot{q} = L - \frac{\partial L}{\partial \dot{q}} \dot{q} = -H, \quad (2.3.3.6)$$

where  $H$  is a Hamiltonian (if exists). Then, when hamiltonian  $H(q, p, t)$  exists action functional  $S$  satisfies the following equation, known as Hamilton-Jacobi equation:

$$\boxed{-\frac{\partial S}{\partial t} = H\left(q, \frac{\partial S}{\partial q}, t\right)} \quad (2.3.3.7)$$

## 2.4 Reduced Mass

Consider Lagrangian

$$L(q, \dot{q}) = \frac{1}{2}m_1(\dot{\vec{q}}_1)^2 + \frac{1}{2}m_2(\dot{\vec{q}}_2)^2 + V(|\vec{q}_1 - \vec{q}_2|). \quad (2.4.0.1)$$

We apply convention similar as in Subsection 2.1.1, where  $q = [\vec{q}_1, \vec{q}_2]$ . Recall that we say that,  $q_0$  extremises  $L$ , if  $\int_{t_0}^{t_1} L(q_0, \dot{q}_0)$  is a local extremum for all evolutions  $q$  for which  $q(t_0) = q_0(t_0)$  and  $q(t_1) = q_0(t_1)$  for any moments of time  $t_0, t_1$ .

Take any constant velocity  $\vec{v}$  and constant point  $c_0$ . Let

$$\vec{x}_i := \vec{q}_i + t\vec{v} + c_0 \text{ for } i = 1, 2. \quad (2.4.0.2)$$

Following our convention  $x = [\vec{x}_1, \vec{x}_2]$ . First, we will show that

**Fact 2.4.0.1.**  $x$  extremises  $L(x, \dot{x})$  if and only if  $q$  extremises  $L(q, \dot{q})$ .

Obviously  $V$  part of  $L$  stays the same as  $\vec{q}_1 - \vec{q}_2 = \vec{x}_1 - \vec{x}_2$ . Let's calculate

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{1}{2}m_1(\dot{\vec{x}}_1)^2 + \frac{1}{2}m_2(\dot{\vec{x}}_2)^2 &= \\ \frac{1}{2}m_1(\dot{\vec{q}}_1)^2 + \frac{1}{2}m_2(\dot{\vec{q}}_2)^2 + (m_1\dot{\vec{q}}_1 + m_2\dot{\vec{q}}_2) \cdot \vec{v} + (m_1 + m_2)(\vec{v})^2. \end{aligned} \quad (2.4.0.3)$$

Assume that  $q$  maximises  $L$ . From Noether Theorem, we know that  $\frac{\partial L}{\partial \dot{\vec{q}}} = \text{const}$ , which is a momentum conservation principle, thus  $m_1\dot{\vec{q}}_1 + m_2\dot{\vec{q}}_2 = \text{const}$ . Hence,

$$\frac{1}{2}m_1(\dot{\vec{x}}_1)^2 + \frac{1}{2}m_2(\dot{\vec{x}}_2)^2 = \frac{1}{2}m_1(\dot{\vec{q}}_1)^2 + \frac{1}{2}m_2(\dot{\vec{q}}_2)^2 + \text{const}. \quad (2.4.0.4)$$

And from that

$$L(q, \dot{q}) = L(x, \dot{x}) + \text{const}. \quad (2.4.0.5)$$

From the above  $x$  extremises  $L$ . The situation is symmetric if we want to show that  $x$  extremises  $L$  implies  $q$  extremises  $L$ . This means that for Lagrangian of type (2.4.0.1) any change of coordinates between frames of reference moving with constant velocity relative to each other does not change the Lagrangian of the system.

From the statement above follows that without loss of generality in case of the Lagrangian of type (2.4.0.1), we can always assume that the center of the mass is in the point  $(0, 0, 0)$ , i.e.

$$m_1 \vec{q}_1 + m_2 \vec{q}_2 = 0 \quad (2.4.0.6)$$

Now, if we take

$$\vec{r} := \vec{q}_1 - \vec{q}_2, \quad (2.4.0.7)$$

from equations (2.4.0.6) and (2.4.0.7), we have

$$\begin{cases} \vec{q}_1 = \frac{m_2}{m_1 + m_2} \vec{r}, \\ \vec{q}_2 = -\frac{m_1}{m_1 + m_2} \vec{r}. \end{cases} \quad (2.4.0.8)$$

Now, after simple calculation

$$L = \frac{1}{2} \frac{m_1 m_2}{m_1 + m_2} (\dot{\vec{r}})^2 + V(|\vec{r}|). \quad (2.4.0.9)$$

Hence  $\vec{r}$  evolves in the same way as one particle of mass

$$\boxed{m = \frac{m_1 m_2}{m_1 + m_2}} \quad (2.4.0.10)$$

In a central force field  $\vec{F} = -\frac{\partial V}{\partial \vec{r}}$ . We call  $m$  a reduced mass.

## 2.5 Statistical Mechanics

### 2.5.1 Flux

Let  $\rho(t, x)$  will be a density of a certain abstract continous entity in time  $t$  and point  $x \in \mathbb{R}^n$ . Let  $\vec{v}(t, x)$  will be a velocity of an infinitesimal element of the continous entity in time  $t$  at point  $x \in \mathbb{R}^n$ . The current of the continous entity is

$$\vec{j} = \rho \vec{v}. \quad (2.5.1.1)$$

Imagine an infinitesimal  $n - 1$ -dimensional almost hyperplanar surfice elment  $dS$  with it's normal unit vector  $\vec{n}$ . We will try to calculate an amount of the continous entity  $dm$  which flew through surface  $dS$  in the direction of the arrow of  $\vec{n}$  during infenitesimal time  $\Delta t$ .

If we consider an infinitesimal element of the entity, the component of its movement which is in a plane of  $dS$  doesn't play any role in its going through surface element  $dS$ . Since  $\vec{v} \cdot \vec{n}$  is a component of velocity  $\vec{v}$  which is perpendicular to  $dS$ , this is the velocity with which the entity passes through  $dS$ . Thus

$$\Delta m = \rho dS \Delta t (\vec{v} \cdot \vec{n}). \quad (2.5.1.2)$$

Hence

$$\Delta m = \vec{j} \cdot \vec{n} dS \Delta t. \quad (2.5.1.3)$$

If we take any nice enough connected open  $\Omega \subset \mathbb{R}^n$  with compact closure. We assume that entity is conserved in time, which simply means that it's not disappearing anywhere. Thus, the entity gain inside  $\Omega$  during time  $\Delta t$  must be equal to the negative total flux of the entity through  $\partial\Omega$ . Thus

$$\int_{\Omega} \rho(t + \Delta t, x) dx - \int_{\Omega} \rho(t, x) dx = - \int_{\partial\Omega} \Delta m = - \Delta t \int_{\partial\Omega} \vec{j} \cdot \vec{n} dS. \quad (2.5.1.4)$$

Hence

$$\int_{\Omega} \frac{\partial \rho}{\partial t} dx = - \int_{\partial\Omega} \vec{j} \cdot \vec{n} dS. \quad (2.5.1.5)$$

Note that the reasoning above has sense, because by continuity of  $\rho$  the change of  $\rho$  during time  $\Delta t$  is infinitesimal while at the same time

$$\frac{\rho(t + \Delta t, x) - \rho(t, x)}{\Delta t} = \frac{\partial \rho}{\partial t}(x, t)$$

is a significant value because of differentiability of  $\rho$  over  $t$ . We need as well assume continuity of  $\frac{\partial \rho}{\partial t}(x, t)$  to be able to go with differentiation under the integral.

Now by Theorem 11.1.2.17 (Gauss's Theorem), we have

$$\int_{\Omega} \frac{\partial \rho}{\partial t} dx = - \int_{\Omega} \nabla \cdot \vec{j} dx. \quad (2.5.1.6)$$

Since  $\Omega$  can be arbitrary, we have

$$\boxed{\frac{\partial \rho}{\partial t} = - \nabla \cdot \vec{j}} \quad (2.5.1.7)$$

This is the relation between current and density of any continuous entity which is conserved in time.

### 2.5.2 Liouville's equation

Consider a phase space with hamiltonian  $H$ . Let's recall Hamilton equations

$$\frac{\partial H}{\partial x} = -\dot{p}, \quad (2.5.2.1)$$

$$\frac{\partial H}{\partial p} = \dot{x}. \quad (2.5.2.2)$$

For convenience, in phase space we usually use Poisson brackets

$$\{f, g\} := \sum_i \frac{\partial f}{\partial x_i} \frac{\partial g}{\partial p_i} - \frac{\partial g}{\partial x_i} \frac{\partial f}{\partial p_i}. \quad (2.5.2.3)$$

Let  $\vec{v} = (\dot{x}, \dot{p}) = (\frac{\partial H}{\partial p}, -\frac{\partial H}{\partial x})$  be a velocity of a point in phase space. Assume that we have certain probability density of position and momentum  $f(t, x, p)$ . Let  $\vec{j} = f(t, x, p)\vec{v}$  be a current of probability. We assume that probability is conserved in time. Which means

$$\frac{\partial f}{\partial t} = -\nabla \cdot \vec{j}. \quad (2.5.2.4)$$

Now,

$$\begin{aligned} \nabla \cdot \vec{j} &= \left( \frac{\partial}{\partial x}, \frac{\partial}{\partial p} \right) \cdot \left( f \frac{\partial H}{\partial p}, -f \frac{\partial H}{\partial x} \right) = \\ &= \frac{\partial f}{\partial x} \cdot \frac{\partial H}{\partial p} + f \frac{\partial H}{\partial x} \cdot \frac{\partial H}{\partial p} - \frac{\partial f}{\partial p} \cdot \frac{\partial H}{\partial x} - f \frac{\partial H}{\partial p} \cdot \frac{\partial H}{\partial x} = \\ &= \frac{\partial f}{\partial x} \cdot \frac{\partial H}{\partial p} - \frac{\partial f}{\partial p} \cdot \frac{\partial H}{\partial x} = \{f, H\}. \end{aligned} \quad (2.5.2.5)$$

Thus the time evolution of probability density is described by Liouville's equation

$$\boxed{\frac{\partial f}{\partial t} = -\{f, H\}} \quad (2.5.2.6)$$



# Chapter 3

## Classical Electromagnetism

### 3.1 Introduction

#### 3.1.1 Maxwell's equations

Despite we are in the realm of classical theory we will still use Plank units. We are all the time able to restore constants.

**Definition 3.1.1.1.** *We say that in some region  $\Omega$  there exists an electric field  $\vec{E} : \Omega \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^3$ , if in each point of  $\Omega$  a force  $\vec{F} = q\vec{E}$  acts on an test charge  $q$ .*

**Definition 3.1.1.2.** *We say that in some region  $\Omega$  there exists a magnetic field  $\vec{B} : \Omega \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^3$ , if in each point of  $\Omega$  a force  $\vec{F} = q\vec{v} \times \vec{B}$  acts on a test charge moving with a velocity  $\vec{v}$ .*

According to Maxwell's theory relations between charge, electric field and magnetic field are governed by four Maxwell's equations.

$$\nabla \cdot \vec{E} = 4\pi\rho. \quad (3.1.1.1)$$

$$\nabla \cdot \vec{B} = 0. \quad (3.1.1.2)$$

$$\nabla \times \vec{E} = -\frac{\partial \vec{B}}{\partial t}. \quad (3.1.1.3)$$

$$\nabla \times \vec{B} = 4\pi \vec{J} + \frac{\partial \vec{E}}{\partial t}. \quad (3.1.1.4)$$

Where  $\rho$  is electric charge density in space and  $\vec{J}$  is an electric charge current in space.

### 3.1.2 Magnetic Moment

Imagine a closed circuit  $\Gamma$ . Let  $(\Gamma, \vec{l})$  be an orientation of the circuit consistent with direction of movement of positive charges. Consider an infinitesimal element  $ds$  of  $\Gamma$ . Define a strength of electric current as

$$I = \frac{dq}{dt}. \quad (3.1.2.1)$$

where  $dq$  is a portion of charge which passes through element  $ds$  in time  $dt$ . Assume that the strength of electric current is constant through the whole circuit  $\Gamma$ .

Let's investigate what is an infinitesimal force  $d\vec{F}$  acting on an infinitesimal element  $ds$  in the presence of magnetic field  $\vec{B}$ . Let's calculate a velocity  $\vec{v}$  of an infinitesimal charge  $dq$  in an infinitesimal element  $ds$  of the circuit  $\Gamma$ .

$$\vec{v} = \frac{(ds)\vec{l}}{dt}. \quad (3.1.2.2)$$

Thus

$$d\vec{F} = dq\vec{v} \times \vec{B} = \frac{dq(ds)\vec{l}}{dt} \times \vec{B} = I(ds)\vec{l} \times \vec{B}. \quad (3.1.2.3)$$

$$\boxed{d\vec{F} = I(ds)\vec{l} \times \vec{B}} \quad (3.1.2.4)$$

Assume that  $\Gamma$  is an edge of certain  $C^1$  surface  $(S, \vec{n})$  oriented consistently with  $\Gamma$ . We will calculate torque  $\vec{M}$  which homogenous magnetic field  $\vec{B}$  exerts on  $\Gamma$ .

$$\vec{M} = \int_{\Gamma} \vec{r} \times d\vec{F}. \quad (3.1.2.5)$$



Thus

$$\begin{aligned}
 \vec{M} &= I \int_{\Gamma} \vec{r} \times ((ds)\vec{l} \times \vec{B}) = I \int_{\Gamma} [x_1, x_2, x_3] \times ([dx_1, dx_2, dx_3] \times [B_1, B_2, B_3]) = \\
 &\quad I \int_{\Gamma} \\
 &\quad [B_2x_2dx_1 - B_1x_2dx_2 + B_3x_3dx_1 - B_1x_3dx_3, \\
 &\quad - B_2x_1dx_1 + B_1x_1dx_2 + B_3x_3dx_2 - B_2x_3dx_3, \\
 &\quad - B_3x_1dx_1 + B_1x_1dx_3 - B_3x_2dx_2 + B_2x_2dx_3]
 \end{aligned} \tag{3.1.2.6}$$

By Stokes Theorem (Theorem 11.1.2.14), we have:

$$\begin{aligned}
 \vec{M} &= I \int_S \\
 &\quad [B_3dx_3 \wedge dx_1 - B_2dx_1 \wedge dx_2, \\
 &\quad B_1dx_1 \wedge dx_2 - B_3dx_2 \wedge dx_3, \\
 &\quad B_2dx_2 \wedge dx_3 - B_1dx_3 \wedge dx_1]
 \end{aligned} \tag{3.1.2.7}$$

Now, by Example 11.1.2.16, we have

$$\begin{aligned}
 \vec{M} &= I \int_S \\
 &\quad [n_2B_3 - n_3B_2, \\
 &\quad n_3B_1 - n_1B_3, \\
 &\quad n_1B_2 - n_2B_1]dS \\
 &= I \int_S \vec{n} \times \vec{B}dS = (I \int_S \vec{n}dS) \times \vec{B}.
 \end{aligned} \tag{3.1.2.8}$$

Thus

$$\vec{M} = (I \int_S \vec{n}dS) \times \vec{B}. \tag{3.1.2.9}$$

Equation (3.1.2.9) tells us two important things. 1.  $\vec{M}$  doesn't depend on choice of a central point, and thus total force exerted by homogenous magnetic field  $\vec{B}$  on  $\Gamma$  is  $\vec{F} = 0$ . 2.  $I \int_S \vec{n}dS$  doesn't depend on choice of

surface  $S$ . Then we can define magnetic moment  $\vec{\mu}$  of circuit  $\Gamma$ .

$$\boxed{\vec{\mu} := I \int_S \vec{n} dS} \quad (3.1.2.10)$$

$$\boxed{\vec{M} = \vec{\mu} \times \vec{B}} \quad (3.1.2.11)$$

Note that if  $\Gamma$  is contained in plane,  $\vec{\mu}$  is perpendicular to the plane and from its tip the positive current is going counter-clockwise, moreover  $\|\vec{\mu}\| = IS$  where  $S$  is an area cut by circuit  $\Gamma$ .

### 3.1.3 Magnetic Moment in Inhomogenous Magnetic Field

Imagine a closed circuit  $\Gamma$  in inhomogenous magnetic field  $\vec{B}$ . Let  $(\Gamma, \vec{l})$  be an orientation of the circuit consistent with direction of movemet of positive charges. By equation (3.1.2.4) the force exerted on the circiut is

$$\begin{aligned} \vec{F} &= \int_{\Gamma} I(ds) \vec{l} \times \vec{B} = \\ &I \int_{\Gamma} [B_3 dx_2 - B_2 dx_3, B_1 dx_3 - B_3 dx_1, B_2 dx_1 - B_1 dx_2] \end{aligned} \quad (3.1.3.1)$$

Assume that  $\Gamma$  is an edge of certain  $C^1$  surface  $(S, \vec{n})$  oriented consistently with  $\Gamma$ . We will prepare to use Stokes's Theorem (Theorem 11.1.2.14). Let's do a bit of form calculus (see 11.1.2)

$$\begin{aligned} d(B_3 dx_2 - B_2 dx_3) &= \\ &\frac{\partial B_3}{\partial x_1} dx_1 \wedge dx_2 + \frac{\partial B_3}{\partial x_3} dx_3 \wedge dx_2 \\ &- \frac{\partial B_2}{\partial x_1} dx_1 \wedge dx_3 - \frac{\partial B_2}{\partial x_2} dx_2 \wedge dx_3 = \\ &\frac{\partial B_3}{\partial x_1} dx_1 \wedge dx_2 - \frac{\partial B_3}{\partial x_3} dx_2 \wedge dx_3 \\ &+ \frac{\partial B_2}{\partial x_1} dx_3 \wedge dx_1 - \frac{\partial B_2}{\partial x_2} dx_2 \wedge dx_3 \end{aligned} \quad (3.1.3.2)$$

By Maxwell Equation (3.1.1.2)  $\nabla \cdot \vec{B} = 0$ . Thus

$$d(B_3 dx_2 - B_2 dx_3) = \frac{\partial B_1}{\partial x_1} dx_2 \wedge dx_3 + \frac{\partial B_2}{\partial x_1} dx_3 \wedge dx_1 + \frac{\partial B_3}{\partial x_1} dx_1 \wedge dx_2. \quad (3.1.3.3)$$

Hence

$$F_1 = \int_S \frac{\partial \vec{B}}{\partial x_1} \cdot \vec{n} dS. \quad (3.1.3.4)$$

Making analogous calculations for the rest of coordinates of  $\vec{F}$ , we get

$$F_i = \int_S \frac{\partial \vec{B}}{\partial x_i} \cdot \vec{n} dS \text{ for } i = 1, 2, 3. \quad (3.1.3.5)$$

Assuming that  $\nabla \vec{B}$  is changing insignificantly within the size of circuit  $\Gamma$ , we can write

$$F_i = \vec{\mu} \cdot \frac{\partial \vec{B}}{\partial x_i} \text{ for } i = 1, 2, 3. \quad (3.1.3.6)$$

### 3.1.4 Classical Relation Between Angular Momentum and Magnetic Moment

Consider one particle with mass  $m$  and charge  $q$  moving around in a circle of radius  $r$  with velocity  $v$ . Angular Momentum of such a particle is

$$\vec{L} = rmv\vec{n} \quad (3.1.4.1)$$

where  $\vec{n}$  is a unit vector normal to the plane of rotation from which tip the rotation is counter-clockwise.

The electric current caused by circulation of the charge is  $I = \frac{qv}{2\pi r}$ . As we proved in the subsection 3.1.2, the magnetic moment will be  $\vec{\mu} = \pi r^2 I \vec{n} = \frac{1}{2} qrv\vec{n}$ . Thus we have a relation

$$\vec{\mu} = \frac{q}{2m} \vec{L}. \quad (3.1.4.2)$$

Because of additivity the equation above is also true for rotating rigid body with charge and mass homogeneously distributed.

### 3.1.5 Lagrangian and Hamiltonian Formulation of Magnetic Field

In this subsection we will use bold font to indicate space vectors. Let  $\mathbf{x}$  indicate trajectory of the charged particle, we assume that  $\mathbf{x}$  is dependent on time  $t$ .

Assume that Lagrangian for the charged particle with charge  $q$  and mass  $m$  is

$$L = \frac{m\dot{\mathbf{x}}^2}{2} + q(\mathbf{A} \cdot \dot{\mathbf{x}}), \quad (3.1.5.1)$$

where  $\mathbf{A}$  is a vector field (vector dependent on position). In case of analysing trajectory, we can assume that  $\mathbf{A}$  depends on  $\mathbf{x}$ . Vector  $\mathbf{A}$  is usually called a vector potential.

Let's recall Euler-Lagrange equation, which is satisfied along trajectory  $\mathbf{x}$ :

$$\frac{\partial L}{\partial \mathbf{x}} - \frac{d}{dt} \frac{\partial L}{\partial \dot{\mathbf{x}}} = 0. \quad (3.1.5.2)$$

Since  $\mathbf{A}$  depends on  $\mathbf{x}$  note that

$$\frac{\partial L}{\partial \mathbf{x}} = q \sum_{k=1}^3 \frac{\partial A_k}{\partial \mathbf{x}} \dot{x}_k, \quad (3.1.5.3)$$

Also, note that

$$\frac{\partial L}{\partial \dot{\mathbf{x}}} = m\dot{\mathbf{x}} + q\mathbf{A}, \quad (3.1.5.4)$$

and

$$\frac{d}{dt} \frac{\partial L}{\partial \dot{\mathbf{x}}} = m\ddot{\mathbf{x}} + q \frac{\partial \mathbf{A}}{\partial \mathbf{x}} \dot{\mathbf{x}}. \quad (3.1.5.5)$$

Mind that in the above equation  $\frac{\partial \mathbf{A}}{\partial \mathbf{x}}$  is simply a Jacobian matrix acting on vector  $\dot{\mathbf{x}}$ .

From Euler-Lagrange equation, we have then

$$m\ddot{\mathbf{x}} = q \sum_{k=1}^3 \frac{\partial A_k}{\partial \mathbf{x}} \dot{x}_k - q \frac{\partial \mathbf{A}}{\partial \mathbf{x}} \dot{\mathbf{x}}. \quad (3.1.5.6)$$

Let's see the above equation in the index notation:

$$m\ddot{x}_i = q \sum_{k=1}^3 \left( \frac{\partial A_k}{\partial x_i} \dot{x}_k - \frac{\partial A_i}{\partial x_k} \dot{x}_k \right) = q \sum_{k=1}^3 \dot{x}_k \left( \frac{\partial A_k}{\partial x_i} - \frac{\partial A_i}{\partial x_k} \right). \quad (3.1.5.7)$$

Note that for  $i = k$ , we have  $\frac{\partial A_k}{\partial x_i} - \frac{\partial A_i}{\partial x_k} = 0$ . Thus,

$$m\ddot{x}_i = q \sum_{k \in \{1,2,3\} \setminus \{i\}} \dot{x}_k \left( \frac{\partial A_k}{\partial x_i} - \frac{\partial A_i}{\partial x_k} \right). \quad (3.1.5.8)$$

Let's define a new vector field  $\mathbf{B} = \nabla \times \mathbf{A}$ , which means simply that

$$B_1 = \frac{\partial A_3}{\partial x_2} - \frac{\partial A_2}{\partial x_3}, \quad (3.1.5.9)$$

$$B_2 = \frac{\partial A_1}{\partial x_3} - \frac{\partial A_3}{\partial x_1}, \quad (3.1.5.10)$$

$$B_3 = \frac{\partial A_2}{\partial x_1} - \frac{\partial A_1}{\partial x_2}. \quad (3.1.5.11)$$

[Compare the above with (12.5.2.20)].

Then from equation 3.1.5.6, we have:

$$m\ddot{x}_1 = q\dot{x}_2\left(\frac{\partial A_2}{\partial x_1} - \frac{\partial A_1}{\partial x_2}\right) + q\dot{x}_3\left(\frac{\partial A_3}{\partial x_1} - \frac{\partial A_1}{\partial x_3}\right) = q(\dot{x}_2 B_3 - \dot{x}_3 B_2), \quad (3.1.5.12)$$

$$m\ddot{x}_2 = q\dot{x}_1\left(\frac{\partial A_1}{\partial x_2} - q\frac{\partial A_2}{\partial x_1}\right) + \dot{x}_3\left(\frac{\partial A_3}{\partial x_2} - \frac{\partial A_2}{\partial x_3}\right) = q(-\dot{x}_1 B_3 + \dot{x}_3 B_1), \quad (3.1.5.13)$$

$$m\ddot{x}_3 = q\dot{x}_1\left(\frac{\partial A_1}{\partial x_3} - \frac{\partial A_3}{\partial x_1}\right) + q\dot{x}_2\left(\frac{\partial A_2}{\partial x_3} - \frac{\partial A_3}{\partial x_2}\right) = q(\dot{x}_1 B_2 - \dot{x}_2 B_1). \quad (3.1.5.14)$$

Now, we can go back to vector notation to get:

$$m\ddot{\mathbf{x}} = q(\dot{\mathbf{x}} \times \mathbf{B}), \quad (3.1.5.15)$$

which is a well known equation of force exerted by magnetic field  $\mathbf{B}$  on particle with charge  $q$  and velocity  $\dot{\mathbf{x}}$ .

Let's now find Hamiltonian. Generally, under  $\mathbf{p} = \frac{\partial L}{\partial \dot{\mathbf{x}}}$ , we have

$$H = \mathbf{p} \cdot \dot{\mathbf{x}}(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{p}, t) - L(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{p}, t). \quad (3.1.5.16)$$

We have

$$\mathbf{p} = m\dot{\mathbf{x}} + q\mathbf{A}, \quad (3.1.5.17)$$

thus

$$\dot{\mathbf{x}} = \frac{1}{m}(\mathbf{p} - q\mathbf{A}). \quad (3.1.5.18)$$

On the other hand,

$$L = \frac{m\dot{\mathbf{x}}^2}{2} + q(\mathbf{A} \cdot \dot{\mathbf{x}}) = \frac{(\mathbf{p} - q\mathbf{A})^2}{2m} + \frac{q\mathbf{A} \cdot (\mathbf{p} - q\mathbf{A})}{m}. \quad (3.1.5.19)$$

Hence,

$$H = \frac{\mathbf{p} \cdot (\mathbf{p} - q\mathbf{A})}{m} - \frac{(\mathbf{p} - q\mathbf{A})^2}{2m} - \frac{q\mathbf{A} \cdot (\mathbf{p} - q\mathbf{A})}{m}, \quad (3.1.5.20)$$

which simplifies to

$$H = \frac{1}{2m}(\mathbf{p} - q\mathbf{A})^2. \quad (3.1.5.21)$$

# Chapter 4

## Special Relativity

### 4.1 Minkowski space-time

**Definition 4.1.0.1.** We call a tensor  $g_{\mu\nu}$  Minkowski metric tensor iff  $g_{00} = 1$ ,  $g_{ii} = -1$  for  $i = 1, 2, 3$  and  $g_{\mu\nu} = 0$  for  $\mu \neq \nu$ .

Note that if we treat  $g$  as matrix, then

$$g = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & -1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & -1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & -1 \end{bmatrix}. \quad (4.1.0.1)$$

**Definition 4.1.0.2.** We will say that a tensor  $\Lambda^\mu{}_\nu$  preserves Minkowski metric tensor iff

$$g_{\mu\nu} = g_{\alpha\beta} \Lambda^\alpha{}_\mu \Lambda^\beta{}_\nu \quad (4.1.0.2)$$

**Definition 4.1.0.3.** Two contravariant vectors  $A^\mu$  and  $B^\mu$  are said to be orthogonal iff

$$g_{\nu\mu} A^\mu B^\nu = 0, \quad (4.1.0.3)$$

i.e.

$$A^0 B^0 - A^1 B^1 - A^2 B^2 - A^3 B^3 = 0. \quad (4.1.0.4)$$

**Definition 4.1.0.4.**

$$\mathcal{Q}(A^\mu) = g_{\mu\nu} A^\mu A^\nu. \quad (4.1.0.5)$$

**Lemma 4.1.0.5.** If  $\hat{x}^\mu$  and  $x^\mu$  are two set of axes for which  $\hat{x}^\mu = \Lambda^\mu{}_\alpha x^\alpha$ , then

$$\frac{\partial \hat{x}^\mu}{\partial x^\nu} = \Lambda^\mu{}_\nu. \quad (4.1.0.6)$$

It is good to visualize  $\Lambda^\mu{}_\nu$  as matrix.

$$\Lambda^\mu{}_\nu = \begin{bmatrix} \Lambda^0_0 & \Lambda^0_1 & \Lambda^0_2 & \Lambda^0_3 \\ \Lambda^1_0 & \Lambda^1_1 & \Lambda^1_2 & \Lambda^1_3 \\ \Lambda^2_0 & \Lambda^2_1 & \Lambda^2_2 & \Lambda^2_3 \\ \Lambda^3_0 & \Lambda^3_1 & \Lambda^3_2 & \Lambda^3_3 \end{bmatrix}. \quad (4.1.0.7)$$

**Proposition 4.1.0.6.** *If  $\hat{x}^\mu$  and  $x^\mu$  are two set of axes for which  $\hat{x}^\mu = \Lambda^\mu{}_\alpha x^\alpha$ , the following conditions are equivalent:*

1.  $\Lambda^\mu{}_\nu$  preserves Minkowski metric tensor.
2.  $g_{\mu\nu}x^\mu x^\nu = g_{\mu\nu}\hat{x}^\mu \hat{x}^\nu$  in each point.
3. Contravariants vectors  $\Lambda^\mu_0, \Lambda^\mu_1, \Lambda^\mu_2, \Lambda^\mu_3$  are pairwise orthogonal and  $\mathcal{Q}(\Lambda^\mu_0) = 1$  and  $\mathcal{Q}(\Lambda^\mu_1) = \mathcal{Q}(\Lambda^\mu_2) = \mathcal{Q}(\Lambda^\mu_3) = -1$ .

**Proposition 4.1.0.7.** *If  $\Lambda^\mu{}_\nu$  preserves Minkowski metric tensor, then*

$$\begin{bmatrix} \Lambda^0_0 & -\Lambda^1_0 & -\Lambda^2_0 & -\Lambda^3_0 \\ -\Lambda^0_1 & \Lambda^1_1 & \Lambda^2_1 & \Lambda^3_1 \\ -\Lambda^0_2 & \Lambda^1_2 & \Lambda^2_2 & \Lambda^3_2 \\ -\Lambda^0_3 & \Lambda^1_3 & \Lambda^2_3 & \Lambda^3_3 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} \Lambda^0_0 & \Lambda^0_1 & \Lambda^0_2 & \Lambda^0_3 \\ \Lambda^1_0 & \Lambda^1_1 & \Lambda^1_2 & \Lambda^1_3 \\ \Lambda^2_0 & \Lambda^2_1 & \Lambda^2_2 & \Lambda^2_3 \\ \Lambda^3_0 & \Lambda^3_1 & \Lambda^3_2 & \Lambda^3_3 \end{bmatrix} = I. \quad (4.1.0.8)$$

**Definition 4.1.0.8.**

$$\Lambda_\nu{}^\mu = \begin{bmatrix} \Lambda^0_0 & -\Lambda^1_0 & -\Lambda^2_0 & -\Lambda^3_0 \\ -\Lambda^0_1 & \Lambda^1_1 & \Lambda^2_1 & \Lambda^3_1 \\ -\Lambda^0_2 & \Lambda^1_2 & \Lambda^2_2 & \Lambda^3_2 \\ -\Lambda^0_3 & \Lambda^1_3 & \Lambda^2_3 & \Lambda^3_3 \end{bmatrix}.$$

**Proposition 4.1.0.9.** *If  $\Lambda^\mu{}_\nu$  preserves Minkowski metric tensor and  $\hat{x}^\mu, x^\mu$  are two set of axes for which  $\hat{x}^\mu = \Lambda^\mu{}_\alpha x^\alpha$ , then the following are true:*

1.  $\Lambda^\alpha{}_\mu \Lambda_\beta{}^\mu = \Lambda_\beta{}^\mu \Lambda^\alpha{}_\mu = \delta^\alpha_\beta$ .
2.  $x^\mu = \Lambda_\nu{}^\mu \hat{x}^\nu$ .
3.  $\Lambda_\nu{}^\mu$  preserves Minkowski metric tensor.

Assume that  $\hat{x}^\mu = \Lambda^\mu{}_\alpha x^\alpha$  such that  $\hat{x}^2 = x^2$  and  $\hat{x}^3 = x^3$ . Then

$$\Lambda^\mu{}_\nu = \begin{bmatrix} \Lambda^0_0 & \Lambda^0_1 & 0 & 0 \\ \Lambda^1_0 & \Lambda^1_1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}. \quad (4.1.0.9)$$



Note that

$$\begin{cases} \hat{x}^0 = \Lambda^0_0 x^0 + \Lambda^0_1 x^1, \\ \hat{x}^1 = \Lambda^1_0 x^0 + \Lambda^1_1 x^1. \end{cases} \quad (4.1.0.10)$$

$$\begin{cases} x^0 = \Lambda^0_0 \hat{x}^0 - \Lambda^1_0 \hat{x}^1, \\ x^1 = -\Lambda^0_1 \hat{x}^0 + \Lambda^1_1 \hat{x}^1. \end{cases} \quad (4.1.0.11)$$

By Preposition 4.1.0.6 (c) applied to  $\Lambda^\mu_\nu$ , we have  $(\Lambda^0_0)^2 - (\Lambda^1_0)^2 = 1$ , thus

$$\Lambda^1_0 = \pm((\Lambda^0_0)^2 - 1)^{1/2}. \quad (4.1.0.12)$$

It follows that  $(\Lambda^0_0)^2 \geq 1$ .

By Preposition 4.1.0.6 (c) applied to  $\Lambda_\mu^\nu$ , we have  $(\Lambda^1_0)^2 - (\Lambda^1_1)^2 = -1$ . Thus  $(\Lambda^0_0)^2 - (\Lambda^1_1)^2 = 0$  and

$$\Lambda^1_1 = \pm\Lambda^0_0. \quad (4.1.0.13)$$

By Preposition 4.1.0.6 (c) column vectors from  $\Lambda^\mu_\nu$  are orthogonal, thus

$$\Lambda^0_0 \Lambda^0_1 = \Lambda^1_0 \Lambda^1_1. \quad (4.1.0.14)$$

So, if  $\Lambda^1_1 = \Lambda^0_0$ , then

$$\Lambda^1_0 = \pm((\Lambda^0_0)^2 - 1)^{1/2}, \quad (4.1.0.15)$$

$$\Lambda^0_1 = \pm((\Lambda^0_0)^2 - 1)^{1/2}. \quad (4.1.0.16)$$

If  $\Lambda^1_1 = -\Lambda^0_0$ , then

$$\Lambda^1_0 = \pm((\Lambda^0_0)^2 - 1)^{1/2}, \quad (4.1.0.17)$$

$$\Lambda^0_1 = \mp((\Lambda^0_0)^2 - 1)^{1/2}. \quad (4.1.0.18)$$

Thus we have 2 possibilities:

$$\Lambda^\mu_\nu = \begin{bmatrix} \Lambda^0_0 & \pm((\Lambda^0_0)^2 - 1)^{1/2} & 0 & 0 \\ \pm((\Lambda^0_0)^2 - 1)^{1/2} & \Lambda^0_0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}. \quad (4.1.0.19)$$

or

$$\Lambda^\mu_\nu = \begin{bmatrix} \Lambda^0_0 & \mp((\Lambda^0_0)^2 - 1)^{1/2} & 0 & 0 \\ \pm((\Lambda^0_0)^2 - 1)^{1/2} & -\Lambda^0_0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}. \quad (4.1.0.20)$$

Note that in case (4.1.0.19),  $\det(\Lambda^\mu{}_\nu) = 1$ , while in case (4.1.0.20)  $\det(\Lambda^\mu{}_\nu) = -1$ .

Note that coordinates  $(t, 0, 0, 0)$  in  $x^\mu$  translates into  $(\Lambda^0{}_0 t, \Lambda^1{}_0 t, 0, 0)$  in  $\hat{x}^\mu$ . On the other hand  $(t, 0, 0, 0)$  in  $\hat{x}^\mu$  translates into  $(\Lambda^0{}_0 t, -\Lambda^0{}_1 t, 0, 0)$  in  $x^\mu$ .

If we want to interpret transformation  $\Lambda^\mu{}_\nu$  as a change of axes in a physical experiment, we need to impose additional conditions. We need to require:

$$\boxed{\Lambda^0{}_0 \geq 1}, \quad (4.1.0.21)$$

and  $\Lambda^1{}_0$  needs to have the same sign as  $\Lambda^0{}_1$ , which is equivalent to

$$\boxed{\det(\Lambda^\mu{}_\nu) = 1}. \quad (4.1.0.22)$$

Let

$$\boxed{\beta = -\frac{\Lambda^0{}_1}{\Lambda^0{}_0} \text{ be a velocity of a particle } (\Lambda^0{}_0 t, -\Lambda^0{}_1 t, 0, 0) \text{ in } x^\mu},$$

which corresponds to the particle  $(t, 0, 0, 0)$  in  $\hat{x}^\mu$ . Then

$$\beta^2 = \frac{(\Lambda^0{}_0)^2 - 1}{(\Lambda^0{}_0)^2}, \quad (4.1.0.23)$$

Thus

$$\Lambda^0{}_0 = (1 - \beta^2)^{-1/2}. \quad (4.1.0.24)$$

We will usually denote

$$\boxed{\gamma = (1 - \beta^2)^{-1/2}}.$$

We can finally write the  $\Lambda^\mu{}_\nu$  in a form:

$$\Lambda^\mu{}_\nu = \begin{bmatrix} \gamma & -\beta\gamma & 0 & 0 \\ -\beta\gamma & \gamma & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix} \quad (4.1.0.25)$$

Thus once again we will write transformations explicitly:

$$\boxed{\begin{cases} \hat{x}^0 = \gamma x^0 - \beta\gamma x^1, \\ \hat{x}^1 = -\beta\gamma x^0 + \gamma x^1. \end{cases}} \quad (4.1.0.26)$$

$$\boxed{\begin{cases} x^0 = \gamma \hat{x}^0 + \beta \gamma \hat{x}^1, \\ x^1 = \beta \gamma \hat{x}^0 + \gamma \hat{x}^1. \end{cases}} \quad (4.1.0.27)$$

Let's rewrite (4.1.0.26) using  $t$  for time and  $x$  for one space dimension.

$$\begin{cases} \hat{t} = \gamma t - \beta \gamma x, \\ \hat{x} = x \gamma - \beta \gamma t. \end{cases} \quad (4.1.0.28)$$

Assume that  $\beta \ll 1$ , such that  $\beta^2$  vanishes. It is easy to show that with this assumption  $1 - \gamma$  also vanishes and thus we can write

$$\begin{cases} \hat{t} = t - \beta x, \\ \hat{x} = x - \beta t. \end{cases} \quad (4.1.0.29)$$

It is not yet clear how this relates to Galilean transformation, because of potentially non-vanishing shift in time.

We will show that any „slowly” moving particle will be described in the frame reference  $\hat{x}^\mu$  according to Galilean transformation with an approximation to the first order.

Let's assume we have a „slowly” moving particle with equation of motion  $t \rightarrow (t, \beta_0 t, 0, 0)$  in the frame  $x^\mu$  where  $\beta_0^2$  vanishes. Let's observe the trajectory of this particle in the frame  $\hat{x}^\mu$ :

$$\begin{cases} \hat{t} = t - \beta \beta_0 t, \\ \hat{x} = \beta_0 t - \beta t. \end{cases} \quad (4.1.0.30)$$

But because  $\beta \beta_0$  vanishes we get

$$\begin{cases} \hat{t} = t, \\ \hat{x} = (\beta_0 - \beta)t. \end{cases} \quad (4.1.0.31)$$

**Fact 4.1.0.10.**  $g_{\mu\nu}x^\mu x^\nu < 0$  ( $x$  is space-like) if and only if there exists a restricted Lorentz transformation  $u \mapsto \hat{u}$  such that  $\hat{x}^0 = 0$ .

*Proof.* We can take Lorentz transformation, where  $x \mapsto (x^0, z^1, 0, 0)$ . Now, compose it with another Lorentz transformation

$$\begin{cases} \hat{x}^0 = \gamma x^0 - \beta \gamma z^1, \\ \hat{x}^1 = \gamma z^1 - \beta \gamma x^0. \end{cases} \quad (4.1.0.32)$$

Because we want  $\hat{x}^0 = 0$ , there must be  $\beta = \frac{x^0}{z^1}$ . Since  $\beta \in (-1, 1)$ , this is possible if and only if  $(x^0)^2 - (z^1)^2 < 0$ . But  $(x^0)^2 - (z^1)^2 = g_{\mu\nu}x^\mu x^\nu$ , because of Lorentz invariance.  $\square$

**Corollary 4.1.0.11.**  $x - y$  is space-like if and only if there exists a restricted Lorentz transformation such that  $\hat{x}^0 = \hat{y}^0$ .

The physical interpretation of the above is that for two events  $x$  and  $y$  which are space-like separated ( $x - y$  is space-like), there exists an observer for whom these events occurred at the same time.

**Fact 4.1.0.12.**  $g_{\mu\nu}x^\mu x^\nu < 0$  ( $x$  is space-like) if and only if there exists a restricted Lorentz transformation  $u \mapsto \hat{u}$  such that  $\hat{x} = -x$ .

*Proof.* We can take Lorentz transformation, where  $x \mapsto (x^0, z^1, 0, 0)$ . Now, compose it with another Lorentz transformation

$$\begin{cases} \hat{x}^0 = \gamma x^0 - \beta \gamma z^1, \\ \hat{x}^1 = \gamma z^1 - \beta \gamma x^0. \end{cases} \quad (4.1.0.33)$$

To get  $-\hat{x}^0 = \gamma x^0 - \beta \gamma z^1$ , we want

$$\frac{x^0}{z^1} = \frac{\beta \gamma}{1 + \gamma}. \quad (4.1.0.34)$$

Consider function

$$f(\beta) = \frac{\beta \gamma}{1 + \gamma} = \frac{\beta}{1 + (1 - \beta^2)^{1/2}} \quad (4.1.0.35)$$

Note that  $f$  is continuous and strictly increasing on  $(-1, 1)$  and  $\lim_{\beta \rightarrow -1} f(\beta) = -1$  and  $\lim_{\beta \rightarrow 1} f(\beta) = 1$ . Then there exists  $\beta \in (-1, 1)$  such that

$$f(\beta) = \frac{x^0}{z^1}, \quad (4.1.0.36)$$

if and only if  $g_{\mu\nu}x^\mu x^\nu = (x^0)^2 - (z^1)^2 < 0$ .

We can assume now that 4.1.0.34 holds, then

$$\hat{x}^1 = \gamma z^1 - \frac{\beta^2 \gamma^2}{1 + \gamma} z^1 = \frac{\gamma + \gamma^2 - \beta^2 \gamma^2}{1 + \gamma} z^1 = \frac{\gamma + 1}{1 + \gamma} z^1 = z^1. \quad (4.1.0.37)$$

Thus, we have

$$\begin{cases} \hat{x}^0 = -x^0, \\ \hat{x}^1 = z^1. \end{cases} \quad (4.1.0.38)$$

Now, we compose two Lorentz transformations (which are just space rotations):

$$(-x^0, z^1, 0, 0) \mapsto (-x^0, -z^1, 0, 0) \mapsto -x. \quad (4.1.0.39)$$

□

**Lemma 4.1.0.13.**  $a_1, a_2 \in (-1, 1)$  or  $a_1, a_2 \notin (-1, 1)$ , if and only if

$$\frac{a_1 + a_2}{1 + a_1 a_2} \in (-1, 1). \quad (4.1.0.40)$$

*Proof.* Note that

$$\frac{a_1 + a_2}{1 + a_1 a_2} \in (-1, 1). \quad (4.1.0.41)$$

if and only if

$$\left( \frac{a_1 + a_2}{1 + a_1 a_2} \right)^2 < 1. \quad (4.1.0.42)$$

Indeed, observe the equivalent inequalities:

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{a_1^2 + 2a_1 a_2 + a_2^2}{1 + 2a_1 a_2 + a_1^2 a_2^2} &< 1, \\ a_1^2 + 2a_1 a_2 + a_2^2 &< 1 + 2a_1 a_2 + a_1^2 a_2^2, \\ 0 &< 1 - a_1^2 - a_2^2 + a_1^2 a_2^2, \\ 0 &< (1 - a_1^2)(1 - a_2^2). \end{aligned}$$

It is apparent that the last inequality holds either if and only if  $a_1, a_2 \in (-1, 1)$  or  $a_1, a_2 \notin (-1, 1)$ .  $\square$

**Lemma 4.1.0.14.** Let  $\beta \in \mathbb{R}$  and  $\gamma = (1 - \beta^2)^{-1/2}$ ,  $\alpha = \frac{x^1}{x^0}$  and  $\hat{\alpha} = \frac{\hat{x}^1}{\hat{x}^0}$ , where

$$\begin{cases} \hat{x}^0 = \gamma x^0 - \beta \gamma x^1, \\ \hat{x}^1 = \gamma x^1 - \beta \gamma x^0, \end{cases} \quad (4.1.0.43)$$

then

$$\beta = \frac{\hat{\alpha} - \alpha}{\alpha \hat{\alpha} - 1}. \quad (4.1.0.44)$$

**Lemma 4.1.0.15.** If  $(x^0)^2 - (x^1)^2 = (\hat{x}^0)^2 - (\hat{x}^1)^2 > 0$  and  $x^0 > 0$  and  $\hat{x}^0 > 0$ , then for

$$\beta = \frac{\hat{\alpha} - \alpha}{\alpha \hat{\alpha} - 1}, \quad (4.1.0.45)$$

where  $\alpha = \frac{x^1}{x^0}$  and  $\hat{\alpha} = \frac{\hat{x}^1}{\hat{x}^0}$ , we have  $\beta \in (-1, 1)$  and there exists a restricted Lorentz transformation

$$\begin{cases} \hat{x}^0 = \gamma x^0 - \beta \gamma x^1, \\ \hat{x}^1 = \gamma x^1 - \beta \gamma x^0, \end{cases} \quad (4.1.0.46)$$

where  $\gamma = (1 - \beta^2)^{-1/2}$ .

*Proof.* Note that

$$(x^0)^2(1 - \alpha^2) = (\hat{x}^0)^2(1 - \hat{\alpha}^2).$$

Thus

$$\left(\frac{\hat{x}^0}{x^0}\right)^2 = \frac{1 - \alpha^2}{1 - \hat{\alpha}^2} > 0. \quad (4.1.0.47)$$

Therefore either  $\alpha, \hat{\alpha} \in (-1, 1)$  or  $\alpha, \hat{\alpha} \notin (-1, 1)$ , thus by Lemma 4.1.0.13  $\beta \in (-1, 1)$ .

Let's calculate

$$\begin{aligned} 1 - \beta^2 &= \frac{\alpha^2 \hat{\alpha}^2 - 2\alpha\hat{\alpha} + 1 - \alpha^2 - \hat{\alpha}^2 + 2\alpha\hat{\alpha}}{\alpha^2 \hat{\alpha}^2 - 2\alpha\hat{\alpha} + 1} \\ &= \frac{(1 - \alpha^2)(1 - \hat{\alpha}^2)}{(\alpha\hat{\alpha} - 1)^2}. \end{aligned} \quad (4.1.0.48)$$

Since  $(x^0)^2 - (x^1)^2 = (\hat{x}^0)^2 - (\hat{x}^1)^2 > 0$ , then  $\alpha, \hat{\alpha} \in (-1, 1)$ , and so

$$\gamma = \frac{1 - \alpha\hat{\alpha}}{((1 - \alpha^2)(1 - \hat{\alpha}^2))^{1/2}}. \quad (4.1.0.49)$$

Let's verify the first equation of 4.1.0.46.

$$\begin{aligned} \gamma x^0 - \beta \gamma x^1 &= \gamma x^0(1 - \beta\alpha) = \\ &= x^0 \gamma \frac{\alpha\hat{\alpha} - 1 - \alpha\hat{\alpha} + \alpha^2}{\alpha\hat{\alpha} - 1} = x^0 \gamma \frac{\alpha^2 - 1}{\alpha\hat{\alpha} - 1} \\ &= x^0 \left(\frac{1 - \alpha^2}{1 - \hat{\alpha}^2}\right)^{1/2} = x^0 \frac{\hat{x}^0}{x^0} = \hat{x}^0. \end{aligned} \quad (4.1.0.50)$$

Again, the second from the end equality holds since  $x^0 > 0$  and  $\hat{x}^0 > 0$ .  
Let's verify the second equation of 4.1.0.46.

$$\begin{aligned}\gamma x^1 - \beta \gamma x^0 &= x^0 \gamma (\alpha - \beta) = x^0 \gamma \frac{\alpha^2 \hat{\alpha} - \alpha - \hat{\alpha} + \alpha}{\alpha \hat{\alpha} - 1} \\ &= x^0 \hat{\alpha} \gamma \frac{\alpha^2 - 1}{\alpha \hat{\alpha} - 1} = x^0 \hat{\alpha} \left( \frac{1 - \alpha^2}{1 - \hat{\alpha}^2} \right)^{1/2} = x^0 \frac{\hat{x}^1 \hat{x}^0}{\hat{x}^0 x^0} = \hat{x}^1.\end{aligned}\tag{4.1.0.51}$$

The second from the end equality holds since  $x^0 > 0$  and  $\hat{x}^0 > 0$ .  $\square$

**Lemma 4.1.0.16.** *If  $(x^0)^2 - (x^1)^2 = (\hat{x}^0)^2 - (\hat{x}^1)^2 < 0$  and  $x^0, x^1 > 0$  and  $\hat{x}^0, \hat{x}^1 > 0$ , then for*

$$\beta = \frac{\hat{\alpha} - \alpha}{\alpha \hat{\alpha} - 1},\tag{4.1.0.52}$$

where  $\alpha = \frac{x^1}{x^0}$  and  $\hat{\alpha} = \frac{\hat{x}^1}{\hat{x}^0}$ , we have  $\beta \in (-1, 1)$  and there exists a restricted Lorentz transformation

$$\begin{cases} \hat{x}^0 = \gamma x^0 - \beta \gamma x^1, \\ \hat{x}^1 = \gamma x^1 - \beta \gamma x^0, \end{cases}\tag{4.1.0.53}$$

where  $\gamma = (1 - \beta^2)^{-1/2}$ .

*Proof.* Note that (4.1.0.47) and (4.1.0.48) holds. By that obviously  $\beta \in (-1, 1)$ .

Since  $(x^0)^2 - (x^1)^2 = (\hat{x}^0)^2 - (\hat{x}^1)^2 < 0$ , then  $\alpha, \hat{\alpha} \notin (-1, 1)$ . But since  $x^0, x^1 > 0$  and  $\hat{x}^0, \hat{x}^1 > 0$ , we have  $\alpha, \hat{\alpha} > 0$ , then  $\alpha, \hat{\alpha} > 1$ . Therefore, as (4.1.0.48) stays the same

$$\gamma = \frac{\alpha \hat{\alpha} - 1}{((\alpha^2 - 1)(\hat{\alpha}^2 - 1))^{1/2}}.\tag{4.1.0.54}$$

One can check that for the above  $\gamma$  (4.1.0.50) and (4.1.0.51) also holds and this proves (4.1.0.53).  $\square$

**Fact 4.1.0.17.** *If  $g_{\mu\nu} y^\mu y^\nu = g_{\mu\nu} x^\mu x^\nu > 0$  ( $x, y$  are the same length and time-like) such that  $x^0 > 0$  and  $y^0 > 0$ , then there exists a restricted Lorentz transformation  $u \mapsto \hat{u}$  such that  $\hat{x} = y$ .*

*Proof.* Let's start with rotations which are restricted Lorentz transformations

$$(x^0, x^1, x^2, x^3) \mapsto (x^0, z^1, 0, 0). \quad (4.1.0.55)$$

$$(y^0, y^1, y^2, y^3) \mapsto (y^0, v^1, 0, 0). \quad (4.1.0.56)$$

Since they are Lorentz transformations  $(x^0)^2 - (z^1)^2 = (y^0)^2 - (v^1)^2 > 0$ , by Lemma 4.1.0.15 there exists a restricted Lorentz transformation

$$(x^0, z^1, 0, 0) \mapsto (y^0, v^1, 0, 0). \quad (4.1.0.57)$$

□

**Fact 4.1.0.18.** *If  $g_{\mu\nu}y^\mu y^\nu = g_{\mu\nu}x^\mu x^\nu < 0$  ( $x, y$  are space-like) such that, then there exists a restricted Lorentz transformation  $u \mapsto \hat{u}$  such that  $\hat{x} = y$ .*

*Proof.* By combining Fact 4.1.0.12 and the fact that each space rotation is a restricted Lorentz transformation, we can have a restricted Lorentz transformations:

$$(x^0, x^1, x^2, x^3) \mapsto (|x^0|, |z^1|, 0, 0). \quad (4.1.0.58)$$

$$(y^0, y^1, y^2, y^3) \mapsto (|y^0|, |v^1|, 0, 0). \quad (4.1.0.59)$$

Since they are Lorentz transformations, we have  $(x^0)^2 - (z^1)^2 = (y^0)^2 - (v^1)^2 < 0$  and thus by Lemma 4.1.0.16, there exists a restricted Lorentz transformation

$$(|x^0|, |z^1|, 0, 0) \mapsto (|y^0|, |v^1|, 0, 0). \quad (4.1.0.60)$$

□

## 4.2 Lorentz group

Let us remind that  $x_\mu = g_{\mu\nu}x^\nu$ , hence in Special Relativity we have

$$x_0 = x^0, x_1 = -x^1, x_2 = -x^2, x_3 = -x^3. \quad (4.2.0.1)$$

Note that with  $g^{00} = 1$  and  $g^{ii} = -1$  for  $i = 1, 2, 3$  and  $g^{\mu\nu} = 0$  for  $\mu \neq \nu$ , we have  $x^\mu = g^{\mu\nu}x_\nu$ .



### 4.2.1 Rotation in $ij$ -plane

Consider an infinitesimal rotation in direction from an arrow of  $x^i$  to an arrow of  $x^j$ .

$$\begin{cases} \hat{x}^i = x^i - \varepsilon x^j, \\ \hat{x}^j = x^j + \varepsilon x^i, \\ \hat{x}^k = x^k \text{ where } k \notin \{i, j\}. \end{cases} \quad (4.2.1.1)$$

where  $\varepsilon^2$  vanishes.

Let's show that the above transformation preserves Minkowski metric tensor.

$$\begin{aligned} g_{\mu\nu} \hat{x}^\mu \hat{x}^\nu - g_{\mu\nu} x^\mu x^\nu &= -(x^i - \varepsilon x^j)^2 - (x^j + \varepsilon x^i)^2 + (x^i)^2 + (x^j)^2 \\ &= -\varepsilon^2((x^i)^2 + (x^j)^2) \end{aligned}$$

The last term vanishes, so the transformation above preserves Minkowski metric tensor to the first order. Let's define

$$\Delta R_{ij}(x^\mu) = \hat{x}^\mu. \quad (4.2.1.2)$$

$$(G_{ij})_l^k := \begin{cases} -1 & \text{for } k = i, l = j, \\ 1 & \text{for } k = j, l = i, \\ 0 & \text{otherwise.} \end{cases} \quad (4.2.1.3)$$

We may picture  $G_{ij}$  as

$$G_{ij} = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & -1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix} \quad (4.2.1.4)$$

If we restrict it to  $i$ -th and  $j$ -th rows and  $i$ -th and  $j$ -th columns and remember that there is 0s everywhere else.

Then  $\Delta R_{ij} = I + \varepsilon G_{ij}$ . Now we can describe rotation of angle  $\theta$  in direction from an arrow of  $x^i$  to an arrow of  $x^j$  as

$$R_{ij}(\theta) = \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \left( I + \frac{\theta G_{ij}}{n} \right)^n = \exp(\theta G_{ij}). \quad (4.2.1.5)$$

It can be also show that

$$R_{ij}(\theta) = \begin{bmatrix} \cos \theta & -\sin \theta \\ \sin \theta & \cos \theta \end{bmatrix} \quad (4.2.1.6)$$

If we restrict it to  $i$ -th and  $j$ -th rows and  $i$ -th and  $j$ -th columns and remember that there are 1s on the remaining part of diagonal and 0s everywhere else.

It is easy to notice that

$$\left. \frac{\partial R_{ij}(\theta)}{\partial \theta} \right|_{\theta=0} = G_{ij}. \quad (4.2.1.7)$$

which nicely confirms that  $G_{ij}$  is a generator of a subgroup  $R_{ij}(\theta)$ .

Consider a transformation  $f \mapsto f \circ R_{ij}(-\theta)$ . Note that this transformation rotates the graph of function against its domain in the same direction as  $R_{ij}(\theta)$ . Its generator is then  $f \mapsto -(\nabla f) \cdot G_{ij}$ , which we can write in a differential form as

$$x^j \frac{\partial}{\partial x^i} - x^i \frac{\partial}{\partial x^j}. \quad (4.2.1.8)$$

By convention we introduce a generator in an quantum-mechanical form (i.e. multiplying the above by  $i$ ):

$$\mathcal{J}_{nm} = i(x_n \frac{\partial}{\partial x^m} - x_m \frac{\partial}{\partial x^n}) \quad (4.2.1.9)$$

Note that we lowered indices and this changed sign.

## 4.2.2 Boost in $0j$ -plane

Consider an infinitesimal boost in direction from an arrow of  $x^0$  to an arrow of  $x^j$ .

$$\begin{cases} \hat{x}^0 = x^0 - \varepsilon x^j, \\ \hat{x}^j = x^j - \varepsilon x^0, \\ \hat{x}^k = x^k \text{ where } k \notin \{0, j\}. \end{cases} \quad (4.2.2.1)$$

where  $\varepsilon^2$  vanishes. Note this is approximated Lorentz transformation for a frame of reference moving with a small velocity  $\varepsilon$  towards and arrow of  $x^j$  as in (4.1.0.29).

Let's show that the above transformation preserves Minkowski metric tensor.

$$\begin{aligned} g_{\mu\nu} \hat{x}^\mu \hat{x}^\nu - g_{\mu\nu} x^\mu x^\nu &= (x^0 - \varepsilon x^j)^2 - (x^j - \varepsilon x^0)^2 - (x^0)^2 + (x^j)^2 \\ &= \varepsilon^2 ((x^0)^2 - (x^j)^2) \end{aligned}$$

The last term vanishes, so the transformation above preserves Minkowski metric tensor to the first order. Let's define

$$\Delta B_j(x^\mu) = \hat{x}^\mu. \quad (4.2.2.2)$$

$$(G_{ij})_l^k := \begin{cases} -1 & \text{for } k=0, l=j, \\ -1 & \text{for } k=j, l=0, \\ 0 & \text{otherwise.} \end{cases} \quad (4.2.2.3)$$

We may picture  $G_j$  as

$$G_j = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & -1 \\ -1 & 0 \end{bmatrix} \quad (4.2.2.4)$$

If we restrict it to 0-th and  $j$ -th rows and 0-th and  $j$ -th columns and remember that there is 0s everywhere else.

Then  $\Delta B_j = I + \varepsilon G_j$ . Now we can describe rotation of angle  $\theta$  in direction from an arrow of  $x^i$  to an arrow of  $x^j$  as

$$B_j(\omega) = \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \left( I + \frac{\omega G_{ij}}{n} \right)^n = \exp(\omega G_{ij}). \quad (4.2.2.5)$$

It can be also show that

$$B_j(\omega) = \begin{bmatrix} \cosh \omega & -\sinh \omega \\ -\sinh \omega & \cosh \omega \end{bmatrix} \quad (4.2.2.6)$$

If we restrict it to 0-th and  $j$ -th rows and 0-th and  $j$ -th columns and remember that there are 1s on the remaining part of diagonal and 0s everywhere else.

Let's put  $\beta = \tanh \omega$ . Let  $\gamma = (1 - \beta^2)^{-1/2}$ . It is easy to calculate then  $\gamma = \cosh \omega$ . Then

$$B_j(\omega) = \begin{bmatrix} \gamma & -\beta\gamma \\ -\beta\gamma & \gamma \end{bmatrix}, \quad (4.2.2.7)$$

which is exactly Lorentz transformation for a frame moving with a velocity  $\beta$  along  $j$ -th ax towards an arrow as in (4.1.0.25).

It is easy to notice that

$$\left. \frac{\partial B_j(\omega)}{\partial \omega} \right|_{\omega=0} = G_j. \quad (4.2.2.8)$$

which nicely confirms that  $G_j$  is a generator of a subgroup  $B_j(\theta)$ .

Consider a transformation  $f \mapsto f \circ (B_j(-\theta))$ . Its generator is then  $f \mapsto -(\nabla f) \cdot G_j$ , which we can write in a differential form as

$$x^0 \frac{\partial}{\partial x^j} + x^j \frac{\partial}{\partial x^0}. \quad (4.2.2.9)$$

By convention we introduce a generator in an quantum-mechanical form (i.e. multiplying the above by  $i$ ):

$$\mathcal{J}_{0j} = i(x^0 \frac{\partial}{\partial x^j} - x^j \frac{\partial}{\partial x^0}) \quad (4.2.2.10)$$

Note that we lowered indices and this changed the sign in front of  $x_j$ .

### 4.2.3 Lorentz Group Representation

It is well known fact that each Lorentz transformation  $\Lambda$  can be represented as

$$\Lambda = B_1(\omega_1)B_2(\omega_2)B_3(\omega_3)R_{23}(\theta_1)R_{31}(\theta_2)R_{12}(\theta_3). \quad (4.2.3.1)$$

## 4.3 Dynamics

Consider particle of mass  $m$  described in the frame reference  $x^\mu$  by equation of motion

$$t \mapsto (x^0 = t, x^1(t), x^2(t), x^3(t)). \quad (4.3.0.1)$$

Let  $u^\mu$  be a 4-velocity of the particle along the path  $t \mapsto x^\mu(t)$ .  $p^\mu = mu^\mu$  is 4-momentum. Let

$$v^i := \frac{dx^i}{dt}, \quad (4.3.0.2)$$

$$\vec{v} := [v^1, v^2, v^3], \quad (4.3.0.3)$$

$$\vec{u} := [u^1, u^2, u^3], \quad (4.3.0.4)$$

$$\vec{p} = [p^1, p^2, p^3]. \quad (4.3.0.5)$$

Note that  $\vec{p} := m\vec{u}$  is a Newtonian momentum measured in the frame of reference  $x^\mu$ . In this section  $\cdot$  will be standard inner product in  $\mathbb{R}^3$ . Let

$$\vec{F} := \frac{d\vec{p}}{dt}. \quad (4.3.0.6)$$

Note that  $\vec{F}$  is a Newtonian force acting on the particle measured in the frame of reference  $x^\mu$ . Let

$$\beta := (-g_{nm}v^n v^m)^{\frac{1}{2}} = ((v^1)^2 + (v^2)^2 + (v^3)^2)^{\frac{1}{2}} = |\vec{v}|, \quad (4.3.0.7)$$

and

$$\alpha := (1 - \beta^2)^{\frac{1}{2}}. \quad (4.3.0.8)$$

Note that

$$u^\mu = \frac{dx^\mu}{d\tau}, \quad (4.3.0.9)$$

where

$$d\tau = (g_{\mu\nu}dx^\mu dx^\nu)^{\frac{1}{2}}. \quad (4.3.0.10)$$

Note that

$$(u_0)^2 - \vec{u} \cdot \vec{u} = g_{\mu\nu}u^\mu u^\nu = 1. \quad (4.3.0.11)$$

Now

$$\frac{d\tau}{dt} = \left( g_{\mu\nu} \frac{dx^\mu}{dt} \frac{dx^\nu}{dt} \right)^{\frac{1}{2}} = (1 - \beta^2)^{\frac{1}{2}} = \alpha. \quad (4.3.0.12)$$

$$\boxed{d\tau = \alpha dt.} \quad (4.3.0.13)$$

Note that

$$u^0 = \alpha^{-1}, u^i = \alpha^{-1}v^i. \quad (4.3.0.14)$$

Let's find the acceleration  $\vec{a}$  of the particle in the frame of reference  $x^\mu$ . Obviously

$$\vec{a} = \left[ \frac{d^2x^1}{dt^2}, \frac{d^2x^2}{dt^2}, \frac{d^2x^i}{dt^2} \right] = \left[ \frac{dv^1}{dt}, \frac{dv^2}{dt}, \frac{dv^3}{dt} \right] \quad (4.3.0.15)$$

$$\frac{d^2x^i}{dt^2} = \frac{d}{dt} \left( \frac{dx^i}{dt} \right) = \frac{d}{dt} \left( \frac{dx^i}{d\tau} \frac{d\tau}{dt} \right) = \frac{d}{dt} (u^i \alpha) = \frac{du^i}{dt} \alpha + u^i \frac{d\alpha}{dt}. \quad (4.3.0.16)$$

By (4.3.0.14) and (4.3.0.11),

$$\frac{d\alpha}{dt} = \frac{d}{dt} (u^0)^{-1} = \frac{d}{dt} (1 + \vec{u} \cdot \vec{u})^{-\frac{1}{2}} = -\frac{1}{2} (2\vec{u} \cdot \frac{d\vec{u}}{dt}) (1 + \vec{u} \cdot \vec{u})^{-\frac{3}{2}} = -\alpha^3 \vec{u} \cdot \frac{d\vec{u}}{dt}. \quad (4.3.0.17)$$

Thus

$$\frac{d\alpha}{dt} = -\alpha^2 \vec{v} \cdot \frac{d\vec{u}}{dt} = -\frac{\alpha^2}{m} \vec{v} \cdot \frac{d\vec{p}}{dt} = -\frac{\alpha^2}{m} \vec{v} \cdot \vec{F}. \quad (4.3.0.18)$$

By (4.3.0.16) we have

$$\frac{d^2 x^i}{dt^2} = \frac{\alpha}{m} \frac{dp^i}{dt} - u^i \frac{\alpha^2}{m} \vec{v} \cdot \vec{F} = \frac{\alpha}{m} \left( F^i - (\vec{v} \cdot \vec{F}) v^i \right). \quad (4.3.0.19)$$

Thus

$$\boxed{\vec{a} = \frac{\alpha}{m} \left( \vec{F} - (\vec{v} \cdot \vec{F}) \vec{v} \right)} \quad (4.3.0.20)$$

It might be useful to see how  $\vec{a}$  depends on 4-momentum and 4-force.

$$\vec{a} = \frac{\alpha^2}{m} \frac{d\vec{p}}{d\tau} - \frac{\alpha^4}{m^3} (\vec{p} \cdot \frac{d\vec{p}}{d\tau}) \vec{p}. \quad (4.3.0.21)$$

and on 4-velocity and 4-acceleration

$$\vec{a} = \alpha^2 \frac{d\vec{u}}{d\tau} - \alpha^4 (\vec{u} \cdot \frac{d\vec{u}}{d\tau}) \vec{u}. \quad (4.3.0.22)$$

It is also interesting to see  $\frac{d\alpha}{dt}$  from a bit different perspective.

$$\frac{d\alpha}{dt} = \frac{d}{dt} (1 - \beta^2)^{\frac{1}{2}} = -\alpha^{-1} \beta \frac{d\beta}{dt}. \quad (4.3.0.23)$$

Note that

$$\frac{d\beta}{dt} = \beta^{-1} \vec{v} \cdot \frac{d\vec{v}}{dt}. \quad (4.3.0.24)$$

Thus

$$\frac{d\alpha}{dt} = -\alpha^{-1} \vec{v} \cdot \frac{d\vec{v}}{dt}. \quad (4.3.0.25)$$

## 4.4 Symmetries - Noether's Theorem for Relativistic Fields

The approach in this chapter is inspired by [DT12][8.7]

Consider a generic continuous symmetry, which is very close to identity mapping.

$$x^\mu \mapsto x^\mu + \delta x^\mu. \quad (4.4.0.1)$$

We can describe  $\delta x^\mu$  e.g. using generators.

$$\delta x^\mu = \delta \varepsilon (G_\nu^\mu x^\nu + a^\mu). \quad (4.4.0.2)$$

#### 4.4. SYMMETRIES - NOETHER'S THEOREM FOR RELATIVISTIC FIELDS 55

Where  $\delta\varepsilon$  is an infinitesimal variation around 0,  $G_\nu^\mu$  is rotation/boost generator and  $a^\mu$  is a constant shift vector.

For a given field  $\phi^\alpha$  we will usually consider an infinitesimal variation of the field:

$$(\delta\phi^\alpha)(x) \leftarrow \phi'^\alpha(x) - \phi^\alpha(x). \quad (4.4.0.3)$$

Note that for this kind of variation we have  $\partial_\mu\delta = \delta\partial_\mu$ .

Assume that we have a functional  $\mathcal{L} = \mathcal{L}(\phi^\alpha, \partial_\mu\phi^\alpha, x^\mu)$  which depends on all dimensions of field  $\phi^\alpha$ , all their derivatives and on position in space-time.

For an infinitesimal variation  $\delta\phi^\alpha$  we define

$$\delta\mathcal{L} = \mathcal{L}(\phi^\alpha + \delta\phi^\alpha, \partial_\mu(\phi^\alpha + \delta\phi^\alpha), x^\mu) - \mathcal{L}(\phi^\alpha, \partial_\mu\phi^\alpha, x^\mu). \quad (4.4.0.4)$$

Let's introduce a symbol

$$\Pi_\alpha^\mu := \frac{\partial\mathcal{L}}{\partial(\partial_\mu\phi^\alpha)}. \quad (4.4.0.5)$$

**Lemma 4.4.0.1.**

$$\delta\mathcal{L} = \left( \frac{\partial\mathcal{L}}{\partial\phi^\alpha} - \partial_\mu\Pi_\alpha^\mu \right) \delta\phi^\alpha + \partial_\mu(\Pi_\alpha^\mu \delta\phi^\alpha). \quad (4.4.0.6)$$

*Proof.*

$$\begin{aligned} \delta\mathcal{L} &= \frac{\partial\mathcal{L}}{\partial\phi^\alpha} \delta\phi^\alpha + \frac{\partial\mathcal{L}}{\partial(\partial_\mu\phi^\alpha)} \delta(\partial_\mu\phi^\alpha) \\ &= \frac{\partial\mathcal{L}}{\partial\phi^\alpha} \delta\phi^\alpha + \Pi_\alpha^\mu \delta(\partial_\mu\phi^\alpha) \\ &= \frac{\partial\mathcal{L}}{\partial\phi^\alpha} \delta\phi^\alpha + \Pi_\alpha^\mu \partial_\mu \delta\phi^\alpha = \frac{\partial\mathcal{L}}{\partial\phi^\alpha} \delta\phi^\alpha + \partial_\mu(\Pi_\alpha^\mu \delta\phi^\alpha) - \partial_\mu(\Pi_\alpha^\mu) \delta\phi^\alpha \\ &= \left( \frac{\partial\mathcal{L}}{\partial\phi^\alpha} - \partial_\mu\Pi_\alpha^\mu \right) \delta\phi^\alpha + \partial_\mu(\Pi_\alpha^\mu \delta\phi^\alpha). \end{aligned}$$

□

Let's define action functional which will act on a given field

$$S[\phi^\alpha, M] = \int_M \mathcal{L}(\phi^\alpha, \partial_\mu\phi^\alpha, x^\mu) d^4x. \quad (4.4.0.7)$$

We will concentrate on finding  $\phi_0^\alpha$  which locally extremises  $S[\phi^\alpha, M]$  (i.e.  $\delta S[\phi_0^\alpha, M] = 0$ ) for a neighbourhood of fields  $\phi^\alpha = \phi_0^\alpha + \delta\phi^\alpha$  where  $\delta\phi^\alpha$  and  $\partial_\mu \delta\phi^\alpha$  vanishes on  $\partial M$ . We will sometimes call such a field  $\phi_0^\alpha$  a stationary point of  $S[\cdot, M]$ .

Based on [see Wal84, Appendix B] we can formulate the following:

**Theorem 4.4.0.2.** (*Divergence Theorem*) *Let  $M$  be a  $n$ -dimensional compact manifold with some metric tensor  $g_{\mu\nu}$ . Integrals below are over volume element induced by  $g$ . Let  $\partial M$  be a  $(n-1)$ -dimensional manifold, which is a boundary of  $M$ . Let  $n^\mu$  be a continuous vector field of unit normal vectors which are "pointing outward" if  $n^\mu$  is spacelike ( $g_{\mu\nu}n^\mu n^\nu < 0$ ) and "pointing inward" if  $n^\mu$  is timelike ( $g_{\mu\nu}n^\mu n^\nu > 0$ ). If  $v^\mu$  is  $C^1$  vector field on  $M$ , then*

$$\int_M \nabla_\mu v^\mu = \int_{\partial M} n_\mu v^\mu. \quad (4.4.0.8)$$



Figure 4.1: Normal vectors to the oriented surface in spacetime. Blue arrows indicate spacelike vectors. Black arrows indicate timelike vectors.

In the context of Special Theory of Relativity the equation 4.4.0.8 becomes

$$\int_M \partial_\mu v^\mu d^4x = \int_{\partial M} v^\mu dn_\mu. \quad (4.4.0.9)$$



**Theorem 4.4.0.3.** (*Relativistic Field Euler-Lagrange equations*) If

$$\delta(S[\phi_0^\alpha, M]) = 0$$

for variation  $\delta$  with all partial derivatives  $\partial_\mu \delta\phi^\alpha$  and  $\partial_\nu \partial_\mu \delta\phi^\alpha$  infinitesimal of the first order and  $\delta\phi^\alpha$  vanishes on  $\partial M$ , then

$$\frac{\partial \mathcal{L}}{\partial \phi^\alpha} - \partial_\mu \Pi_\alpha^\mu = 0 \quad (4.4.0.10)$$

for  $\phi_0^\alpha$  on the interior of  $M$ .

*Proof.* Let  $S = S[\phi_0^\alpha, M]$ , then  $\delta S = \int_M \delta \mathcal{L} d^4x$ . From (4.4.0.1) it follows that

$$\delta S = \int_M \left( \frac{\partial \mathcal{L}}{\partial \phi^\alpha} - \partial_\mu \Pi_\alpha^\mu \right) \delta \phi^\alpha d^4x + \int_M \partial_\mu (\Pi_\alpha^\mu \delta \phi^\alpha) d^4x. \quad (4.4.0.11)$$

By Divergence Theorem (4.4.0.9), we have

$$\int_M \partial_\mu (\Pi_\alpha^\mu \delta \phi^\alpha) d^4x = \int_{\partial M} \Pi_\alpha^\mu \delta \phi^\alpha dn_\mu = 0, \quad (4.4.0.12)$$

because  $\delta\phi^\alpha$  vanishes on  $\partial M$ . Then

$$\delta S = \int_M \left( \frac{\partial \mathcal{L}}{\partial \phi^\alpha} - \partial_\mu \Pi_\alpha^\mu \right) \delta \phi^\alpha d^4x. \quad (4.4.0.13)$$

Since  $\delta S = 0$  and  $\delta\phi^\alpha$  is arbitrary enough, we have

$$\frac{\partial \mathcal{L}}{\partial \phi^\alpha} - \partial_\mu \Pi_\alpha^\mu = 0. \quad (4.4.0.14)$$

□

Consider an infinitesimal continuous symmetry  $x \mapsto x + \hat{\delta}x$ . From now on in this section, we will use  $\hat{\delta}$  to denote an infinitesimal continuous symmetry variation. Note that in this section, we don't apply  $\hat{\delta}$  as transformation of coordinates, we will use it only to shift the field relative to the frame of reference. We work all the time in an arbitrarily fixed frame of reference  $x^\mu$  and we don't change it through out the whole chapter. This is why we don't need to transform Lagrangian density  $\mathcal{L}$  and we use it all the time as exactly the same expression.

Let  $\hat{\phi}^\alpha$  denote a field which was shifted in the direction  $-\hat{\delta}x$  namely  $\hat{\phi}^\alpha(x) = \phi^\alpha(x + \hat{\delta}x)$ . Note that up to first order

$$\hat{\phi}^\alpha = \phi^\alpha + \partial_\mu \phi^\alpha \hat{\delta}x^\mu, \quad (4.4.0.15)$$

where  $\hat{\delta}x^\mu = \hat{\delta}x^\mu(x)$  is a function of  $x$  as in example (4.4.0.3). We will use variation of  $\phi^\alpha$  defined as  $\hat{\delta}\phi^\alpha = \partial_\mu \phi^\alpha \hat{\delta}x^\mu$ . Note that this variation moves the field in direction  $-\hat{\delta}x$ .

By  $\hat{A}$  we will denote a set shifted in the direction  $-\hat{\delta}x$ .

$$\hat{A} = \{x - \hat{\delta}x : x \in A\}. \quad (4.4.0.16)$$

**Lemma 4.4.0.4.** *If  $F$  is an arbitrary continuous function on space-time then*

$$\int (\mathbb{1}_{\hat{A}} - \mathbb{1}_A) F d^4x = \int_{\partial A} F \hat{\delta}x^\mu dn_\mu. \quad (4.4.0.17)$$

$n_\mu$  is understood as in (4.4.0.9).



Figure 4.2: Illustration to visualise a proof of Lemma 4.4.0.4

Note that

$$\hat{\delta}S[\phi^\alpha, M] = S[\hat{\phi}^\alpha, \hat{M}] - S[\phi^\alpha, M]. \quad (4.4.0.18)$$

#### 4.4. SYMMETRIES - NOETHER'S THEOREM FOR RELATIVISTIC FIELDS 59

$\hat{\delta}S[\phi^\alpha, M]$  denotes difference in action when we move the field  $\phi^\alpha$  by an infinitesimal continuous symmetry  $-\hat{\delta}x$ .

**Lemma 4.4.0.5.** *If a field  $\phi^\alpha$  is a stationary point of  $S[\cdot, M]$ , then*

$$\hat{\delta}S[\phi^\alpha, M] = \int_M \partial_\mu \left( \Pi_\alpha^\mu \hat{\delta}\phi^\alpha + \hat{\delta}x^\mu \mathcal{L} \right) d^4x. \quad (4.4.0.19)$$

*Proof.* To make expressions shorter we will omit  $(x)$  from  $\phi^\alpha(x)$  and  $\hat{\phi}^\alpha(x)$  when variable  $x$  is obvious and we will write just  $\mathcal{L}$  when applied to  $(\phi^\alpha(x), \partial_\mu \phi^\alpha(x), x^\mu)$ .

$$\begin{aligned} \hat{\delta}S[\phi^\alpha, M] &= \int_{\hat{M}} \mathcal{L}(\hat{\phi}^\alpha(x), \partial_\mu \hat{\phi}^\alpha(x), x^\mu) d^4x - \int_M \mathcal{L}(\phi^\alpha(x), \partial_\mu \phi^\alpha(x), x^\mu) d^4x \\ &= \int (\mathbb{1}_M + \mathbb{1}_{\hat{M}} - \mathbb{1}_M) \mathcal{L}(\hat{\phi}^\alpha, \partial_\mu \hat{\phi}^\alpha, x^\mu) d^4x - \int_M \mathcal{L}(\phi^\alpha, \partial_\mu \phi^\alpha, x^\mu) d^4x \\ &= \int_M \mathcal{L}(\hat{\phi}^\alpha(x), \partial_\mu \hat{\phi}^\alpha(x), x^\mu) d^4x - \int_M \mathcal{L}(\phi^\alpha, \partial_\mu \phi^\alpha, x^\mu) d^4x + \int (\mathbb{1}_{\hat{M}} - \mathbb{1}_M) \mathcal{L}(\hat{\phi}^\alpha, \partial_\mu \hat{\phi}^\alpha, x^\mu) d^4x \\ &= \int_M \mathcal{L}(\hat{\phi}^\alpha(x), \partial_\mu \hat{\phi}^\alpha(x), x^\mu) - \mathcal{L}(\phi^\alpha, \partial_\mu \phi^\alpha, x^\mu) d^4x + \int (\mathbb{1}_{\hat{M}} - \mathbb{1}_M) (\mathcal{L} + \hat{\delta}\mathcal{L}) d^4x \\ &= \int_M \left( \frac{\partial \mathcal{L}}{\partial \phi^\alpha} - \partial_\mu \Pi_\alpha^\mu \right) \hat{\delta}\phi^\alpha + \partial_\mu (\Pi_\alpha^\mu \hat{\delta}\phi^\alpha) d^4x + \int_{\partial M} (\mathcal{L} + \hat{\delta}\mathcal{L}) \hat{\delta}x^\mu dn_\mu \\ &= \int_M \partial_\mu (\Pi_\alpha^\mu \hat{\delta}\phi^\alpha) d^4x + \int_{\partial M} \mathcal{L} \hat{\delta}x^\mu dn_\mu = \int_M \partial_\mu (\Pi_\alpha^\mu \hat{\delta}\phi^\alpha) d^4x + \int_{\partial M} \partial_\mu (\mathcal{L} \hat{\delta}x^\mu) d^4x \\ &= \int_M \partial_\mu \left( \Pi_\alpha^\mu \hat{\delta}\phi^\alpha + \hat{\delta}x^\mu \mathcal{L} \right) d^4x. \end{aligned}$$

In transition from line 4 to 5 we used Lemma 4.4.0.1 and Lemma 4.4.0.4 correspondingly. Calculations are done up to first order.  $\square$

For  $\mathcal{L} = \mathcal{L}(\phi^\alpha, \partial_\mu \phi^\alpha, x^\mu)$  to have physical meaning one might require that if a field  $\phi^\alpha$  is a stationary point of  $S[\cdot, M]$ , then the same field but shifted in space-time by an infinitesimal continuous symmetry  $-\hat{\delta}x$  denoted as  $\hat{\phi}^\alpha$  should be also a stationary point of  $S[\cdot, \hat{M}]$ . In other words, orientation of

the field against arbitrary fixed frame of reference  $x^\mu$  shouldn't matter. This is an assumption of isotropy and homogeneity of space.

In the next Lemma we will show that if  $\hat{\delta}\mathcal{L} = \hat{\delta}\varepsilon\partial_\mu f^\mu(\phi^\alpha, \partial_\mu\phi^\alpha, x)$  then  $\mathcal{L}$  has these symmetry invariant stationary points in the above sense. In this context  $\partial_\mu$  is a full derivative with respect to  $x^\mu$ . Note that a particular case of this is  $\hat{\delta}\mathcal{L} = 0$ .

**Lemma 4.4.0.6.** *If  $\hat{\delta}\mathcal{L} = \hat{\delta}\varepsilon\partial_\mu f^\mu(\phi^\alpha, \partial_\mu\phi^\alpha, x^\mu)$  and a field  $\phi_0^\alpha$  is a stationary point of  $S[\cdot, M]$ , then a field  $\hat{\phi}_0^\alpha$  is a stationary point of  $S[\cdot, \hat{M}]$ .*

*Proof.* Let's take an arbitrary field  $\phi^\alpha$  not necessarily stationary. We will show that

$$S[\hat{\phi}^\alpha, \hat{M}] = S[\phi^\alpha, M] + \int_{\partial M} \hat{\delta}\varepsilon f^\mu(\phi^\alpha, \partial_\mu\phi^\alpha, x) + \mathcal{L}(\phi^\alpha, \partial_\mu\phi^\alpha, x^\mu) \hat{\delta}x^\mu dn_\mu. \quad (4.4.0.20)$$

Indeed,

$$\begin{aligned} S[\hat{\phi}^\alpha, \hat{M}] &= \int_{\hat{M}} \mathcal{L}(\hat{\phi}^\alpha, \partial_\mu\hat{\phi}^\alpha, x^\mu) d^4x = \int_{\hat{M}} \mathcal{L} + \hat{\delta}\mathcal{L} d^4x \\ &= \int_M \mathcal{L} + \hat{\delta}\mathcal{L} d^4x + \int (\mathbf{1}_{\hat{M}} - \mathbf{1}_M)(\mathcal{L} + \hat{\delta}\mathcal{L}) d^4x \\ &= S[\phi^\alpha, M] + \int_M \hat{\delta}\varepsilon\partial_\mu f^\mu(\phi^\alpha, \partial_\mu\phi^\alpha, x^\mu) d^4x + \int_{\partial M} (\mathcal{L} + \hat{\delta}\mathcal{L}) \hat{\delta}x^\mu dn_\mu \\ &= S[\phi^\alpha, M] + \int_{\partial M} (\hat{\delta}\varepsilon f^\mu(\phi^\alpha, \partial_\mu\phi^\alpha, x^\mu) + \mathcal{L}(\phi^\alpha, \partial_\mu\phi^\alpha, x^\mu) \hat{\delta}x^\mu) dn_\mu. \end{aligned}$$

Take any variation of the field  $\delta\phi^\alpha$  for which  $\delta\phi^\alpha = \partial_\mu\delta\phi^\alpha = 0$  on  $\partial M$ . Note that because  $\delta\hat{\phi}^\alpha(x) = \delta\hat{\phi}^\alpha(x + \hat{\delta}x)$ , we have  $\delta\hat{\phi}^\alpha = \partial_\mu\delta\hat{\phi}^\alpha = 0$  on  $\partial\hat{M}$ .

Since (4.4.0.20) was for an arbitrary field we have

$$\begin{aligned} S[\hat{\phi}_0^\alpha + \delta\hat{\phi}^\alpha, \hat{M}] &= S[\phi_0^\alpha + \delta\phi^\alpha, M] \\ &+ \int_{\partial M} \left( \hat{\delta}\varepsilon f^\mu(\phi_0^\alpha + \delta\phi^\alpha, \partial_\mu\phi_0^\alpha + \partial_\mu\delta\phi^\alpha, x^\mu) + \mathcal{L}(\phi_0^\alpha + \delta\phi^\alpha, \partial_\mu\phi_0^\alpha + \partial_\mu\delta\phi^\alpha, x^\mu) \hat{\delta}x^\mu \right) dn_\mu. \end{aligned}$$

#### 4.4. SYMMETRIES - NOETHER'S THEOREM FOR RELATIVISTIC FIELDS 61

But since  $\delta\phi^\alpha = \partial_\mu\delta\phi^\alpha = 0$  on  $\partial M$ , we have

$$S[\hat{\phi}_0^\alpha + \delta\hat{\phi}^\alpha, \hat{M}] = S[\phi_0^\alpha + \delta\phi^\alpha, M] + \int_{\partial M} \left( \hat{\delta}\varepsilon f^\mu(\phi_0^\alpha, \partial_\mu\phi_0^\alpha, x^\mu) + \mathcal{L}(\phi_0^\alpha, \partial_\mu\phi_0^\alpha, x^\mu) \hat{\delta}x^\mu \right) dn_\mu.$$

Hence,

$$S[\hat{\phi}_0^\alpha + \delta\hat{\phi}^\alpha, \hat{M}] = S[\phi_0^\alpha + \delta\phi^\alpha, M] + C(\phi_0^\alpha). \quad (4.4.0.21)$$

and from that it follows that a field  $\hat{\phi}_0^\alpha$  is a stationary point of  $S[\cdot, \hat{M}]$ .  $\square$

Now, we are ready to prove a celebrated Noether's theorem, in which one derives a locally conserved Noether's current  $J^\mu$  from the invariance of stationary-point field under a chosen infinitesimal continuous symmetry of time-space for a given action functional.

**Theorem 4.4.0.7.** (*Noether's Theorem*) If  $\hat{\delta}\mathcal{L} = \hat{\delta}\varepsilon\partial_\mu f^\mu(\phi^\alpha, \partial_\mu\phi^\alpha, x)$  and a field  $\phi_0^\alpha$  is a stationary point of  $S[\cdot, M]$  for an arbitrary  $M$ , then for

$$J^\mu = \Pi_\alpha^\mu \partial_\nu \phi_0^\alpha \hat{\delta}x^\nu - \hat{\delta}\varepsilon f^\mu, \quad (4.4.0.22)$$

we have

$$\partial_\mu J^\mu = 0. \quad (4.4.0.23)$$

*Proof.* We will make all calculations for fixed  $\phi^\alpha = \phi_0^\alpha$ . From Lemma 4.4.0.5, we have

$$\hat{\delta}S[\phi^\alpha, M] = \int_M \partial_\mu \left( \Pi_\alpha^\mu \hat{\delta}\phi^\alpha + \hat{\delta}x^\mu \mathcal{L} \right) d^4x. \quad (4.4.0.24)$$

On the other hand from (4.4.0.20) we have

$$\hat{\delta}S[\phi^\alpha, M] = \int_M \partial_\mu \left( \hat{\delta}\varepsilon f^\mu(\phi^\alpha, \partial_\mu\phi^\alpha, x) + \mathcal{L}(\phi^\alpha, \partial_\mu\phi^\alpha, x^\mu) \hat{\delta}x^\mu \right) d^4x. \quad (4.4.0.25)$$

Thus

$$0 = \int_M \partial_\mu \left( \Pi_\alpha^\mu \hat{\delta}\phi^\alpha - \hat{\delta}\varepsilon f^\mu(\phi^\alpha, \partial_\mu\phi^\alpha, x) \right) d^4x. \quad (4.4.0.26)$$

and since  $M$  is arbitrary

$$\partial_\mu \left( \Pi_\alpha^\mu \hat{\delta}\phi^\alpha - \hat{\delta}\varepsilon f^\mu(\phi^\alpha, \partial_\mu\phi^\alpha, x) \right) = 0. \quad (4.4.0.27)$$

From the above and because  $\hat{\delta}\phi^\alpha = \partial_\mu\phi^\alpha\hat{\delta}x^\mu$ , for

$$J^\mu = \Pi_\alpha^\mu \partial_\nu \phi^\alpha \hat{\delta}x^\nu - \hat{\delta}\varepsilon f^\mu, \quad (4.4.0.28)$$

we have  $\partial_\mu J^\mu = 0$ .  $\square$

**Momentum preservation** Let  $\phi^\alpha$  be a field which is a stationary point of an action functional for certain Lagrangian density  $\mathcal{L}$ . Consider infinitesimal translation  $\hat{\phi}^\alpha(x) = \phi^\alpha(x + \hat{\delta}\varepsilon a)$  where  $a$  is a constant 4-vector.

Note that

$$\begin{aligned}\hat{\delta}\mathcal{L} &= \mathcal{L}(\phi^\alpha(x + \hat{\delta}\varepsilon a), \partial_\mu \phi^\alpha(x + \hat{\delta}\varepsilon a), x^\mu) - \mathcal{L}(\phi^\alpha, \partial_\mu \phi^\alpha, x^\mu) \\ &= \hat{\delta}\varepsilon \partial_\mu \mathcal{L} a^\mu = \hat{\delta}\varepsilon \partial_\mu (\mathcal{L} a)^\mu.\end{aligned}$$

Mind that  $\partial_\mu$  is a full derivative with respect to  $x^\mu$ . The locally conserved Noether's current for infinitesimal translation is then:

$$\begin{aligned}J^\mu &= \delta\varepsilon (a^\nu \Pi_\alpha^\mu \partial_\nu \phi^\alpha - a^\mu \mathcal{L}) \\ &= \delta\varepsilon a^\nu (\Pi_\alpha^\mu \partial_\nu \phi^\alpha - \delta_\nu^\mu \mathcal{L}).\end{aligned}$$

If we consider translation along  $x^0$  axis, let's assume  $a = (1, 0, 0, 0)$ , then

$$J^0 = \delta\varepsilon (\Pi_\alpha^0 \partial_0 \phi^\alpha - \mathcal{L}), \quad (4.4.0.29)$$

which is related to energy conservation and

$$J^k = \delta\varepsilon \Pi_\alpha^k \partial_k \phi^\alpha, \quad (4.4.0.30)$$

which is related to momentum conservation along axis  $x^k$ .

# Chapter 5

## General Relativity

### 5.1 Basic properties

#### 5.1.1 Preliminaries

$$\eta = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & -1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & -1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & -1 \end{bmatrix} \quad \delta = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$$

#### 5.1.2 Tensors

$$(\hat{T})_{i_{n+1} \dots i_m}^{i_1 \dots i_n} = \frac{\partial \hat{x}^{i_1}}{\partial x^{j_1}} \dots \frac{\partial \hat{x}^{i_n}}{\partial x^{j_n}} \frac{\partial x^{j_{n+1}}}{\partial \hat{x}^{i_{n+1}}} \dots \frac{\partial x^{j_m}}{\partial \hat{x}^{i_m}} T_{j_{n+1} \dots j_m}^{j_1 \dots j_n}$$

$$(\hat{A})^\mu = \frac{\partial \hat{x}^\mu}{\partial x^\nu} A^\nu$$

#### 5.1.3 Metric Tensor

$$d\tau^2 = g_{\mu\nu} dx^\mu dx^\nu$$

**Theorem 5.1.3.1.**  $g_{\mu\nu}$  is a tensor.

*Proof.* Notice that  $dx^\mu = \frac{\partial x^\mu}{\partial \hat{x}^\alpha} d\hat{x}^\alpha$ .

Hence  $d\tau^2 = g_{\mu\nu} dx^\mu dx^\nu = (g_{\mu\nu} \frac{\partial x^\mu}{\partial \hat{x}^\alpha} \frac{\partial x^\nu}{\partial \hat{x}^\beta}) d\hat{x}^\alpha d\hat{x}^\beta$ . □

**Theorem 5.1.3.2.** For each point  $\omega$  there exists a frame of reference

$$(x^0, x^1, x^2, x^3)$$

such that  $g_{\mu\nu} = \eta_{\mu\nu}$  at  $\omega$ .

$$g_{\mu\lambda} g^{\lambda\nu} = g_\mu^\nu = \delta_\mu^\nu$$

### 5.1.4 Christoffel symbols

$$\Gamma_{\mu\nu}^{\lambda} = \frac{1}{2}g^{\lambda\rho} \left( \frac{\partial g_{\rho\mu}}{\partial x^{\nu}} + \frac{\partial g_{\rho\nu}}{\partial x^{\mu}} - \frac{\partial g_{\mu\nu}}{\partial x^{\rho}} \right)$$

### 5.1.5 Geodesics

$$\frac{d^2\phi^{\mu}}{d\tau^2} + \Gamma_{\alpha\beta}^{\mu} \frac{d\phi^{\alpha}}{d\tau} \frac{d\phi^{\beta}}{d\tau} = 0$$

### 5.1.6 Motionless particle

Assume that we have a frame of reference  $(t = x_0, x_1, x_2, x_3)$ . Let's consider a motionless particle

$$(\phi^0(t) = t, \phi^1(t), \phi^2(t), \phi^3(t)).$$

As the particle is motionless, we have  $\frac{d\phi^n}{dt} = 0$  for  $n = 1, 2, 3$  at the moment  $t = 0$ . The particle is motionless in our space frame of reference  $(x, y, z)$  at the moment  $t = 0$ , but we assume that it's still following geodesic in the space-time.

$$0 = \frac{d^2\phi^{\mu}}{d\tau^2} + \Gamma_{\alpha\beta}^{\mu} \frac{d\phi^{\alpha}}{d\tau} \frac{d\phi^{\beta}}{d\tau} = \frac{d^2\phi^{\mu}}{d\tau^2} + \Gamma_{\alpha\beta}^{\mu} \frac{d\phi^{\alpha}}{dt} \frac{d\phi^{\beta}}{dt} \left( \frac{dt}{d\tau} \right)^2 = \frac{d^2\phi^{\mu}}{d\tau^2} + \Gamma_{00}^{\mu} \left( \frac{dt}{d\tau} \right)^2.$$

$$\frac{d^2\phi^{\mu}}{d\tau^2} = -\Gamma_{00}^{\mu} \left( \frac{dt}{d\tau} \right)^2.$$

The above holds in the point  $(0, \phi^1(0), \phi^2(0), \phi^3(0))$ .

$$\frac{d^2\phi^n}{d\tau^2} = \frac{d}{d\tau} \left( \frac{d\phi^n}{dt} \frac{dt}{d\tau} \right) = \frac{d}{d\tau} \left( \frac{d\phi^n}{dt} \right) \frac{dt}{d\tau} + \frac{d\phi^n}{dt} \frac{d^2t}{d\tau^2} = \frac{d}{dt} \left( \frac{d\phi^n}{dt} \right) \left( \frac{dt}{d\tau} \right)^2 = \frac{d^2\phi^n}{dt^2} \left( \frac{dt}{d\tau} \right)^2$$

for  $n = 1, 2, 3$ . Thus,

$$\frac{d^2\phi^n}{dt^2} = -\Gamma_{00}^n \text{ for } n = 1, 2, 3.$$

Therefore,

$$\frac{d^2\phi^n}{dt^2} = -\Gamma_{00}^n = -\frac{1}{2}g^{n\rho} \left( \frac{\partial g_{\rho 0}}{\partial x^0} + \frac{\partial g_{\rho 0}}{\partial x^0} - \frac{\partial g_{00}}{\partial x^{\rho}} \right).$$

Now we will assume that the curvature is constant in time.



**Assumption 5.1.6.1.**  $\frac{\partial g_{\mu\nu}}{\partial x^0} = 0$ .

Now,

$$\frac{d^2 \phi^n}{dt^2} = \frac{1}{2} g^{nm} \frac{\partial g_{00}}{\partial x^m}.$$

### 5.1.7 The Ricci tensor

$$R_{\mu\nu} = \frac{\partial \Gamma_{\mu\alpha}^{\alpha}}{\partial x^{\nu}} - \frac{\partial \Gamma_{\mu\nu}^{\alpha}}{\partial x^{\alpha}} - \Gamma_{\mu\nu}^{\alpha} \Gamma_{\alpha\beta}^{\beta} + \Gamma_{\mu\beta}^{\alpha} \Gamma_{\nu\alpha}^{\beta}$$

Einstein assumption for empty space:

$$R_{\mu\nu} = 0$$

### 5.1.8 A slow particle in weakly curved empty space-time: The Newtonian approximation

Let's consider a slow particle

$$(\phi^0(t) = t, \phi^1(t), \phi^2(t), \phi^3(t)).$$

Assume that  $\phi^1(0) = \phi^2(0) = \phi^3(0) = 0$  and that for our frame of reference  $g_{\mu\nu} = \eta_{\mu\nu}$  in  $(0, 0, 0, 0)$ . The particle is slow so we assume:

**Assumption 5.1.8.1.**  $\frac{d\phi^n}{dt}$  is an infinitesimal of the first order for  $n = 1, 2, 3$ .

We will assume that curvature is constant in time.

**Assumption 5.1.8.2.**  $\frac{\partial g_{\mu\nu}}{\partial x^0} = 0$ .

We will assume also that the curvature is weak.

**Assumption 5.1.8.3.**  $\frac{\partial g_{\mu\nu}}{\partial x^n}$  is an infinitesimal of the first order for  $n = 1, 2, 3$ .

**Proposition 5.1.8.4.**  $g_{\mu\nu} = \eta_{\mu\nu} + \varepsilon_{\mu\nu}$ , where  $\varepsilon_{\mu\nu}$  is an infinitesimal of the second order in reasonable range that we care about.

*Proof.*

$$g_{\mu\nu}(d\phi) = \eta_{\mu\nu} + \frac{\partial g_{\mu\nu}}{\partial x^n} d\phi^n$$

□

The particle is following the geodesic in the spacetime, so with neglecting second-order infinitesimals we have:

$$0 = \frac{d^2\phi^\mu}{d\tau^2} + \Gamma_{\alpha\beta}^\mu \frac{d\phi^\alpha}{d\tau} \frac{d\phi^\beta}{d\tau} = \frac{d^2\phi^\mu}{d\tau^2} + \Gamma_{\alpha\beta}^\mu \frac{d\phi^\alpha}{dt} \frac{d\phi^\beta}{dt} \left(\frac{dt}{d\tau}\right)^2 = \frac{d^2\phi^\mu}{d\tau^2} + \Gamma_{00}^\mu \left(\frac{dt}{d\tau}\right)^2.$$

Thus

$$\frac{d^2\phi^\mu}{d\tau^2} = -\Gamma_{00}^\mu \left(\frac{dt}{d\tau}\right)^2. \quad (5.1.8.1)$$

Putting  $\mu = 0$  we may conclude that  $\frac{d^2t}{d\tau^2}$  is a first order infinitesimal.

$$\frac{d^2\phi^n}{d\tau^2} = \frac{d}{d\tau} \left( \frac{d\phi^n}{dt} \frac{dt}{d\tau} \right) = \frac{d}{d\tau} \left( \frac{d\phi^n}{dt} \right) \frac{dt}{d\tau} + \frac{d\phi^n}{dt} \frac{d^2t}{d\tau^2} = \frac{d}{dt} \left( \frac{d\phi^n}{dt} \right) \left( \frac{dt}{d\tau} \right)^2 = \frac{d^2\phi^n}{dt^2} \left( \frac{dt}{d\tau} \right)^2$$

for  $n = 1, 2, 3$ , neglecting second-order infinitesimals. Therefore applying the above to the (5.1.8.1) we get

$$\frac{d^2\phi^n}{dt^2} = -\Gamma_{00}^n \text{ for } n = 1, 2, 3.$$

so

$$\frac{d^2\phi^n}{dt^2} = -\Gamma_{00}^n = -\frac{1}{2}g^{n\rho} \left( \frac{\partial g_{\rho 0}}{\partial x^0} + \frac{\partial g_{\rho 0}}{\partial x^0} - \frac{\partial g_{00}}{\partial x^\rho} \right).$$

and by Assumption 5.1.8.2, neglecting second-order infinitesimals:

$$\frac{d^2\phi^n}{dt^2} = \frac{1}{2} \frac{\partial g_{00}}{\partial x^n}.$$

Since  $R_{\mu\nu} = 0$ , neglecting second-order infinitesimals we have:

$$\frac{\partial \Gamma_{\mu\alpha}^\alpha}{\partial x^\nu} - \frac{\partial \Gamma_{\mu\nu}^\alpha}{\partial x^\alpha} = 0$$

Note that with neglecting of second-order infinitesimals,

$$\frac{\partial \Gamma_{\mu\alpha}^\alpha}{\partial x^\nu} = \frac{1}{2}g^{\alpha\rho} \left( \frac{\partial^2 g_{\rho\mu}}{\partial x^\alpha \partial x^\nu} + \frac{\partial^2 g_{\rho\alpha}}{\partial x^\mu \partial x^\nu} - \frac{\partial^2 g_{\mu\alpha}}{\partial x^\alpha \partial x^\nu} \right),$$

$$\frac{\partial \Gamma_{\mu\nu}^\alpha}{\partial x^\nu} = \frac{1}{2}g^{\alpha\rho} \left( \frac{\partial^2 g_{\rho\mu}}{\partial x^\nu \partial x^\alpha} + \frac{\partial^2 g_{\rho\nu}}{\partial x^\mu \partial x^\alpha} - \frac{\partial^2 g_{\mu\nu}}{\partial x^\rho \partial x^\alpha} \right).$$

Hence,

$$\frac{1}{2}g^{\alpha\rho}\left(\frac{\partial^2 g_{\rho\nu}}{\partial x^\mu \partial x^\alpha} - \frac{\partial^2 g_{\mu\alpha}}{\partial x^\alpha \partial x^\nu} - \frac{\partial^2 g_{\rho\nu}}{\partial x^\mu \partial x^\alpha} + \frac{\partial^2 g_{\mu\nu}}{\partial x^\rho \partial x^\alpha}\right) = 0.$$

Choose  $\mu = \nu = 0$ . Then by Assumption 5.1.8.2

$$g^{mn} \frac{\partial^2 g_{00}}{\partial x^m \partial x^n} = 0 \text{ for } n, m = 1, 2, 3.$$

By Proposition 5.1.8.4 with neglecting second-order infinitesimals we have

$$\eta_{nn} \frac{\partial^2 g_{00}}{\partial x^n \partial x^n} = 0 \text{ for } n = 1, 2, 3.$$

Which is a Laplace equation in  $\mathbb{R}^3$ .

### 5.1.9 Four-velocity

Assume that we describe a particle in a frame of reference  $x^\mu$  as  $(\phi^0(t) = t, \phi^1(t), \phi^2(t), \phi^3(t))$ . We define a four-velocity vector as:

$$v^\mu = \frac{d\phi^\mu}{d\tau}$$

where  $d\tau$  is a infinitesimal length element of curve  $\phi$ .

Note that

$$d\tau = (g_{\mu\nu} d\phi^\mu d\phi^\nu)^{\frac{1}{2}}. \quad (5.1.9.1)$$

Hence

$$\frac{d\tau}{dt} = (g_{\mu\nu} \frac{d\phi^\mu}{dt} \frac{d\phi^\nu}{dt})^{\frac{1}{2}}.$$

Notive that

$$v^0 \frac{d\tau}{dt} = \frac{d\phi^0}{d\tau} \frac{d\tau}{dt} = \frac{d\phi^0}{dt} = 1.$$

So

$$v^0 = (g_{\mu\nu} \frac{d\phi^\mu}{dt} \frac{d\phi^\nu}{dt})^{-\frac{1}{2}}$$

Note that  $v^0$  is what we usually denote in literature as  $\gamma$ . On the other hand:

$$\frac{d\tau}{dt} = (v^0)^{-1}$$

And thus:

$$\frac{d\phi^\mu}{dt} = \frac{d\phi^\mu}{d\tau} \frac{d\tau}{dt} = v^1 (v^0)^{-1}.$$

$$\boxed{\frac{d\phi^\mu}{dt} = v^1 (v^0)^{-1}}$$

Which means that once you know the four-velocity in given frame of reference, you know space velocities as well.

There is one more implication from (5.1.9.1):

$$\boxed{g_{\mu\nu} v^\mu v^\nu = 1} \quad (5.1.9.2)$$

We will show that  $v^\mu$  is a tensor. Assume that  $y^\mu$  is a new frame of reference. Note that

$$d\hat{\phi}^\mu = \frac{\partial y^\mu}{\partial x^\nu} d\phi^\nu.$$

Since  $d\tau$  is invariant  $\hat{v}^\mu d\tau = \frac{\partial y^\mu}{\partial x^\nu} v^\nu d\tau$ , hence

$$\boxed{\hat{v}^\mu = \frac{\partial y^\mu}{\partial x^\nu} v^\nu}$$

Let  $\omega^\mu = \frac{d\phi^\mu}{dt}$ . ( $\omega^\nu$  is not a tensor). Then  $\omega^\mu = v^\mu (v^0)^{-1}$ .

Note that usually encountered in literature  $\beta = (\omega^1 + \omega^2 + \omega^3)^{\frac{1}{2}}$ . Note

$$\boxed{v^0 = (1 - \beta^2)^{-\frac{1}{2}}} \quad (5.1.9.3)$$

To simplify calculations, we can assume that  $g_{\mu\nu} = \eta_{\mu\nu}$  at  $(0, 0, 0, 0)$ .  $\phi^\mu(0) = 0$  and that particle at the moment  $t = 0$  is moving along  $x^1$ , i.e.  $\omega^2 = \omega^3 = 0$ . Thus  $v^2 = v^3 = 0$ . Let

$$\begin{cases} y^0 = v^0 x^0 - v^1 x^1 \\ y^1 = v^0 x^1 - v^1 x^0 \\ y^2 = x^2 \\ y^3 = x^3 \end{cases} \quad (5.1.9.4)$$

It's easy to show that  $\hat{v}^0 = 1$  and  $\hat{v}^1 = \hat{v}^2 = \hat{v}^3 = 0$ , which simply means that for  $t = 0$  the particle is in rest in the frame of reference  $y^\mu$ . Obviously

$$\begin{cases} x^0 = v^0 y^0 + v^1 y^1 \\ x^1 = v^0 y^1 + v^1 y^0 \\ x^2 = y^2 \\ x^3 = y^3 \end{cases} \quad (5.1.9.5)$$

$$\begin{aligned}\hat{g}_{00} &= g_{\mu\nu} \frac{\partial x^\mu}{\partial y^0} \frac{\partial x^\nu}{\partial y^0} = (v^0)^2 - (v^1)^2 = 1, \\ \hat{g}_{01} &= g_{\mu\nu} \frac{\partial x^\mu}{\partial y^0} \frac{\partial x^\nu}{\partial y^1} = v^0 v^1 - v^1 v^0 = 0, \\ \hat{g}_{11} &= g_{\mu\nu} \frac{\partial x^\mu}{\partial y^1} \frac{\partial x^\nu}{\partial y^1} = (v^1)^2 - (v^0)^2 = -1.\end{aligned}$$

Thus also  $\hat{g}_{\mu\nu} = \eta_{\mu\nu}$  for in  $(0, 0, 0, 0)$ .

Consider now particle  $\phi$  in some very short (in fact as short as we need) time after  $t = 0$ . We can assume that in the frame of reference  $x$  we can describe it as:

$$t \rightarrow (t, \omega^1 t, 0, 0)$$

Let's see this particle in the frame  $y$ . Assume that time interval that we consider is so short that we all the time can use (5.1.9.4):

$$t \rightarrow (v^0 t - v^1 \omega^1 t, v^0 \omega^1 t - v^1 t, 0, 0) = (v^0(1 - (v^1)^2)t, 0, 0, 0) = ((v^0)^{-1}t, 0, 0, 0)$$

It follows that if for the observer in  $x$  interval  $\Delta t$  passed, for observer in  $y$  interval  $(v^0)^{-1}\Delta t$  passed, which is of course time dilatation. Note that  $t$  in frame of reference  $y$  is merely a parameter. To summarise, this is the law of time dilatation

$$\boxed{\Delta t' = (v^0)^{-1} \Delta t} \quad (5.1.9.6)$$

Where  $\Delta t$  is time passed measured by an observer who is in rest relative to frame of reference  $x^\mu$  and  $\Delta t'$  is time passed measured by an observer who is in rest relative to a particle frame of reference  $y^\mu$ .

Now consider second particle that is moving in exactly the same direction as first one but proceeding it with a distance  $\Delta x'$  in frame of reference  $x$ . We can describe it as:

$$t \rightarrow (t, \omega^1 t + \Delta x', 0, 0).$$

Now look at this in frame of reference  $y$ .

$$t \rightarrow ((v^0)^{-1}t - v^1 \Delta x', v^0 \Delta x', 0, 0).$$

So the distance from particles in frame of reference  $y$  is  $v^0 \Delta x'$ . To summarise, this is the law of length contraction

$$\boxed{\Delta x' = (v^0)^{-1} \Delta x} \quad (5.1.9.7)$$

Where  $\Delta x$  is a rest distance between particles and  $\Delta x'$  is a distance between particles measured by an observer who is in rest in the frame of reference  $x^\mu$ .

**Theorem 5.1.9.1.** *If  $u^\mu, v^\mu$  are 4-velocities of two observers at the point of intersection of their geodesics, then*

$$g_{\mu\nu}u^\mu v^\nu = (1 - \omega)^{-\frac{1}{2}} \quad (5.1.9.8)$$

where  $\omega$  is a value of the relative velocity measured by observers,

$$g_{\mu\nu}x^\mu v^\nu = -(1 - \omega)^{-\frac{1}{2}}\omega_x. \quad (5.1.9.9)$$

where  $x_\mu$  is a vector of length  $-1$ , orthogonal to  $u_\mu$ , and  $\omega_x$  is a velocity of  $v_\nu$  measured by an observer  $u^\mu$  along the vector  $x_\mu$ .

*Proof.* Let  $p$  be the point of intersection. As the value of  $g_{\mu\nu}u^\mu v^\nu$  doesn't depend on frame of reference, we are free to choose any frame of reference we need. Let's choose the frame of reference where  $u = (1, 0, 0, 0)$  and  $v = (v^0, v^1, v^2, v^3)$  and  $g_{\mu\nu} = \eta_{\mu\nu}$  at point  $p$ . Such frame of reference will be just Riemannian coordinates with  $0$  - axis along vector  $u^\mu$ . Thus  $g_{\mu\nu}u^\mu v^\nu = \eta_{00}v_0 = v_0$ , which proves equation 5.1.9.8. We may also require that in the frame of reference where  $u = (1, 0, 0, 0)$ ,  $x = (0, 1, 0, 0)$ . Thus  $g_{\mu\nu}x^\mu v^\nu = -v_1 = -v_0\omega_1$ . which proves equation 5.1.9.9.  $\square$

**Fact 5.1.9.2.** *If  $u^\mu, v^\nu$  are 4-velocities of two observers at the point of intersection of their geodesics and  $\lambda$  is an arbitrary density of some quantity measured locally by an observer  $v^\nu$ , then  $\lambda g_{\mu\nu}u^\mu v^\nu$  is a density of this quantity measured locally by an observer  $u^\mu$ .*

**Fact 5.1.9.3.** *If  $p^\nu$  is a 4-momentum of a particle and  $u^\mu$  is a 4-velocity of an observer at the point of intersection with the geodesic of the particle, then*

$$E = g_{\mu\nu}u^\mu p^\nu, \quad (5.1.9.10)$$

$$p_x = g_{\mu\nu}x^\mu p^\nu. \quad (5.1.9.11)$$

where  $E$  is an energy of the particle measured by an observer,  $x_\mu$  is a vector of length  $-1$ , orthogonal to  $u_\mu$ , and  $p_x$  is a momentum of a particle measured by an observer  $u^\mu$  along the vector  $x_\mu$ .

### 5.1.10 Static spacetime

**Definition 5.1.10.1.** *We will say that system of coordinates  $x$  is static if  $\frac{\partial g_{\mu\nu}}{\partial x^0} = 0$  and  $g_{m0} = 0$  for  $m = 1, 2, 3$ .*

**Fact 5.1.10.2.** *If the system of coordinates  $x$  is static, then*

$$g^{00} = (g_{00})^{-1}, \quad (5.1.10.1)$$

$$g^{n0} = 0, \quad (5.1.10.2)$$

$$g_{na}g^{am} = \delta_n^m, \quad (5.1.10.3)$$

$$\Gamma_{00}^a = -\frac{1}{2}g^{ab}\frac{\partial g_{00}}{\partial x^b}, \quad (5.1.10.4)$$

$$\Gamma_{nm}^a = \frac{1}{2}g^{ab}\left(\frac{\partial g_{bm}}{\partial x^n} + \frac{\partial g_{bn}}{\partial x^m} - \frac{\partial g_{mn}}{\partial x^b}\right), \quad (5.1.10.5)$$

$$\Gamma_{n0}^a = \Gamma_{00}^0 = 0. \quad (5.1.10.6)$$

*Proof.*

$$\Gamma_{00}^a = \frac{1}{2}g^{ab}\left(\frac{\partial g_{b0}}{\partial x^0} + \frac{\partial g_{b0}}{\partial x^0} - \frac{\partial g_{00}}{\partial x^b}\right) = -\frac{1}{2}g^{ab}\frac{\partial g_{00}}{\partial x^b}.$$

$$\begin{aligned} \Gamma_{nm}^a &= \frac{1}{2}g^{ab}\left(\frac{\partial g_{bm}}{\partial x^n} + \frac{\partial g_{bn}}{\partial x^m} - \frac{\partial g_{mn}}{\partial x^b}\right) + \frac{1}{2}g^{a0}(\dots) = \\ &\quad \frac{1}{2}g^{ab}\left(\frac{\partial g_{bm}}{\partial x^n} + \frac{\partial g_{bn}}{\partial x^m} - \frac{\partial g_{mn}}{\partial x^b}\right). \end{aligned}$$

$$\Gamma_{n0}^a = \frac{1}{2}g^{ab}\left(\frac{\partial g_{b0}}{\partial x^n} + \frac{\partial g_{bn}}{\partial x^0} - \frac{\partial g_{0n}}{\partial x^b}\right) + \frac{1}{2}g^{a0}(\dots) = 0.$$

□

Note that condition  $g_{n0} = 0$  provides that  $(dt, 0, 0, 0)$  and  $(0, dx^1, dx^2, dx^3)$  are orthogonal at each point. We may say that all static observers agree locally on what is their space. Motivated by this we can define space as  $t = \text{const}$ .

**Theorem 5.1.10.3.** *If  $x$  is a static coordinate system and  $t \rightarrow (t, \phi_1(t), \phi_2(t), \phi_3(t))$  is an equation of free particle (geodesic in coordinates  $x$ ) and  $\omega_\nu = \frac{d\phi^\nu}{dt}$ , then*

$$\omega^a \nabla_a \omega^b = -\Gamma_{00}^a, \quad (5.1.10.7)$$

$$\text{i.e. } \frac{d^2\phi^a}{dt^2} + \Gamma_{nm}^a \frac{d\phi^n}{dt} \frac{d\phi^m}{dt} = -\Gamma_{00}^a. \quad (5.1.10.8)$$

where  $\nabla$  is a covariant derivative in 3 dimensional manifold with metric  $g_{nm}$ .

**Theorem 5.1.10.4.** *If  $x$  is a static coordinate system and  $t \rightarrow (t, \phi_1(t), \phi_2(t), \phi_3(t))$  is a null geodesic in coordinates  $x$ , then for  $t \rightarrow (\phi_1(t), \phi_2(t), \phi_3(t))$ , we have  $\delta \int dt = 0$ .*

*Proof.* Let's define a new metric  $H_{\mu\nu} = g_{\mu\nu}(g_{00})^{-1}$ .  $H$  is conformally related to  $g$ . Thus they have the same null geodesics. Note that  $x$  is a static coordinate system in  $H$ . Then by Theorem 5.1.10.3

$$\frac{d^2\phi^a}{dt^2} + \Gamma_{nm}^a \frac{d\phi^n}{dt} \frac{d\phi^m}{dt} = -\Gamma_{00}^a. \quad (5.1.10.9)$$

But  $\Gamma_{00}^a = 0$ . Then  $t \rightarrow (\phi_1(t), \phi_2(t), \phi_3(t))$  is a geodesic equation in a 3 dimensional manifold with metric  $H_{mn}$ . So  $\delta \int ds_H = 0$ . Note that

$$ds_H^2 = -H_{mn}dx^m dx^n = -(g_{00})^{-1}g_{mn}dx^m dx^n = (g_{00})^{-1}ds^2.$$

Hence

$$\delta \int g_{00}^{-\frac{1}{2}} ds = 0. \quad (5.1.10.10)$$

Because we are on the null geodesic in  $x$  with metric  $g$ , we have

$$0 = g_{00}dt^2 + g_{nm}dx^n dx^m = g_{00}dt^2 - ds^2.$$

So

$$dt = (g_{00})^{-\frac{1}{2}} ds.$$

□

And 5.1.10.10 becomes

$$\delta \int dt = 0.$$

### 5.1.11 Stress-energy tensor

We will construct some illustrative example of the stress-energy tensor. Assume that we have distribution of matter whose velocity varies continuously from one point to a neighboring one. Let  $\rho$  be a scalar field of rest density measured in the rest frame of reference of an infinitesimal part of the matter distribution. Let  $v^\mu$  be a vector field of 4-velocities of an infinitesimal part of the matter distribution at the point. Let define

$$T^{\mu\nu} = \rho v^\mu v^\nu. \quad (5.1.11.1)$$

Let  $\omega$  be a relative velocity between observer  $u^\mu$  and an infinitesimal matter element  $v^\mu$  at each point. Note that rest density of the matter distribution



is just some quantity distributed in space. Forget for a moment that this is a rest density, let's treat this as some kind of abstract quantity. Then

$$\underbrace{\rho(1-\omega)^{-\frac{1}{2}}}_{\text{rest density} * \frac{1}{\text{length contraction}}} \quad (5.1.11.2)$$

is a density of this quantity measured by the observer  $u^\mu$ , i. e. density of rest density measured by the observer  $u^\mu$ .

**Fact 5.1.11.1.**  $T_{\mu\nu}u^\mu u^\nu$  is a energy density measured locally by an observer  $u^\nu$ .

*Proof.* We will use notation from Theorem 5.1.9.1

$$T_{\mu\nu}u^\mu u^\nu = \rho v^\alpha v^\beta g_{\mu\alpha} g_{\mu\beta} u^\mu u^\nu = \underbrace{\rho(1-\omega)^{-\frac{1}{2}}}_{\text{rest density} * \frac{1}{\text{length contraction}}} \cdot (1-\omega)^{-\frac{1}{2}}. \quad (5.1.11.3)$$

□

**Fact 5.1.11.2.**  $T_{\mu\nu}x^\mu u^\nu$  is a density of momentum along the vector  $x^\mu$ , measured locally by an observer  $u^\nu$  – where  $x^\mu$  is an orthogonal to  $u^\mu$  vector of length  $-1$ .

*Proof.*

$$T_{\mu\nu}x^\mu u^\nu = \rho v^\alpha v^\beta g_{\mu\alpha} g_{\mu\beta} x^\mu u^\nu = \underbrace{\rho(1-\omega)^{-\frac{1}{2}}}_{\text{rest density} * \frac{1}{\text{length contraction}}} \cdot (1-\omega)^{-\frac{1}{2}} \omega_x. \quad (5.1.11.4)$$

□

**Fact 5.1.11.3.**  $T_{\mu\nu}u^\mu x^\nu$  is a energy flux across the surface with normal vector  $x^\mu$ , measured locally by an observer  $u^\nu$  – where  $x^\mu$  is an orthogonal to  $u^\mu$  vector of length  $-1$ .

*Proof.*

$$T_{\mu\nu}u^\mu x^\nu = \rho v^\alpha v^\beta g_{\mu\alpha} g_{\mu\beta} u^\mu x^\nu = \underbrace{\rho(1-\omega)^{-\frac{1}{2}}}_{\text{rest density} * \frac{1}{\text{length contraction}}} \cdot (1-\omega)^{-\frac{1}{2}} \omega_x. \quad (5.1.11.5)$$

□

Of course  $T_{\mu\nu}x^\mu u^\nu = T_{\mu\nu}u^\mu x^\nu$ .

**Fact 5.1.11.4.**  $T_{\mu\nu}x^\mu y^\nu$  is a flux of momentum along  $x^\mu$  across the surface with normal vector  $y^\mu$ , measured locally by an observer  $u^\nu$  – where  $x^\mu, y^\nu$  are orthogonal to  $u^\mu$  vectors of length  $-1$ .

*Proof.*

$$T_{\mu\nu}x^\mu y^\nu = \rho v^\alpha v^\beta g_{\mu\alpha} g_{\nu\beta} u^\mu x^\nu = \overbrace{\underbrace{\rho(1-\omega)^{-\frac{1}{2}}}_{\text{rest density} * \frac{1}{\text{length contraction}}}}^{\text{relative momentum density}} \cdot (1-\omega)^{-\frac{1}{2}} \omega_x \omega_y. \quad (5.1.11.6)$$

□

# Chapter 6

## Quantum Mechanics

### 6.1 Preliminaries

#### 6.1.1 Free particle (first overview)

Assume, we want to find a function  $\psi : \mathbb{R} \times \mathbb{R} \rightarrow \mathbb{C}$  which satisfies the following equation:

$$i \frac{\partial \psi(t, x)}{\partial t} = -\frac{1}{2m} \cdot \frac{\partial^2 \psi(t, x)}{\partial x^2}. \quad (6.1.1.1)$$

This happen to be a Schrödinger equation of a free particle in Quantum Mechanics. But we will deal with it purely mathematically and in this subsection we won't need any of Quantum Mechanics. Very often when the context is clear, we will write  $\psi_t(x) := \psi(t, x)$ . We need of course to assume that  $t \rightarrow \psi(t, x)$  is differentiable for all  $x \in \mathbb{R}$  and that  $x \rightarrow \psi(x, t)$  is two times differentiable for all  $t \in \mathbb{R}$ . If we assume that  $\psi_t \in L^1(\mathbb{R})$ , we can define:

$$\hat{\psi}(t, p) = \mathcal{F}(\psi_t)(p). \quad (6.1.1.2)$$

Then by Theorem 10.2.1.8, the equation (6.1.1.1) implies

$$\frac{\partial \hat{\psi}(t, p)}{\partial t} = -i \frac{p^2}{2m} \cdot \hat{\psi}(t, p). \quad (6.1.1.3)$$

The solution for the above equation is given by

$$\hat{\psi}(t, p) = A(p) \exp\left(-it \frac{p^2}{2m}\right). \quad (6.1.1.4)$$

If we define  $\hat{\psi}(p) := \hat{\psi}(0, p)$  then

$$\hat{\psi}(t, p) = \hat{\psi}(p) \exp\left(-it \frac{p^2}{2m}\right). \quad (6.1.1.5)$$

If we assume that  $\hat{\psi}(p)$  is  $L^1(\mathbb{R})$  we have a solution of (6.1.1.1)  $\psi(t, x) = \mathcal{F}^{-1}(\hat{\psi}_t)(x)$  which expands to

$$\psi(t, x) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \hat{\psi}(p) \exp\left(ip\left(x - \frac{tp}{2m}\right)\right) dp. \quad (6.1.1.6)$$

This is a wave packet. Note that if  $|\hat{\psi}(p)|^2$  is a probability density, then  $|\hat{\psi}_t|^2 = |\hat{\psi}(p)|^2$  is a probability density for each  $t \in \mathbb{R}$ . Then also Theorem 10.2.1.10 (The Parserval Formula) implies that  $|\psi_t|^2$  is a probability density for all  $t \in \mathbb{R}$ . We will proceed further under the assumption that  $|\hat{\psi}(p)|^2$  is a probability density. To analyze how the wave packet moves in time it will be useful to introduce some abstract random processes  $X_t$  and  $P_t$ . Let  $X_t$  be an arbitrary random process where probability density of  $X_t$  is  $|\psi_t|^2$  and let  $P_t$  be an arbitrary process where probability density of  $P_t$  is  $|\hat{\psi}_t|^2$ . Given that  $|\hat{\psi}_t|^2 = |\hat{\psi}(p)|^2$  we will assume  $P = P_t$  with probability density  $|\hat{\psi}(p)|^2$ . We don't assume a joint distribution for  $X_t$  and  $P_t$ , so they can't be read as momentum and position random processes, because in general as Nelson Theorem states: "The observables  $R_1$  and  $R_2$  have a joint probability distribution in all states if and only if they commute, that is if and only if  $[R_1, R_2] = 0$ ." ([BP02], [Nel67]). We have

$$E(X_t) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x \psi(x, t) \overline{\psi(x, t)} dx, \quad (6.1.1.7)$$

and

$$E(P) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} p \hat{\psi}(p, t) \overline{\hat{\psi}(p, t)} dp = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} p \hat{\psi}(p) \overline{\hat{\psi}(p)} dp. \quad (6.1.1.8)$$

By Theorem 10.2.1.14

$$E(X_t) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} i \frac{\partial \hat{\psi}}{\partial p}(p, t) \cdot \overline{\hat{\psi}(p, t)} dp. \quad (6.1.1.9)$$

Note that

$$\frac{\partial \hat{\psi}}{\partial p}(p, t) = \left( \frac{d\hat{\psi}}{dp}(p) - \frac{itp}{m} \hat{\psi}(p) \right) \exp\left(-it \frac{p^2}{2m}\right). \quad (6.1.1.10)$$

Thus

$$E(X_t) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} i \left( \frac{d\hat{\psi}}{dp}(p) - \frac{itp}{m} \hat{\psi}(p) \right) \overline{\hat{\psi}(p)} dp. \quad (6.1.1.11)$$

And from the above, by (6.1.1.9) and (6.1.1.8) we are getting a very nice equation

$$E(X_t) = E(X_0) + \frac{t}{m} E(P). \quad (6.1.1.12)$$

Which says that if we consider  $t$  as time, the mean value of a random variable with density  $|\psi_t|^2$  travels along  $x$  axis with a constant velocity  $v = \frac{\langle P \rangle}{m}$ . Let's now analyze  $\text{Var}(X_t)$  to observe  $\psi_t$  wave dispersion. Again by Theorem 10.2.1.14, we have

$$E(X_t^2) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} -\frac{\partial^2 \hat{\psi}}{\partial p^2}(p, t) \cdot \overline{\hat{\psi}(p, t)} dp. \quad (6.1.1.13)$$

Note that

$$\frac{\partial^2 \hat{\psi}}{\partial p^2}(p, t) = \left( \frac{d^2 \hat{\psi}}{dp^2}(p) - 2 \frac{itp}{m} \cdot \frac{d\hat{\psi}}{dp}(p) - \frac{it}{m} \hat{\psi}(p) - \frac{t^2 p^2}{m^2} \hat{\psi}(p) \right) e^{-it \frac{p^2}{2m}}. \quad (6.1.1.14)$$

Thus

$$E(X_t^2) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \left( -\frac{d^2 \hat{\psi}}{dp^2}(p) + \frac{t^2 p^2}{m^2} \hat{\psi}(p) + \frac{it}{m} \left( 2p \frac{d\hat{\psi}}{dp}(p) - \hat{\psi}(p) \right) \right) \overline{\hat{\psi}(p)} dp. \quad (6.1.1.15)$$

Hence

$$E(X_t^2) = E(X_0^2) + \frac{t^2}{m^2} E(P^2) + \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \frac{it}{m} \left( 2p \frac{d\hat{\psi}}{dp}(p) - \hat{\psi}(p) \right) \overline{\hat{\psi}(p)} dp, \quad (6.1.1.16)$$

and

$$\text{Var}(X_t) = \text{Var}(X_0) + \frac{t^2}{m^2} \text{Var}(P) + \frac{t}{m} \left( \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} i \left( 2p \frac{d\hat{\psi}}{dp}(p) - \hat{\psi}(p) \right) \overline{\hat{\psi}(p)} dp - 2E(X_0)E(P) \right). \quad (6.1.1.17)$$

It is easy to notice that for  $\hat{\psi}(p) \in \mathbb{R}$  for all  $p \in \mathbb{R}$  (it might be helpful to note first that in such case  $E(X_0) = 0$ .) holds:

$$\text{Var}(X_t) = \text{Var}(X_0) + \frac{t^2}{m^2} \text{Var}(P). \quad (6.1.1.18)$$

Note that the reasoning up to this point is purely mathematical, we didn't use any postulates of quantum theory or we didn't use consciously momentum or position operators. However obviously they appeared in calculations. Similar but more detailed approach you may find in [Hal13].

## 6.2 Quantum theory

### 6.2.1 Naive Momentum and Position Operators

In this section, unless not stated otherwise, we assume that all  $L^p(X)$ ,  $C^n(X)$ ,  $C_0(X)$  etc. are sets of complex valued functions. We will use symbols  $P$  i  $Q$  to denote momentum and position operators respectively.

$$P\psi = -i\frac{d}{dx}\psi. \quad (6.2.1.1)$$

$$(Q\psi)(x) = x\psi(x). \quad (6.2.1.2)$$

For any two linear operators  $A, B$  understood at the moment as very abstract linear operations with no explicit domain, we define commutator as  $[A, B] = AB - BA$ .

**Theorem 6.2.1.1.** *Let  $\psi : \mathbb{R} \rightarrow \mathbb{C}$  be differentiable function, then*

$$[Q, P]\psi = i\psi. \quad (6.2.1.3)$$

*Proof.*

$$QP\psi = Q(-i\frac{d\psi}{dx}) = -ix\frac{d\psi}{dx}. \quad (6.2.1.4)$$

$$PQ\psi = P(x\psi) = -i\psi + -ix\frac{d\psi}{dx}. \quad (6.2.1.5)$$

If we subtract equation (6.2.1.5) from equation (6.2.1.4), we got (6.2.1.3).  $\square$

### 6.2.2 Momentum operator in $n$ -dimensional space

Below we will develop in more details what is mentioned in [BP02] (Quantum Probability 2.1) and [Hal13] (Perspectives on the Spectral Theorem 6.6).

In this subsection  $\mathcal{F}$  will be a Fourier transform defined by Definition 10.4.0.11. The most usual case will be  $n = 3$ , but we also quite often consider particles moving only along the straight line when  $n = 1$ . Mathematically speaking though, we can think even about  $n > 3$ .

We will define momentum operator, from the perspective of spectral measure. This approach has following advantages. It is clear from the beginning that momentum operator is self-adjoint and there is no problem what is its domain, we don't need to define its domain, we merely need to discover it. The below definition will be fully understood in the context of Theorem 10.3.2.1

**Definition 6.2.2.1.** Let  $H = L^2(\mathbb{R}^n)$ . Let  $E$  be a spectral measure defined as follows

$$E_i(\omega)(\psi) = \mathcal{F}^{-1}(1_\omega(x_i)\mathcal{F}(\psi)), \quad (6.2.2.1)$$

where  $\psi$  is treated as a function of  $x = (x_1, \dots, x_n)$ . The momentum operator along the coordinate  $i$  is

$$P_i = E_i(id). \quad (6.2.2.2)$$

Recall that  $\mathcal{F} : L^2(\mathbb{R}^n) \rightarrow L^2(\mathbb{R}^n)$  is a unitary mapping. Let's see how much we can derive from the above definition by Theorem 10.3.2.1. First we know that  $P_i$  is self-adjoint and that the domain  $\mathcal{D}(P_i)$  is dense in  $L^2(\mathbb{R}^n)$ . Next, that

$$\mathcal{D}(P_i) = \{\phi \in L^2(\mathbb{R}^n) : x_i \mathcal{F}(\psi) \in L^2(\mathbb{R}^n)\}. \quad (6.2.2.3)$$

and

$$P_i \psi = \mathcal{F}^{-1}(x_i \mathcal{F}(\psi)). \quad (6.2.2.4)$$

Which by Theorem 10.4.0.19 translates immediately to

$$\mathcal{D}(P_i) = \{\psi \in L^2(\mathbb{R}^n) : D^i \psi \in L^2(\mathbb{R}^n)\}. \quad (6.2.2.5)$$

and

$$P_i \psi = -i D^i \psi. \quad (6.2.2.6)$$

Which for any differentiable  $\psi \in L^2(\mathbb{R}^n)$  means simply

$$P_i \psi = -i \frac{\partial \psi}{\partial x_i}. \quad (6.2.2.7)$$

Also we see immediately that  $\mathcal{F}(\psi)$  is momentum representation of a wave function  $\psi$  with

$$\langle \phi, P_i \psi \rangle = \int x_i \mathcal{F}(\psi) \overline{\mathcal{F}(\phi)} dx^n. \quad (6.2.2.8)$$

**Example 6.2.2.2.** Let  $\mathcal{F} : L^2(\mathbb{R}) \rightarrow L^2(\mathbb{R})$  be the extension of Fourier transform. We will define a spectral measure

$$E(\omega)\psi = \mathcal{F}^{-1}(1_\omega \cdot \mathcal{F}(\psi)). \quad (6.2.2.9)$$

Note that for  $\psi \in L^2(\mathbb{R}) \cap L^1(\mathbb{R})$  and  $\mathcal{F}(\psi) \in L^1(\mathbb{R})$ .

$$(E(\omega)\psi)(x) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} \int_{\omega} e^{ixk} \mathcal{F}(\psi)(k) dk. \quad (6.2.2.10)$$

$P\psi = E(id)$  is obviously a 1-dimensional momentum operator.

### 6.3 Harmonic oscillator (first attempt)

Let's write Schrödinger equation of harmonic oscillator in the following form

$$i\frac{\partial\psi}{\partial t} = \frac{1}{2m}P^2\psi + \frac{1}{2}m\omega^2Q^2\psi. \quad (6.3.0.1)$$

The Hamiltonian in the equation is  $H = \frac{1}{2m}P^2 + \frac{1}{2}m\omega^2Q^2$ . We want to find all possible states of energy  $E \in \mathbb{R}$ , which are  $H$  eigenvalues

$$H\psi = E\psi. \quad (6.3.0.2)$$

for any differentiable  $\psi \in L^2(\mathbb{R})$ . We will put aside domain considerations. All transformation should be true in a Schwartz space  $S_1$  (Definition 10.4.0.1) which is dense in  $L^2(\mathbb{R})$ . This statement is not necessarily removing all difficulties, we will perhaps solve this more rigorously later. At some point it will be good to find proper theorems to deal rigorously with solutions of equations, as for having  $P$  self-adjoint we extended domain to weakly differentiable functions – so now all theorems that say about uniqueness of solutions must work for weak derivatives.

Let's define

$$P_0 := \frac{1}{\sqrt{2m\omega}}P, \quad (6.3.0.3)$$

$$Q_0 := \sqrt{\frac{m\omega}{2}}Q. \quad (6.3.0.4)$$

Now  $H = \omega(P_0^2 + Q_0^2)$ . Note that

$$[Q_0, P_0] = \frac{1}{2}i. \quad (6.3.0.5)$$

Thus

$$(Q_0 - iP_0)(Q_0 + iP_0) = Q_0^2 + P_0^2 - \frac{1}{2}I. \quad (6.3.0.6)$$

Then if we define

$$A^\dagger = Q_0 - iP_0, \quad (6.3.0.7)$$

and

$$A = Q_0 + iP_0. \quad (6.3.0.8)$$

Now, we can write  $H$  in the following form

$$H = \omega(A^\dagger A + \frac{1}{2}). \quad (6.3.0.9)$$



Let  $N = A^\dagger A$ . We will establish first some facts about  $A^\dagger$  and  $A$ .

We will write now  $A^\dagger$  and  $A$  explicitly.

$$A^\dagger \psi = \sqrt{\frac{m\omega}{2}} x \psi - \frac{1}{\sqrt{2m\omega}} \frac{\partial \psi}{\partial x}. \quad (6.3.0.10)$$

$$A \psi = \sqrt{\frac{m\omega}{2}} x \psi + \frac{1}{\sqrt{2m\omega}} \frac{\partial \psi}{\partial x}. \quad (6.3.0.11)$$

**Fact 6.3.0.1.** *If  $\psi \in L^2(\mathbb{R})$ ,  $\psi$  is differentiable and satisfies the equation*

$$A\psi = 0, \quad (6.3.0.12)$$

*then there exists  $C \in \mathbb{C}$  such that*

$$\psi(x) = C \exp\left(-\frac{m\omega x^2}{2}\right). \quad (6.3.0.13)$$

*Proof.* Equation (6.3.0.12) is equivalent to

$$\frac{\partial \psi}{\partial x} = -m\omega x \psi. \quad (6.3.0.14)$$

It can be proven that all solutions of the above have a form  $\psi(x) = C \exp\left(-\frac{m\omega x^2}{2}\right)$ . Since  $\psi \in L^2(\mathbb{R})$  it is a valid solution of (6.3.0.12).  $\square$

**Fact 6.3.0.2.** *If  $\psi \in L(\mathbb{R})^2$ ,  $\psi$  is differentiable  $A^\dagger \psi = 0$ , then  $\psi = 0$ .*

*Proof.* Here  $A\psi = 0$  is equivalent to

$$\frac{\partial \psi}{\partial x} = m\omega x \psi. \quad (6.3.0.15)$$

So the solution has a form  $\psi(x) = C \exp\left(\frac{m\omega x^2}{2}\right)$ , where  $C \in \mathbb{C}$ . But we must have  $\psi \in L(\mathbb{R})^2$ , thus the only possible solution is  $\psi = 0$ .  $\square$

Let's now check commutator  $[A, A^\dagger]$ .

$$A^\dagger A = Q_0^2 + P_0^2 - \frac{1}{2}. \quad (6.3.0.16)$$

$$AA^\dagger = Q_0^2 + P_0^2 + \frac{1}{2}. \quad (6.3.0.17)$$

Thus

$$[A, A^\dagger] = 1. \quad (6.3.0.18)$$

**Fact 6.3.0.3.** *If  $\psi, \phi \in S_1$ , then*

$$\langle A\psi, \phi \rangle = \langle \psi, A^\dagger \phi \rangle \quad (6.3.0.19)$$

and

$$\langle N\psi, \phi \rangle = \langle \psi, N\phi \rangle. \quad (6.3.0.20)$$

**Fact 6.3.0.4.** *If  $\gamma$  is an eigenvalue of  $N$  with the corresponding eigenvector  $\psi \in S_1$ , then  $\gamma \geq 0$  and  $\gamma + 1$  is an eigenvalue of  $N$  with the corresponding eigenvector  $A^\dagger \psi$ .*

*Proof.* By (6.3.0.20), we have  $\gamma \geq 0$ . By (6.3.0.18) we can calculate the following

$$\begin{aligned} NA^\dagger \psi &= A^\dagger AA^\dagger \psi = A^\dagger(1 + A^\dagger A)\psi = A^\dagger \psi + A^\dagger N\psi = A^\dagger \psi + \gamma A^\dagger \psi = \\ &= (\gamma + 1)A^\dagger \psi. \end{aligned} \quad (6.3.0.21)$$

By Fact 6.3.0.2, we know that  $A^\dagger \psi \neq 0$ , thus  $A^\dagger \psi$  is an eigenvector.  $\square$

**Fact 6.3.0.5.** *If  $\gamma > 0$  is an eigenvalue of  $N$  with the corresponding eigenvector  $\psi \in S_1$ , then  $\gamma - 1$  is an eigenvalue of  $N$  with the corresponding eigenvector  $A\psi$ .*

*Proof.* By (6.3.0.18), we can calculate the following

$$NA\psi = A^\dagger AA\psi = (AA^\dagger - 1)A\psi = AN\psi - A\psi = A\gamma\psi - A\psi = (\gamma - 1)A\psi. \quad (6.3.0.22)$$

Now we need to show that  $A\psi \neq 0$ . Indeed, if  $A\psi = 0$ , then  $N\psi = 0$ , but since  $\psi$  is an eigenvector with eigenvalue  $\gamma > 0$ , this is a contradiction.  $\square$

## 6.4 Dirac Formulation of Quantum Mechanics

**Note 6.4.0.1.** *Note that with Dirac formulation of Quantum Mechanics we operate on spaces wider than Hilbert spaces and sometimes  $\langle \phi_\alpha | \phi_\beta \rangle$  does not have sense as complex number, but we must see it as distribution corresponding to either  $\alpha$  or  $\beta$ . E.g. if we consider position representation  $\langle x | y \rangle = \delta(x - y)$ .*

Bra-ket notation is described in first chapters of [Dir81].

$$\langle \phi |^\dagger := | \phi \rangle, | \phi \rangle^\dagger := \langle \phi | \quad (6.4.0.1)$$

$$\langle \phi | (c_1 |\psi_1\rangle + c_2 |\psi_2\rangle) = c_1 \langle \phi | \psi_1\rangle + c_2 \langle \phi | \psi_2\rangle, \quad (6.4.0.2)$$

$$(c_1 |\psi_1\rangle + c_2 |\psi_2\rangle)^\dagger = c_1^* \langle \psi_1 | + c_2^* \langle \psi_2 |, \quad (6.4.0.3)$$

$$\{\langle \phi | A\} |\psi\rangle = \langle \phi | \{A |\psi\rangle\}, \quad (6.4.0.4)$$

$$A^\dagger |\phi\rangle := \{\langle \phi | A\}^\dagger, \quad (6.4.0.5)$$

$$\langle \phi | A^\dagger := \{A |\phi\rangle\}^\dagger. \quad (6.4.0.6)$$

### 6.4.1 Observables

**Definition 6.4.1.1.** A non zero quantum state  $|\phi\rangle$  is called a ket related eigenstate of an linear operator  $A$  belonging to the ket related eigenvalue  $a \in \mathbb{R}$  iff  $A|\phi\rangle = a|\phi\rangle$ .

**Definition 6.4.1.2.** A non zero quantum state  $|\phi\rangle$  is called a bra related eigenstate of an linear operator  $A$  belonging to the bra related eigenvalue  $a \in \mathbb{R}$  iff  $\langle \phi | A = a \langle \phi |$ .

In [Dir81], Dirac defines *real linear operator* as self-adjoint (i.e.  $A^\dagger = A$ ). The name is justified for a few reasons. The condition  $A^\dagger = A$  is analogous for  $a^* = a$  for numbers. But also, what we will prove next, *real linear operators* have real eigenvalues.

**Proposition 6.4.1.3.** Let  $A$  be a real linear operator and  $|\phi\rangle$  be a non-zero quantum state. The following holds:

$$A|\phi\rangle = a|\phi\rangle \implies a \in \mathbb{R}, \quad (6.4.1.1)$$

$$\langle \phi | A = a \langle \phi | \implies a \in \mathbb{R}, \quad (6.4.1.2)$$

$$A|\phi\rangle = a|\phi\rangle \text{ and } \langle \phi | A = b \langle \phi | \implies a = b. \quad (6.4.1.3)$$

*Proof.* Since  $A = A^\dagger$ , we have

$$a \langle \phi | \phi \rangle = \langle \phi | a |\phi\rangle = \langle \phi | A |\phi\rangle = \langle \phi | A^\dagger |\phi\rangle = \langle \phi | a^* |\phi\rangle = a^* \langle \phi | \phi \rangle. \quad (6.4.1.4)$$

Also

$$a \langle \phi | \phi \rangle = \langle \phi | a |\phi\rangle = \langle \phi | A |\phi\rangle = \langle \phi | b |\phi\rangle = b \langle \phi | \phi \rangle, \quad (6.4.1.5)$$

thus  $a = b$ . □

The above results justifies, that for real linear operators we speak only about eigenstates and eigenvalues not bothering with distinguishing ket and bra kinds.

**Proposition 6.4.1.4.** *Let  $A$  be a real linear operator. If two eigenstates  $|\phi\rangle, |\psi\rangle$  belong to different eigenvalues, then  $\langle\phi|\psi\rangle = 0$ .*

*Proof.* Assume that eigenvalues for  $|\phi\rangle, |\psi\rangle$  are correspondingly  $a_\phi$  and  $a_\psi$ . Note that

$$\langle\phi|A|\psi\rangle = \langle\phi|a_\psi|\psi\rangle = \langle\phi|a_\phi|\psi\rangle, \quad (6.4.1.6)$$

thus

$$(a_\psi - a_\phi) \langle\phi|\psi\rangle = 0. \quad (6.4.1.7)$$

And since  $a_\psi \neq a_\phi$ , we have  $\langle\phi|\psi\rangle = 0$ .  $\square$

**Definition 6.4.1.5.** *Let  $A$  be a real linear operator.  $\mathcal{E}_A(a)$  denotes a subspace of all eigenstates which belongs to the eigenvalue  $a$ .*

Note that if  $A$  is a real linear operator, then  $\mathcal{E}_A(a_1) \perp \mathcal{E}_A(a_2)$  for  $a_1 \neq a_2$ .

**Definition 6.4.1.6.** *A real linear operator  $A$  acting on a space of quantum states is an observable iff there exists a basis consisted of eigenstates of  $A$ .*

Form 6.4.1.4 it follows that we can always orthogonalise such basis. Indeed, eigenstates which belongs to different eigenvalues are already orthogonal. All eigenstates belonging to one eigenvalue form a subspace of quantum states, so we can take all orthogonal bases from these subspaces and they will form orthogonal bases of the whole quantum state space.

Also the converse holds, if we can find orthogonal base of eigenstates belonging to real eigenvalues, the linear operator is an observable. Let's formulate this in the following proposition.

**Proposition 6.4.1.7.** *If  $A$  is a linear operator whose all eigenstates belong to real eigenvalues and form an orthogonal basis, then  $A = A^\dagger$  (thus  $A$  is an observable).*

*Proof.* Without loss of generality, we can assume that  $|\alpha\rangle$  is an orthonormal basis which consists of eigenstates of  $A$  such that  $A|\alpha\rangle = a(\alpha)|\alpha\rangle$ . Take any quantum state  $|\phi\rangle$  and express it in the basis  $|\alpha\rangle$

$$|\phi\rangle = \int \langle\alpha|\phi\rangle |\alpha\rangle d\alpha. \quad (6.4.1.8)$$

Note that

$$A|\phi\rangle = \int a(\alpha) \langle\alpha|\phi\rangle |\alpha\rangle d\alpha. \quad (6.4.1.9)$$

From the above follows

$$\langle \psi | (A | \phi \rangle) = \int a(\alpha) \langle \alpha | \phi \rangle \langle \psi | \alpha \rangle d\alpha. \quad (6.4.1.10)$$

for an arbitrary two quantum states  $|\phi\rangle, |\psi\rangle$ . Now,

$$\begin{aligned} (\langle \phi | A^\dagger) |\psi\rangle &= \langle \psi | (A | \phi \rangle)^* = \int a(\alpha)^* \langle \phi | \alpha \rangle \langle \alpha | \psi \rangle = \\ &= \int a(\alpha) \langle \alpha | \psi \rangle \langle \phi | \alpha \rangle = \langle \phi | (A |\psi\rangle). \end{aligned}$$

Because the above equality holds for an arbitrary two quantum states  $|\phi\rangle, |\psi\rangle$ , we have  $A = A^\dagger$ .  $\square$

**Proposition 6.4.1.8.** *Let  $A$  be an observable. If  $|a, x\rangle$  is an orthonormal basis, such that  $|a, x\rangle$  is an eigenstate belonging to the eigenvalue  $a$  (we use  $x$  to denote that there might be more than one eigenstates for eigenvalue  $a$ ), then any eigenstate which belongs to eigenvalue  $a$  can be represented as*

$$|\phi\rangle = \int \langle a, x | \phi \rangle |a, x\rangle dx. \quad (6.4.1.11)$$

*Proof.* This becomes obvious if we remember that eigenstates of different eigenvalues are orthogonal.  $\square$

## 6.4.2 Commuting observables

Let's recall

$$[A, B] = AB - BA. \quad (6.4.2.1)$$

Blow theorem is not strict in mathematical sense.

**Definition 6.4.2.1.** *Two observables  $A, B$  commute iff  $[A, B] = 0$ .*

The theorem below is not a theorem in a strict mathematical sense. In the light of Note 6.4.0.1, we need to require from it some additional compatibility of observables, which means at least that each needs to be well defined on the other's base.

**Theorem 6.4.2.2.** *If  $A, B$  are commuting observables then there exists an orthogonal base of common eigenstates.*

*Proof.* Assume that  $|b, x\rangle$  is an orthonormal basis such that  $B|b, x\rangle = b|b, x\rangle$ . Firstly, we will show that  $A|b, x\rangle \in \mathcal{E}_B(b)$ . Indeed,

$$B(A|b, x\rangle) = A(B|b, x\rangle) = A(b|b, x\rangle) = bA|b, x\rangle. \quad (6.4.2.2)$$

Thus by Proposition 6.4.1.8, we have

$$A|b, x\rangle = \int \langle b, x'| A|b, x\rangle |b, x'\rangle dx'. \quad (6.4.2.3)$$

Let  $|\phi\rangle$  be an arbitrary eigenstate of  $A$ . Thus we have ceratin  $a \in \mathbb{R}$  such that  $A|\phi\rangle = a|\phi\rangle$ . Let's express  $|\phi\rangle$  in basis  $|b, x\rangle$ :

$$|\phi\rangle = \int \phi_{b,x} |b, x\rangle dbdx, \quad (6.4.2.4)$$

where  $\phi_{b,x}$  are some complex coefficients for which the equation holds. Because  $|\phi\rangle$  is an eigenstate of  $A$  belonging to eigenvalue  $a$  we have:

$$\int \phi_{b,x} (A|b, x\rangle - a|b, x\rangle) dbdx = 0. \quad (6.4.2.5)$$

Let's substitute  $A|b, x\rangle$  using equation (6.4.2.3) and expand  $|b, x\rangle$  in the bases of subspace of all eigenstates of  $B$  with eigenvalue  $b$ .

$$\int \phi_{b,x} \left( \int \langle b, x'| A|b, x\rangle |b, x'\rangle dx' - a \int \langle b, x'| b, x\rangle |b, x'\rangle dx' \right) dbdx = 0. \quad (6.4.2.6)$$

$$\int \phi_{b,x} \langle b, x'| A - a|b, x\rangle |b, x'\rangle dx' dbdx = 0. \quad (6.4.2.7)$$

$$\int \left( \int \phi_{b,x} \langle b, x'| A - a|b, x\rangle dx \right) |b, x'\rangle dx' db = 0. \quad (6.4.2.8)$$

$$\int \langle b, x'| (A - a)P_b |\phi\rangle |b, x'\rangle dx' db = 0, \quad (6.4.2.9)$$

where  $P_b$  is a projection into subspace  $\mathcal{E}_B(b)$  (i.e.  $|\phi\rangle = \int \phi_{b,x} |b, x\rangle dx$ .)

Thus for any eigenvalue  $b$  we have  $\langle b, x'| (A - a)P_b |\phi\rangle = 0$  for each  $x'$  and therefore  $(A - a)P_b |\phi\rangle = 0$ . Thus  $P_b |\phi\rangle \in \mathcal{E}_A(a)$ . Since  $|\phi\rangle$  was an arbitrary eigenstate of  $\mathcal{E}_A(a)$ , we showed that

$$P_b \mathcal{E}_A(a) \subset \mathcal{E}_A(a). \quad (6.4.2.10)$$

Note that since  $\mathcal{E}_A(a)$  for all eigenvalues  $a$  span entire quantum state space,  $P_b \mathcal{E}_A(a)$  for all eigenvalues  $a$  span  $\mathcal{E}_B(b)$  subspace. But this means that we can find an orthonormal base  $|a, u\rangle$  of  $\mathcal{E}_B(b)$  such that  $A|a, u\rangle = a|a, u\rangle$  and obviously  $B|a, u\rangle = b|a, u\rangle$ . And since  $\mathcal{E}_B(b)$  for all eigenvalues  $b$  span entire quantum space, this proves the thesis.  $\square$

The above theorem extends to:

**Theorem 6.4.2.3.** *If  $A_1, \dots, A_n$  are commuting observables then there exists an orthogonal base of common eigenstates.*

### 6.4.3 Some properties of Dirac $\delta$

**Fact 6.4.3.1.**

$$(2\pi)^n \delta(k) = \int_{\mathbb{R}^n} e^{ikx} dx \quad (6.4.3.1)$$

*Proof.* Let's calculate now Fourier Transform of Dirac delta:

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{F}(\delta_0)(\phi) &= \delta_0(\mathcal{F}(\phi)) = \mathcal{F}(\phi)(0) = \int_{\mathbb{R}^n} \phi(x) e^{-ix \cdot 0} dx = \\ &= (2\pi)^{-\frac{n}{2}} \int_{\mathbb{R}^n} \phi(x) \cdot 1 dx = (2\pi)^{-\frac{n}{2}} 1(\phi). \end{aligned} \quad (6.4.3.2)$$

Thus

$$\mathcal{F}(\delta_0) = (2\pi)^{-\frac{n}{2}} \cdot 1, \quad (6.4.3.3)$$

and

$$\delta_0 = (2\pi)^{-\frac{n}{2}} \cdot \mathcal{F}^{-1}(1). \quad (6.4.3.4)$$

The thesis holds in distributions sense.  $\square$

**Fact 6.4.3.2.**

$$\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \frac{\sin^2(nx)}{\pi n x^2} = \delta(x). \quad (6.4.3.5)$$

*Proof.* It is known that

$$\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \frac{\sin^2(z)}{z^2} dz = \pi. \quad (6.4.3.6)$$

By substitution  $z = nx$ ,  $dz = ndx$  we will get thesis.  $\square$

**Lemma 6.4.3.3.**

$$\frac{e^{itE} - 1}{E} \cdot \frac{e^{-itE} - 1}{E} = \frac{\sin^2(\frac{tE}{2})}{(\frac{E}{2})^2}. \quad (6.4.3.7)$$

*Proof.*

$$\frac{1 - e^{itE}}{E} \cdot \frac{1 - e^{-itE}}{E} = \frac{2 - e^{itE} - e^{-itE}}{E^2} = \frac{2(1 - \cos(tE))}{E^2} = 4 \frac{\sin^2(\frac{tE}{2})}{E^2}.$$

□

**Corollary 6.4.3.4.**

$$\lim_{t \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{t} \cdot \frac{1 - e^{itE}}{E} \cdot \frac{1 - e^{-itE}}{E} = \delta(E). \quad (6.4.3.8)$$

**Fact 6.4.3.5.**

$$\lim_{\varepsilon \rightarrow 0} \frac{1}{\pi} \frac{\varepsilon}{x^2 + \varepsilon^2} = \delta(x), \quad (6.4.3.9)$$

*Proof.* Recall that

$$\frac{d}{dz} \arctan(z) = \frac{1}{1 + z^2}, \quad (6.4.3.10)$$

thus

$$\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \frac{1}{1 + z^2} dz = \pi. \quad (6.4.3.11)$$

By substitution  $x = \varepsilon z$ , we have

$$\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \frac{1}{1 + (\frac{z}{\varepsilon})^2} \frac{1}{\varepsilon} dx = \pi, \quad (6.4.3.12)$$

which results in

$$\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \frac{\varepsilon}{\varepsilon^2 + x^2} dx = \pi, \quad (6.4.3.13)$$

which proves thesis.

□

**Fact 6.4.3.6.** *If  $\delta$  is Dirac delta and  $x \in \mathbb{R}^n$ , then*

$$\delta(f(x)) = \sum_i \frac{1}{|\det(\nabla f)(x_i)|} \delta(x - x_i), \quad (6.4.3.14)$$

*where  $x_i$  are all discrete zeros of a real function  $f$ .*



*Proof.* Let  $y$  depends on  $z$  in a following way  $y = f(z)$ .

$$\begin{aligned}
 \delta(f(x)) &= \int \delta(f(z))\delta(z-x)dz = \sum_i \int_{O_\varepsilon(x_i)} \delta(f(z))\delta(z-x)dz \\
 &= \sum_i \int_{f(O_\varepsilon(x_i))} \delta(y)\delta(z-x) \left| \det \frac{\partial z}{\partial y} \right| dy = \sum_i \int_{f(O_\varepsilon(x_i))} \delta(y)\delta(z-x) \left| \frac{1}{\det \frac{\partial y}{\partial z}} \right| dy \\
 &= \sum_i \frac{1}{|\det(\nabla f)(x_i)|} \delta(x_i - x),
 \end{aligned}$$

where the last equality holds because on a  $f(O_\varepsilon(x_i))$  variable  $z$  is a function of  $y$  and for  $y = 0$  we have  $z = x_i$ .  $\square$

**Corollary 6.4.3.7.** *If  $\delta$  is Dirac delta and  $x \in \mathbb{R}$ , then*

$$\delta(f(x)) = \sum_i \frac{1}{|f'(x_i)|} \delta(x - x_i), \quad (6.4.3.15)$$

where  $x_i$  are all discrete zeros of a real function  $f$ .

#### 6.4.4 Representations

Short and incomplete digest from [Dir81][III. Representations]

We will use all the time symbol  $\delta$  but it depends on measure if it is Dirac delta or Kronecker delta. Let  $|\alpha\rangle$  be states of orthogonal basis normed in the following way  $\langle\alpha|\beta\rangle = 0$  for  $\alpha \neq \beta$  and  $\int \langle\alpha|\beta\rangle d\alpha = 1$ .

**Definition 6.4.4.1.** *Let  $A_1, \dots, A_k$  be set of commuting observables and  $f$  is a real valued function. Then we define observable*

$$f(A_1, \dots, A_k) |\alpha\rangle = f(\lambda_1, \dots, \lambda_n) |\alpha\rangle, \quad (6.4.4.1)$$

where  $A_i |\alpha\rangle = \lambda_i |\alpha\rangle$ .

**Definition 6.4.4.2.** *Commuting observables  $A_1, \dots, A_k$  are called independent, if and only if for any observable  $A_i$  there is no real function  $f$  such that  $A_i = f(A_1, \dots, A_{i-1}, A_{i+1}, \dots, A_k)$ .*

**Definition 6.4.4.3.** *Commuting observables  $A_1, \dots, A_k$  are called complete, if for any observable  $B$  with the same eigenstates basis*

$$B = f(A_1, \dots, A_k). \quad (6.4.4.2)$$

**Fact 6.4.4.4.** *If  $A_1, \dots, A_n$  are commuting and complete observables any basis states can be uniquely represented as*

$$|\alpha\rangle = |\lambda_1, \dots, \lambda_n\rangle, \quad (6.4.4.3)$$

where  $A_i |\alpha\rangle = \lambda_i |\alpha\rangle$ .

*Proof.* Assume to the contrary that we have the whole subspace of states  $|\beta\rangle$  such that  $A_i |\beta\rangle = \lambda'_i |\beta\rangle$  for fixed  $\lambda'_i$ . Then the basis state  $|\alpha\rangle$  will be represented as

$$|\alpha\rangle = |\lambda_1, \dots, \lambda_n, \theta_1, \dots, \theta_k\rangle. \quad (6.4.4.4)$$

Let's define  $L_i |\alpha\rangle = \theta_i |\alpha\rangle$ . But because  $A_1, \dots, A_n$  are complete  $L_i = f_i(A_1, \dots, A_n)$  and thus  $\theta_i = f_i(\lambda_1, \dots, \lambda_n)$ . Therefore unique set of  $\lambda_1, \dots, \lambda_n$  defines unique basis vector  $|\alpha\rangle$ .  $\square$

The above representation can be normalised in the following way

$$\langle \lambda'_1, \dots, \lambda'_n | \lambda_1, \dots, \lambda_n \rangle = \delta(\lambda'_1 - \lambda_1) \dots \delta(\lambda'_n - \lambda_n). \quad (6.4.4.5)$$

### 6.4.5 Unitary transformations

Assume  $|\alpha\rangle$  is a normalised basis where  $\alpha$  is a vector of eigenvalues for the system of complete commuting observables. Two different basis states  $|\alpha\rangle$  and  $|\beta\rangle$  must be orthogonal, because at least one eigenvalue needs to be different. We will additionally assume they are normalised  $\langle \alpha | \beta \rangle = \delta(\alpha - \beta)$ .

Assume we have an isometry  $u$  on a space of these vectors. Then

Consider transformation of quantum states

$$U |\alpha\rangle = |u(\alpha)\rangle. \quad (6.4.5.1)$$

Because  $U$  transforms basis states to basis states it can be extended to linear operator on the whole states space.

We will show that  $U$  is unitary (i.e.  $U^\dagger U = U^\dagger U = I$ .)

$$\langle \beta | U^\dagger U | \alpha \rangle = \langle u(\beta) | u(\alpha) \rangle = \delta(u(\beta) - u(\alpha)) = \delta(\beta - \alpha) = \langle \beta | \alpha \rangle.$$

The equality  $\delta(u(\alpha) - u(\beta)) = \delta(\alpha - \beta)$  holds because  $u$  is an isometry (i.e.  $|\det(\nabla u)| = 1$ ) and by Fact 6.4.3.6.

In general case where  $u$  is just an arbitrary  $1 - 1$  and "onto" map from the representation space of all eigenvalues vectors for the system of complete observables into the other representation space of all eigenvalues of vectors for the system of complete observables (we don't even require the kets will be from the same states space) the transformation given by

$$U |\alpha\rangle = |\det(\nabla u(\alpha))|^{1/2} |u(\alpha)\rangle \quad (6.4.5.2)$$

is unitary provided both  $|\alpha\rangle$  and  $|u(\alpha)\rangle$  are normalised.

The other fact which is worth to note is that if we transform space of states with an arbitrary unitary transformation  $U$  as

$$|\alpha\rangle \mapsto U |\alpha\rangle, \quad (6.4.5.3)$$

then any linear operator  $A$  transforms in a way

$$A \mapsto UAU^\dagger. \quad (6.4.5.4)$$

Indeed, it is enough to notice

$$\langle\beta| U^\dagger(UAU^\dagger)U |\alpha\rangle = \langle\beta| A |\alpha\rangle. \quad (6.4.5.5)$$

### 6.4.6 Momentum and Position operators

Let us consider states of one non-relativistic particle for which we assume that can be fully described as superpositions of locations in  $\mathbb{R}^3$ . By  $|x\rangle$  we will denote a quantum state which describe a particle being "around" point  $x \in \mathbb{R}^3$ . We understand "around" in Dirac delta sense

$$\langle x_1 | x_2 \rangle = \delta(x_2 - x_1). \quad (6.4.6.1)$$

Dirac delta provides nice normalisation where

$$\int |x\rangle \langle x|z\rangle dx = \int |x\rangle \delta(z - x)dz = |z\rangle, \quad (6.4.6.2)$$

as expected.

Similarity by  $|p\rangle$  we denote a quantum state, which describes a quantum state of particle which has a momentum "around"  $p \in \mathbb{R}^3$  (as you can notice usage of letter  $p$  is important for this convention, because only by usage of the letter we distinguish this from position representation).

Now, it seems to be a law of the nature that

$$\boxed{\langle x | p \rangle = (2\pi\hbar)^{-\frac{3}{2}} \exp\left(-i\frac{p \cdot x}{\hbar}\right)} \quad (6.4.6.3)$$

Where  $(2\pi\hbar)^{-\frac{3}{2}}$  is a normalisation factor needed to have

$$\langle p_1 | p_2 \rangle = \delta(p_2 - p_1). \quad (6.4.6.4)$$

Indeed, first note that (as proved for for (12.15.1.2)):

$$\mathcal{F}(1)(x) = (2\pi)^{\frac{n}{2}} \delta(x). \quad (6.4.6.5)$$

in the context of distributions.

Now let's do calculations integrating in the sense of distributions:

$$\begin{aligned} \langle p_1 | p_2 \rangle &= \int \langle p_1 | x \rangle \langle x | p_2 \rangle dx = \\ (2\pi\hbar)^{-3} \int \exp\left(-i\frac{(p_2 - p_1)x}{\hbar}\right) dx &\stackrel{\hbar z \rightarrow x}{=} (2\pi\hbar)^{-3} \int \exp(-i(p_2 - p_1)z) \left| \det \frac{\partial x}{\partial z} \right| dz \\ &= (2\pi)^{-\frac{3}{2}} \hbar^{-3} \hbar^3 \int (2\pi)^{-\frac{3}{2}} \exp(-i(p_2 - p_1)z) dz = (2\pi)^{-\frac{3}{2}} \mathcal{F}(1)(p_2 - p_1) \\ &= (2\pi)^{-\frac{3}{2}} (2\pi)^{\frac{3}{2}} \delta(p_2 - p_1) = \delta(p_2 - p_1). \end{aligned}$$

### 6.4.7 Wave packet

Let us consider a quantum state

$$|\phi\rangle = \int_{\mathbb{R}^3} \frac{A}{(\Delta p)^3} e^{-\frac{1}{2(\Delta p)^2}(p-p_0)^2} e^{\frac{i}{\hbar}x_0 p} |p\rangle dp, \quad (6.4.7.1)$$

where factor  $A$  is to be established later.

Let's calculate amplitude

$$\langle x | \phi \rangle = \int_{\mathbb{R}^3} A \frac{(2\pi\hbar)^{-\frac{3}{2}}}{(\Delta p)^3} e^{-\frac{1}{2(\Delta p)^2}(p-p_0)^2} e^{-\frac{i}{\hbar}(x-x_0)p} dp. \quad (6.4.7.2)$$

To calculate apply to this equation (10.4.1.2). Recall:

$$\int_{-\infty}^{+\infty} \frac{1}{\sigma\sqrt{2\pi}} e^{izy} e^{-\frac{1}{2}\left(\frac{z-\mu}{\sigma}\right)^2} dz = \exp\left(i\mu y - \frac{\sigma^2 y^2}{2}\right). \quad (6.4.7.3)$$

Convert this to  $\mathbb{R}^3$  case, using Fubini's Theorem and property of multiplying values when adding arguments for exp.

$$\int_{\mathbb{R}^3} \frac{(2\pi)^{-\frac{3}{2}}}{\sigma^3} e^{izy} e^{-\frac{1}{2}\left(\frac{z-\mu}{\sigma}\right)^2} dz = \exp\left(i\mu y - \frac{\sigma^2 y^2}{2}\right). \quad (6.4.7.4)$$

Let's do substitutions

$$\begin{aligned} p &\rightarrow z, \\ p_0 &\rightarrow \mu, \\ \Delta p &\rightarrow \sigma, \\ -\frac{x-x_0}{\hbar} &\rightarrow y. \end{aligned}$$

Thus

$$\langle x|\phi\rangle = A\hbar^{-\frac{3}{2}} \exp\left(-i\frac{p_0(x-x_0)}{\hbar} - \frac{(\Delta p)^2(x-x_0)^2}{2\hbar^2}\right). \quad (6.4.7.5)$$

Then

$$|\langle x|\phi\rangle|^2 = A^2\hbar^{-3} \exp\left(-\frac{(\Delta p)^2(x-x_0)^2}{\hbar^2}\right). \quad (6.4.7.6)$$

To get  $\int |\langle x|\phi\rangle|^2 dx = 1$ , we need to set  $A = (\Delta p)^{\frac{3}{2}}\pi^{-\frac{3}{4}}$ . You can also check that with this choice of  $A$ , we have  $|\langle \phi|\phi\rangle|^2 = 1$ .

Let's summarize

$$|\phi\rangle = \int_{\mathbb{R}^3} \frac{\pi^{-\frac{3}{4}}}{(\Delta p)^{3/2}} e^{-\frac{1}{2(\Delta p)^2}(p-p_0)^2} e^{\frac{i}{\hbar}x_0 p} |p\rangle dp, \quad (6.4.7.7)$$

$$\langle x|\phi\rangle = \pi^{-\frac{3}{4}} \left(\frac{\Delta p}{\hbar}\right)^{\frac{3}{2}} \exp\left(-i\frac{p_0(x-x_0)}{\hbar}\right) \exp\left(-\frac{(\Delta p)^2(x-x_0)^2}{2\hbar^2}\right). \quad (6.4.7.8)$$

## 6.5 Schrödinger and Heisenber equations of motion

### 6.5.1 Time independent Hamiltonian

Suppose we have equation of quantum state evolution

$$i\hbar \frac{\partial}{\partial t} |\phi\rangle = H |\phi\rangle. \quad (6.5.1.1)$$

Let's consider it in units where  $\hbar = 1$ . Note that here  $|\phi\rangle$  depends on time. Assume that  $H$  does not depend on time. Then we have

$$|\phi(t)\rangle = e^{-itH} |\phi(0)\rangle. \quad (6.5.1.2)$$

Assume we have an observable  $A_S$  which doesn't depend on time.

We may now propose a process of measurement, which goes as follows. We start with state  $|\phi(0)\rangle$  let it evolve with Hamiltonian  $H$  for time  $t$  and then measure observable  $A_S$ . One may claim that this is a process of measuring some quantity for the state  $|\phi(0)\rangle$ , thus we should have observable  $A_H$  which acts on  $|\phi(0)\rangle$  related to this measurement process. Assume that in described process of measurement, we got value  $\lambda$ . That means that when we measured  $A_S$  against  $e^{-itH} |\phi(0)\rangle$  we got state  $|\psi\rangle$  and  $A_S |\psi\rangle = \lambda |\psi\rangle$ . Now, we want an observable  $A_H$  which will be giving us the same results of state  $|\phi(0)\rangle$ .

The natural candidate is

$$A_H = e^{itH} A_S e^{-itH}. \quad (6.5.1.3)$$

When we go back in time of time  $t$  and take  $|\psi_0\rangle = e^{itH} |\psi\rangle$ , we got  $A_H |\psi_0\rangle = \lambda |\psi_0\rangle$ , which shows that  $A_H$  acting on  $|\phi(0)\rangle$  has exactly the same spectrum as  $A_S$  acting on  $|\phi(t)\rangle$ .

Let's see an evolution of  $A_H$  in time.

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{\partial A_H}{\partial t} &= i(H e^{itH} A_S e^{-itH} - e^{itH} A_S H e^{-itH}) \\ &= i(H e^{itH} A_S e^{-itH} - e^{itH} A_S e^{-itH} H) = i[H, A_H]. \end{aligned}$$

Thus

$$\boxed{\frac{\partial A_H}{\partial t} = i[H, A_H]} \quad (6.5.1.4)$$

Which is a Heisenberg equation of observable evolution. With reinstated  $\hbar$  it is as follows:

$$\boxed{\frac{\partial A_H}{\partial t} = \frac{i}{\hbar} [H, A_H]} \quad (6.5.1.5)$$

### 6.5.2 Time dependent Hamiltonian

Suppose we have equation of quantum state evolution

$$i\hbar \frac{\partial}{\partial t} |\phi\rangle = H |\phi\rangle. \quad (6.5.2.1)$$

Let's consider it in units where  $\hbar = 1$ . Note that here  $|\phi\rangle$  depends on time and also  $H$  might depend on time.

Let

$$U(t_1, t_2) |\phi_0\rangle := |\phi(t_2)\rangle. \quad (6.5.2.2)$$

where  $\phi$  is a solution of differential equation (6.5.2.1) for a boundary condition  $|\phi(t_1)\rangle = |\phi_0\rangle$ . Linearity of  $U(t_1, t_2)$  is obvious as (6.5.2.1) is a linear equation. It is also straightforward to see that

$$U(t_1, t_3) = U(t_2, t_3)U(t_1, t_2) \quad (6.5.2.3)$$

and

$$U(t, t) = I. \quad (6.5.2.4)$$

We will show that  $U$  is unitary. Assume that  $\phi$  and  $\psi$  are solutions of (6.5.2.1). Consider

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{\partial}{\partial t} \langle \phi(t) | \psi(t) \rangle &= \left\{ \frac{\partial}{\partial t} \langle \phi(t) | \right\} |\psi(t)\rangle + \langle \phi(t) | \left\{ \frac{\partial}{\partial t} |\psi(t)\rangle \right\} \\ &= \langle \phi(t) | (-iH)^\dagger |\psi(t)\rangle + \langle \phi(t) | -iH |\psi(t)\rangle \\ &= \langle \phi(t) | iH |\psi(t)\rangle + \langle \phi(t) | -iH |\psi(t)\rangle = 0. \end{aligned}$$

Thus

$$\langle \phi_0 | \psi_0 \rangle = \langle \phi_0 | U^\dagger(t_1, t_2) U(t_1, t_2) | \psi_0 \rangle. \quad (6.5.2.5)$$

Hence  $U^\dagger(t_1, t_2) U(t_1, t_2) = I$ . From that, it is easy to show that  $U^\dagger(t_1, t_2) = U(t_2, t_1)$ , thus also  $U(t_1, t_2) U^\dagger(t_1, t_2) = I$ .

Note that from (6.5.2.1) we have

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial t}U(t_0, t) = -iH(t)U(t_0, t). \quad (6.5.2.6)$$

and

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial t}U^\dagger(t_0, t) = iU^\dagger(t_0, t)H(t). \quad (6.5.2.7)$$

Assume we have an observable  $A_S$  acting on  $|\phi(t)\rangle$ . Now if we want to replace it by observable  $A_H$  giving the same measurements but acting on  $|\phi(0)\rangle$  by similar argument than for (6.5.1.3) we get

$$A_H = U^\dagger(0, t)A_S U(0, t). \quad (6.5.2.8)$$

and similarly

$$H_H(t) = U^\dagger(0, t)H(t)U(0, t). \quad (6.5.2.9)$$

Observe now, how  $A_H$  evolves in time

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{\partial A_H}{\partial t} &= iU^\dagger(t_0, t)H(t)A_S U(0, t) - iU^\dagger(t_0, t)A_H H(t)U(t_0, t) \\ &= iU^\dagger(t_0, t)H(t)U(0, t)U^\dagger(0, t)A_S U(0, t) \\ &\quad - iU^\dagger(t_0, t)A_S U(0, t)U^\dagger(0, t)H(t)U(t_0, t) \\ &= i(H_H(t)A_H(t) - A_H H_H(t)) = i[H_H(t), A_H]. \end{aligned}$$

Thus

$$\boxed{\frac{\partial A_H}{\partial t} = i[H_H(t), A_H]} \quad (6.5.2.10)$$

With reinstated  $\hbar$ :

$$\boxed{\frac{\partial A_H}{\partial t} = \frac{i}{\hbar}[H_H(t), A_H]} \quad (6.5.2.11)$$

Note that in case when  $H = \text{const}$ , since  $U(0, t) = e^{-itH}$  and since it commutes with  $H$ , from (6.5.2.9), we have  $H_H = H$ . Thus equation (6.5.1.4) is just a particular case of (6.5.2.10).



## 6.6 General Solution of $\frac{\partial}{\partial t} |\phi(t)\rangle = A(t) |\phi(t)\rangle$

Consider a general equation

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial t} |\phi(t)\rangle = A(t) |\phi(t)\rangle. \quad (6.6.0.1)$$

Assume we have a solution  $|\phi(t)\rangle = U(t_0, t) |\phi(t_0)\rangle$ , where  $U(t_0, t_0) = 1$ . Note that  $U(t_0, t)$  satisfies

$$U(t_0, t) = 1 + \int_{t_0}^t ds A(s) U(s). \quad (6.6.0.2)$$

Let

$$\begin{cases} R_0(t_0, t) = 1, \\ R_n(t_0, t) = \int_{t_0}^t ds_n A(s_n) \int_{t_0}^{s_n} ds_{n-1} A(s_{n-1}) \cdots \int_{t_0}^{s_2} ds_1 A(s_1) \text{ for } n > 0. \end{cases} \quad (6.6.0.3)$$

Note that under the condition of convergence, which will be not studied further at this point, the following

$$U(t_0, t) = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} R_n(t_0, t) \quad (6.6.0.4)$$

satisfies equation (6.6.0.2). This is called the Dyson series.

Let's introduce ordering operator:

**Definition 6.6.0.1.**

$$\mathcal{T} A(t_1) \cdot A(t_2) \cdots A(t_n) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} A(t_{a(1)}) A(t_{a(2)}) \cdots A(t_{a(n)}), \quad (6.6.0.5)$$

where  $a$  is a permutation of  $1, 2, \dots, n$  such that

$$t_{a(1)} \geq t_{a(2)} \geq \cdots \geq t_{a(n)}. \quad (6.6.0.6)$$

Note that

$$R_n(t_0, t) = \frac{1}{n!} \int_{t_0}^t ds_n \cdots \int_{t_0}^t ds_1 \mathcal{T} A(s_1) \cdot A(s_2) \cdots A(s_n). \quad (6.6.0.7)$$

Let's denote (6.6.0.4) in a compact form

$$U(t_0, t) = \mathcal{T} \exp \left( \int_{t_0}^t ds A(s) \right). \quad (6.6.0.8)$$

Hence, in particular case when  $A(t_1)$  and  $A(t_2)$  commutes for any  $t_1, t_2$ , we have

$$U(t_0, t) = \exp \left( \int_{t_0}^t ds A(s) \right). \quad (6.6.0.9)$$

## 6.7 Dirac's wave function decomposition

We will study here the idea from [Dir81][31]. Consider a Schrödinger equation of quantum state evolution

$$i\hbar \frac{\partial}{\partial t} |\phi\rangle = H |\phi\rangle. \quad (6.7.0.1)$$

Obviously  $|\phi\rangle$  depends on time  $t$ . Consider amplitude  $\langle x|\phi\rangle$  in a form

$$\langle x|\phi\rangle = A e^{\frac{i}{\hbar} S}, \quad (6.7.0.2)$$

where  $A$  and  $S$  are real values which both depend on position  $x$  and time  $t$ .

Consider the following operator  $U$

$$\langle x| U(t) |\psi\rangle \stackrel{def}{=} \langle x| e^{-\frac{i}{\hbar} S(x,t)} |\psi\rangle. \quad (6.7.0.3)$$

Note that  $U(t)$  is unitary, we can consider then the whole space of quantum states together with operators as transformed by  $U(t)$  if required. Recall then operators transform as follows:  $A_{U(t)} \mapsto U(t) A U(t)^\dagger$ .

Note that position operators are unchanged under  $U(t)$  (i.e.  $X_{U(t)k} = X_k$ ).

Let

$$|u(t)\rangle \stackrel{def}{=} U(t) |\phi(t)\rangle. \quad (6.7.0.4)$$

Note that

$$\langle x|u\rangle = A. \quad (6.7.0.5)$$

Note that

$$\langle x| \frac{\partial}{\partial t} |\phi\rangle = \frac{\partial A}{\partial t} e^{\frac{i}{\hbar} S} + \frac{i}{\hbar} A \frac{\partial S}{\partial t} e^{\frac{i}{\hbar} S}. \quad (6.7.0.6)$$

Thus

$$e^{-\frac{i}{\hbar} S} \langle x| H |\phi\rangle = i\hbar \frac{\partial A}{\partial t} - A \frac{\partial S}{\partial t}. \quad (6.7.0.7)$$

And from the above

$$\boxed{\langle x| H_{U(t)} |u\rangle = i\hbar \frac{\partial A}{\partial t} - A \frac{\partial S}{\partial t}} \quad (6.7.0.8)$$

Note that

$$\langle x| P_k |\phi\rangle = -i\hbar \frac{\partial A}{\partial x^k} e^{\frac{i}{\hbar} S} + A \frac{\partial S}{\partial x^k} e^{\frac{i}{\hbar} S} \quad (6.7.0.9)$$

,

$$\boxed{\langle x| P_{U(t)k} |u\rangle = \langle x| P_k |u\rangle + \langle x| \frac{\partial S}{\partial x^k} |u\rangle} \quad (6.7.0.10)$$

### 6.7.1 Classical limit

Assume that  $A$  changes very slowly in time and space. If we take  $\hbar \rightarrow 0$ , we can write

$$\langle x | H_{U(t)} | u \rangle = \langle x | -\frac{\partial S}{\partial t} | u \rangle \quad (6.7.1.1)$$

and

$$\langle x | P_{U(t)k} | u \rangle = \langle x | \frac{\partial S}{\partial x^k} | u \rangle. \quad (6.7.1.2)$$

Let  $H_c$  be a classical Hamiltonian, where  $p_k$  and  $q_k$  are laid exactly as  $P_k$  and  $X_k$  in  $H$ . Because  $U(t)$  is unitary, operators  $P_{U(t)k}$  and  $X_k$  are laid in  $H_{U(t)}$  exactly as  $P_k$  and  $X_k$  in  $H$ . That means that

$$\langle x | H_{U(t)} | u \rangle = \langle x | H_c(\frac{\partial S}{\partial x}, x) | u \rangle, \quad (6.7.1.3)$$

hence

$$\langle x | -\frac{\partial S}{\partial t} | u \rangle = \langle x | H_c(\frac{\partial S}{\partial x}, x) | u \rangle. \quad (6.7.1.4)$$

Thus we have

$$-\frac{\partial S}{\partial t} = H_c(\frac{\partial S}{\partial x}, x), \quad (6.7.1.5)$$

which gives exactly Hamilton-Jacobi equation (2.3.3.7).

This equation is satisfied by action functional along stationary trajectory  $q$ :

$$S(x, t) = \int_{t_0}^t L(q, \dot{q}, t') dt', \quad (6.7.1.6)$$

where  $x = q(t)$ . Recall that by (2.3.3.3),  $\frac{\partial S}{\partial x}$  is canonical momentum.

## 6.8 Uncertainty principle

**Lemma 6.8.0.1.** *For any two observables  $A$  and  $B$  we have*

$$\langle \phi | A^2 | \phi \rangle^{\frac{1}{2}} \langle \phi | B^2 | \phi \rangle^{\frac{1}{2}} \geq \frac{1}{2} | \langle \phi | [A, B] | \phi \rangle |. \quad (6.8.0.1)$$

Moreover, the equality holds iff there exist  $\lambda_1, \lambda_2 \in \mathbb{R}$ , not both zero, such that

$$i\lambda_1 A\phi + \lambda_2 B\phi = 0. \quad (6.8.0.2)$$

*Proof.* By Schwarz inequality we have

$$\langle \phi | A^2 | \phi \rangle^{\frac{1}{2}} \langle \phi | B^2 | \phi \rangle^{\frac{1}{2}} \geq | \langle \phi | AB | \phi \rangle |, \quad (6.8.0.3)$$

on the other hand

$$\langle \phi | A^2 | \phi \rangle^{\frac{1}{2}} \langle \phi | B^2 | \phi \rangle^{\frac{1}{2}} \geq | \langle \phi | BA | \phi \rangle |. \quad (6.8.0.4)$$

Thus

$$\begin{aligned} \langle \phi | A^2 | \phi \rangle^{\frac{1}{2}} \langle \phi | B^2 | \phi \rangle^{\frac{1}{2}} &\geq \frac{1}{2} \left( | \langle \phi | AB | \phi \rangle | + | \langle \phi | BA | \phi \rangle | \right) \geq \\ &\frac{1}{2} | \langle \phi | AB | \phi \rangle - \langle \phi | BA | \phi \rangle | = \frac{1}{2} | \langle \phi | [A, B] | \phi \rangle |. \end{aligned} \quad (6.8.0.5)$$

We have proven inequality (6.8.0.1). We will prove moreover part. Assume that we have equality in (6.8.0.1). If we have equality in (6.8.0.1), then we must also have equality in (6.8.0.3) and (6.8.0.3). From the properties of Schwarz inequality this means that  $A\phi$  and  $B\phi$  are linearly dependant. If  $A\phi = 0$  then obviously  $A\phi$  and  $B\phi$  are linearly dependant and the equation (6.8.0.2) holds for  $\lambda_1 = 1$  and  $\lambda_2 = 0$ . Assume then that  $A\phi \neq 0$ . Thus, we have  $\lambda \in \mathbb{C}$  such that  $B\phi = \lambda A\phi$ . Since we have equality in (6.8.0.1), we must have also

$$| \langle \phi | AB | \phi \rangle | + | \langle \phi | BA | \phi \rangle | = | \langle \phi | AB | \phi \rangle - \langle \phi | BA | \phi \rangle |. \quad (6.8.0.6)$$

Which implies the following.

$$| \langle \phi | A^2 \lambda | \phi \rangle | + | \langle \phi | \bar{\lambda} A^2 | \phi \rangle | = | \langle \phi | A^2 \lambda | \phi \rangle - \langle \phi | \bar{\lambda} A^2 | \phi \rangle |. \quad (6.8.0.7)$$

Hence  $2|\lambda| = |\lambda - \bar{\lambda}|$ , which is equivalent  $|\lambda| = |\text{Im } \lambda|$ . Thus  $\text{Re } \lambda = 0$  and the moreover part is proved.  $\square$

**Definition 6.8.0.2.** Let  $A$  be an observable and  $\phi$  be a state of the system.

$$\langle A \rangle_\phi := \langle \phi | A | \phi \rangle. \quad (6.8.0.8)$$

We can interpret physically  $\langle A \rangle_\phi$  in the following way. When in some way we create copies of the state  $\phi$  and measure the value of observable  $A$  as average value of the measurements in limit we get  $\langle A \rangle_\phi$ .

**Definition 6.8.0.3.** Let  $A$  be an observable and  $\phi$  be a state of the system.

$$\sigma_\phi(A) := \langle \phi | (A - \langle A \rangle_\phi)^2 | \phi \rangle^{\frac{1}{2}}. \quad (6.8.0.9)$$

The above is the standard deviation of observable  $A$  if we measure it in copies of state  $\phi$ .

**Theorem 6.8.0.4.** *For any two observables  $A$  and  $B$  we have and state  $\phi$ , we have*

$$\sigma_\phi(A)\sigma_\phi(B) \geq \frac{1}{2} |\langle \phi | [A, B] | \phi \rangle|. \quad (6.8.0.10)$$

**Corollary 6.8.0.5.** *Let  $Q$  be a position operator and  $P$  be a momentum operator and  $\phi$  be a state, then*

$$\sigma_\phi(Q)\sigma_\phi(P) \geq \frac{\hbar}{2}. \quad (6.8.0.11)$$

## 6.9 Spin formalism

We will assume that we have spin self-conjugate observables  $S_x, S_y, S_z$  which satisfy the following commutation relations

$$\begin{aligned} [S_x, S_y] &= iS_z, \\ [S_y, S_z] &= iS_x, \\ [S_z, S_x] &= iS_y. \end{aligned} \quad (6.9.0.1)$$

Let's define

$$S^2 \stackrel{def}{=} S_x^2 + S_y^2 + S_z^2. \quad (6.9.0.2)$$

**Fact 6.9.0.1.**

$$[S^2, S_x] = [S^2, S_y] = [S^2, S_z] = 0. \quad (6.9.0.3)$$

*Proof.* We will show  $[S^2, S_z] = 0$  (the rest can be shown analogously).

$$\begin{aligned} [S_x^2, S_z] &= S_x^2 S_z - S_z S_x^2 = S_x([S_x, S_z] + S_z S_x) + ([S_x, S_z] - S_x S_z) S_x = \\ &= S_x [S_x, S_z] + [S_x, S_z] S_x = -iS_x S_y - iS_y S_x. \end{aligned}$$

Analogously:

$$[S_y^2, S_z] = S_y[S_y, S_z] + [S_y, S_z]S_y = iS_y S_x + iS_x S_y. \quad (6.9.0.4)$$

Hence  $[S_x^2 + S_y^2, S_z] = 0$  and because  $S_z$  and  $S_z^2$  commute,  $[S^2, S_z] = 0$ .

□

**Definition 6.9.0.2.** Let  $\mathcal{E}(l)$  be a set of all such non-zero eigenstates  $|\phi\rangle$  of  $S_z$  such that  $S^2|\phi\rangle = l|\phi\rangle$ .

Let's define certain auxiliary operators

**Definition 6.9.0.3.**

$$S_z^\pm \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} S_x \pm iS_y. \quad (6.9.0.5)$$

**Corollary 6.9.0.4.**

$$[S^2, S_z^+] = [S^2, S_z^-] = 0. \quad (6.9.0.6)$$

**Corollary 6.9.0.5.** If  $S^2|\phi\rangle = l|\phi\rangle$ , then  $S^2(S_z^\pm|\phi\rangle) = l(S_z^\pm|\phi\rangle)$ .

**Fact 6.9.0.6.** If  $|\phi\rangle \neq 0$  such that  $S_z|\phi\rangle = m|\phi\rangle$ , we have

$$S_z S_z^\pm |\phi\rangle = (m \pm 1) S_z^\pm |\phi\rangle. \quad (6.9.0.7)$$

*Proof.*

$$\begin{aligned} S_z S_z^\pm |\phi\rangle &= (S_z S_x \pm i S_z S_y) |\phi\rangle = ([S_z, S_x] + S_x S_z \pm i([S_z, S_y] + S_y S_z)) |\phi\rangle = \\ &= (i S_y + S_x S_z \pm i S_y S_z \pm S_x) |\phi\rangle = m S_z^\pm |\phi\rangle \pm S_z^\pm |\phi\rangle = (m \pm 1) S_z^\pm |\phi\rangle. \end{aligned}$$

□

**Fact 6.9.0.7.** If  $s > 0$  and  $|\phi\rangle \in \mathcal{E}(s(s+1))$  such that  $S_z|\phi\rangle = m|\phi\rangle$ , we have

$$m^2 \leq s(s+1). \quad (6.9.0.8)$$

*Proof.* Without loss of generality, we can assume that  $\langle\phi|\phi\rangle = 1$ . We have

$$\langle\phi|S_x^2|\phi\rangle + \langle\phi|S_y^2|\phi\rangle + \langle\phi|S_z^2|\phi\rangle = s(s+1). \quad (6.9.0.9)$$

Thus

$$\langle\phi|S_x^2|\phi\rangle + \langle\phi|S_y^2|\phi\rangle + m^2 = s(s+1) \quad (6.9.0.10)$$

and hence thesis. □

**Fact 6.9.0.8.**

$$S^2 = S_z^2 + S_z^+ S_z^- - S_z, \quad (6.9.0.11)$$

$$S^2 = S_z^2 + S_z^- S_z^+ + S_z. \quad (6.9.0.12)$$

*Proof.*

$$\begin{aligned} S_z^+ S_z^- &= (S_x + iS_y)(S_x - iS_y) = S_x^2 + iS_y S_x - iS_x S_y + S_y^2 = S_x^2 + S_y^2 - i[S_x, S_y] \\ &= S_x^2 + S_y^2 + S_z = S^2 - S_z^2 + S_z. \end{aligned}$$

Analogously we can show

$$S_z^- S_z^+ = S^2 - S_z^2 - S_z. \quad (6.9.0.13)$$

□

From (6.9.0.8) immediately follows:

**Fact 6.9.0.9.** *If  $s > 0$  and  $|\phi\rangle \in \mathcal{E}(s(s+1))$  such that  $S_z |\phi\rangle = m |\phi\rangle$ , then*

$$S_z^+ S_z^- |\phi\rangle = (s(s+1) - m^2 + m) |\phi\rangle, \quad (6.9.0.14)$$

$$S_z^- S_z^+ |\phi\rangle = (s(s+1) - m^2 - m) |\phi\rangle. \quad (6.9.0.15)$$

**Corollary 6.9.0.10.** *If  $s > 0$  and  $|\phi\rangle \in \mathcal{E}(s(s+1))$  such that  $S_z |\phi\rangle = m |\phi\rangle$  and  $m \notin \{-s, s+1\}$ , then*

$$S_z^- |\phi\rangle \in \mathcal{E}(s(s+1)). \quad (6.9.0.16)$$

*Proof.* Note that

$$s(s+1) - m^2 + m = (s-m+1)(s+m), \quad (6.9.0.17)$$

Thus for  $m \notin \{-s, s+1\}$ , we have  $S_z^+ S_z^- |\phi\rangle \neq 0$ , hence  $S_z^- |\phi\rangle \neq 0$ . And by Corollary 6.9.0.5 we have thesis. □

**Corollary 6.9.0.11.** *If  $s > 0$  and  $|\phi\rangle \in \mathcal{E}(s(s+1))$  such that  $S_z |\phi\rangle = m |\phi\rangle$  and  $m \notin \{-s-1, s\}$ , then*

$$S_z^+ |\phi\rangle \in \mathcal{E}(s(s+1)). \quad (6.9.0.18)$$

*Proof.* Note that

$$s(s+1) - m^2 - m = (s+1+m)(s-m), \quad (6.9.0.19)$$

Thus for  $m \notin \{-s-1, s\}$ , we have  $S_z^- S_z^+ |\phi\rangle \neq 0$ , hence  $S_z^+ |\phi\rangle \neq 0$ . And by Corollary 6.9.0.5 we have thesis. □

**Corollary 6.9.0.12.** *If  $s > 0$  and there exists  $|\phi\rangle \in \mathcal{E}(s(s+1))$  such that  $S_z |\phi\rangle = m |\phi\rangle$ , we have a state  $|\psi\rangle \in \mathcal{E}(s(s+1))$  and integer  $k$  such that*

$$S_z |\psi\rangle = s |\psi\rangle, s = \frac{k}{2} \quad (6.9.0.20)$$

and

$$S_z^+ |\psi\rangle = 0. \quad (6.9.0.21)$$

**Corollary 6.9.0.13.** *If  $s > 0$  and there exists  $|\phi\rangle \in \mathcal{E}(s(s+1))$  such that  $S_z |\phi\rangle = m |\phi\rangle$ , we have  $|\psi\rangle \neq 0$  and integer  $k$  such that*

$$S_z |\psi\rangle = -s |\psi\rangle, s = \frac{k}{2} \quad (6.9.0.22)$$

and

$$S_z^- |\psi\rangle = 0. \quad (6.9.0.23)$$

The most important result of this section is the following.

**Fact 6.9.0.14.** *If  $s > 0$  and there exists  $|\phi\rangle \in \mathcal{E}(s(s+1))$  such that  $S_z |\phi\rangle = m |\phi\rangle$ , then there exists such an integer  $k$  such that  $s = \frac{k}{2}$  and the spectrum of  $S_z$  for eigenstates in  $\mathcal{E}(s(s+1))$  is  $\{-s, -s+1, \dots, s-1, s\}$ .*

### 6.9.1 Pauli matrices and spin of $\frac{1}{2}$

Let's define matrices  $\sigma_x, \sigma_y, \sigma_z$ .

$$\sigma_x = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix}, \sigma_y = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & -i \\ i & 0 \end{bmatrix}, \sigma_z = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & -1 \end{bmatrix}. \quad (6.9.1.1)$$

$\sigma_x, \sigma_y, \sigma_z$  are called Pauli matrices.

Let's compute two multiplication schemas which will be useful to calculate products of the above matrices:

$$\begin{bmatrix} a_{11} & a_{12} \\ a_{21} & a_{22} \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} d_1 & 0 \\ 0 & d_2 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} d_1 a_{11} & d_2 a_{12} \\ d_1 a_{21} & d_2 a_{22} \end{bmatrix}, \quad (6.9.1.2)$$

$$\begin{bmatrix} a_{11} & a_{12} \\ a_{21} & a_{22} \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} 0 & d_1 \\ d_2 & 0 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} d_2 a_{12} & d_1 a_{11} \\ d_2 a_{22} & d_1 a_{21} \end{bmatrix}. \quad (6.9.1.3)$$



Now it is easy to see that:

$$\begin{aligned}\sigma_x\sigma_y &= i\sigma_z, \sigma_y\sigma_x = -i\sigma_z, \\ \sigma_x\sigma_z &= -i\sigma_y, \sigma_z\sigma_x = i\sigma_y, \\ \sigma_y\sigma_z &= i\sigma_x, \sigma_z\sigma_y = -i\sigma_x,\end{aligned}\tag{6.9.1.4}$$

and

$$\sigma_x^2 = \sigma_y^2 = \sigma_z^2 = 1.\tag{6.9.1.5}$$

Hence we have the following commutation relations:

$$[\sigma_x, \sigma_y] = 2i\sigma_z, [\sigma_y, \sigma_z] = 2i\sigma_x, [\sigma_z, \sigma_x] = i\sigma_y.\tag{6.9.1.6}$$

Note that matrices

$$S_x = \frac{1}{2}\sigma_x, S_y = \frac{1}{2}\sigma_y, S_z = \frac{1}{2}\sigma_z,\tag{6.9.1.7}$$

satisfy commutation relations (6.9.0.1) and  $S_x^2 + S_y^2 + S_z^2 = \frac{3}{2} = s(s+1)$ ,

where  $s = \frac{1}{2}$ .

Also note that

$$S_z^+ = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}, S_z^- = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix}.\tag{6.9.1.8}$$

## 6.10 Hydrogen Atom

In this section we will restore  $\hbar$  units, as it will be useful to see it in equations.

### 6.10.1 Angular Momentum

Recall that for “nice enough”  $\psi : \mathbb{R}^3 \rightarrow \mathbb{C}$ , we define momentum operators along each axis as

$$P_i\psi = -i\hbar\frac{\partial}{\partial x^i}\psi \text{ for } i = 1, 2, 3,\tag{6.10.1.1}$$

and position operator as

$$Q_i\psi = x^i\psi \text{ for } i = 1, 2, 3.\tag{6.10.1.2}$$

Let's define the angular momentum operator

$$\begin{aligned} L_1 &= Q_2 P_3 - Q_3 P_2, \\ L_2 &= Q_3 P_1 - Q_1 P_3, \\ L_3 &= Q_1 P_2 - Q_2 P_1. \end{aligned} \tag{6.10.1.3}$$

We will use interchangeably  $x^1, x^2, x^3$  convention with  $x, y, z$ .

$$\begin{aligned} L_x &= -i\hbar \left( y \frac{\partial}{\partial z} - z \frac{\partial}{\partial y} \right), \\ L_y &= -i\hbar \left( z \frac{\partial}{\partial x} - x \frac{\partial}{\partial z} \right), \\ L_z &= -i\hbar \left( x \frac{\partial}{\partial y} - y \frac{\partial}{\partial x} \right). \end{aligned} \tag{6.10.1.4}$$

Let

$$L^2 := L_1^2 + L_2^2 + L_3^2. \tag{6.10.1.5}$$

If we denote symbolically  $\vec{L} := [L_1, L_2, L_3]$  (it is not really a vector – just a convention). And if we treat composition of operators as multiplication in a standard definition of vector cross product, we can nicely formulate commutations rules as

$$\vec{L} \times \vec{L} = i\hbar \vec{L}. \tag{6.10.1.6}$$

The are proved e.g in [see [Gre01](#), 4.8 Angular-Momentum Operators]. For convenience assume spherical coordinates:



Figure 6.1: Graphical demonstration of spherical coordinates.

$$\begin{cases} x = r \sin \theta \cos \phi, \\ y = r \sin \theta \sin \phi, \\ z = r \cos \theta. \end{cases} \quad (6.10.1.7)$$

It can be shown that

$$L_z = -i\hbar \frac{\partial}{\partial \phi}. \quad (6.10.1.8)$$

Indeed,  $\frac{\partial}{\partial \phi} = \frac{\partial x}{\partial \phi} \frac{\partial}{\partial x} + \frac{\partial y}{\partial \phi} \frac{\partial}{\partial y} + \frac{\partial z}{\partial \phi} \frac{\partial}{\partial z} = -y \frac{\partial}{\partial x} + x \frac{\partial}{\partial y} + 0$ .

Let's define

$$\Delta_{\phi, \theta} := \frac{1}{\sin^2 \theta} \cdot \frac{\partial^2}{\partial \phi^2} + \frac{1}{\sin \theta} \cdot \frac{\partial}{\partial \theta} \left( \sin \theta \cdot \frac{\partial}{\partial \theta} \right). \quad (6.10.1.9)$$

It can be also shown that

$$L^2 = -\hbar \Delta_{\phi, \theta}. \quad (6.10.1.10)$$

Interestingly, it is well known that:

$$\Delta = \frac{1}{r^2} \left( \Delta_{\phi, \theta} + \frac{\partial}{\partial r} \left( r^2 \cdot \frac{\partial}{\partial r} \right) \right). \quad (6.10.1.11)$$

From (6.10.1.8) and (6.10.1.10) it is apparent that  $[L^2, L_z] = 0$ . Thus  $L_z$  and  $L^2$  can be measured simultaneously.

Let's recall associated Legendre polynomials:

$$P_{l,m}(x) := \frac{(-1)^m}{2^l l!} (1-x^2)^{m/2} \frac{\partial^{l+m} (x^2-1)^l}{\partial x^{l+m}} \quad (6.10.1.12)$$

for  $l = 0, 1, \dots$  and  $m = -l, \dots, l$ . Now we can define

$$Y_{l,m}(\theta, \phi) := \sqrt{\frac{(2l+1)(l-m)!}{4\pi(l+m)!}} \exp(im\phi) P_{l,m}(\cos(\theta)). \quad (6.10.1.13)$$

They are eigenvectors of both  $L^2$  and  $L_z$  with the eigenvalues as in equations below.

$$\boxed{\begin{cases} L_z Y_{l,m} = m\hbar Y_{l,m}, \\ L^2 Y_{l,m} = l(l+1)\hbar^2 Y_{l,m} \end{cases}} \quad (6.10.1.14)$$

for  $l = 0, 1, \dots$  and  $m = -l, \dots, l$ .

### 6.10.2 Motivation for potential operator

We will assume that potential observable  $V$  measures potential  $V(x)$  (we overload  $V$  symbol here) in a space point  $x$  as an eigenvalue of a Dirac delta at point  $x$  (i.e.  $\delta_x(z) := \delta(x-z)$ ).

$$V\delta_x = V(x)\delta_x. \quad (6.10.2.1)$$

Let's calculate  $V(\psi)$ .

$$(V\psi)(x) = \int \delta_x(z)(V\psi)(z)dz = \int (V\delta_x)(z)\psi(z)dz = \int V(z)\delta_x(z)\psi(z)dz = V(x)\psi. \quad (6.10.2.2)$$

Second transformation above holds because  $V$  is self-adjoint.

### 6.10.3 Proton-electron system

Let's consider a system of two particles, one with negative elementary charge  $-e$  and mass  $m_e$  and the other with positive elementary  $e$  and mass  $m_p$ .

To investigate probability amplitude of the relative position of the two particles, according to considerations in Subsection 12.10.1, we need to get the following hamiltonian:

$$H\psi = \sum_{i=1}^3 \frac{P_i^2}{2\mu} \psi + V \cdot \psi, \quad (6.10.3.1)$$

where  $\mu$  is a reduced mass, namely  $\mu = \frac{m_e m_p}{m_e + m_p}$  and  $V$  is an potential energy of the system of two charges governed by Coulomb force:

$$V = -\frac{e^2}{4\pi\epsilon_0 r}. \quad (6.10.3.2)$$

For completeness let's check if  $-\frac{\partial V}{\partial x}$  gives us Coulomb force. Let's assume  $x = [x_1, x_2, x_3]$  is a radial vector of electron and that proton is in the center of our frame of reference. Obviously  $r := (x_1^2 + x_2^2 + x_3^2)^{\frac{1}{2}}$ . Now

$$F_i = -\frac{\partial V}{\partial x_i} = -\left(-\frac{1}{2} \cdot 2x_i \cdot \left(-\frac{e^2}{4\pi\epsilon_0} (x_1^2 + x_2^2 + x_3^2)^{-\frac{3}{2}}\right)\right) = -x_i \frac{e^2}{4\pi\epsilon_0 r^3}. \quad (6.10.3.3)$$

Thus

$$\vec{F} = \frac{e^2}{4\pi\epsilon_0 r^3} x, \quad (6.10.3.4)$$

which is exactly Coulomb force. Let's then put our Hamiltonian in an abbreviated form:

$$H = -\frac{\hbar^2}{2\mu} \Delta - \frac{e^2}{4\pi\epsilon_0 r}. \quad (6.10.3.5)$$

There exist eigen vectors  $\psi_{n,l,m}$  of  $H$  such that

$$\begin{cases} H\psi_{n,l,m} = -\frac{e^4\mu}{32\pi^2 n^2 \epsilon_0^2 \hbar^2} \psi_{n,l,m}, \\ L^2\psi_{n,l,m} = l(l+1)\hbar^2 \psi_{n,l,m} \\ L_z\psi_{n,l,m} = m\hbar \psi_{n,l,m}, \end{cases} \quad (6.10.3.6)$$

for  $n = 1, 2, \dots$ ,  $l = 0, 1, 2, \dots$  and  $m = -l, \dots, l$ . The value

$$E_n = -\frac{e^4\mu}{32\pi^2 n^2 \epsilon_0^2 \hbar^2} \quad (6.10.3.7)$$

is an energy level of hydrogen for  $n = 1, 2, \dots$ .

We will now present energy levels dependent on fine-structure constant. Let's recall

$$\alpha = \frac{e^2}{4\pi\epsilon_0 \hbar c} \quad (6.10.3.8)$$

Thus

$$E_n = -\alpha^2 \frac{\mu c^2}{2n^2} = -\frac{\alpha^2 E_\mu}{2n^2}, \quad (6.10.3.9)$$

where  $E_\mu$  is energy equivalent to reduced mass of electron.

## 6.11 Perturbation Theory

### 6.11.1 Fermis's golden rule

Assume we have a Hamiltonian  $H$  with eigenstates base  $|\alpha\rangle$  with corresponding eigenvalues  $E_\alpha$ , where  $\alpha$  is a certain parametrisation of the base states.

$$H |\alpha\rangle = E_\alpha |\alpha\rangle. \quad (6.11.1.1)$$

Moreover, we assume normalisation  $\langle\alpha|\beta\rangle = \delta(\alpha - \beta)$ . It will be useful to use  $\omega_{\beta\alpha} \stackrel{def}{=} E_\beta - E_\alpha$ .

Let's assume that  $|\alpha t\rangle$  satisfies evolution equation

$$i \frac{\partial}{\partial t} |\alpha t\rangle = H |\alpha t\rangle, \quad (6.11.1.2)$$

and that  $|\alpha t_0\rangle = |\alpha\rangle$ . Thus, we have

$$|\alpha t\rangle = e^{-itE_\alpha} |\alpha\rangle. \quad (6.11.1.3)$$

Note that  $|\alpha t\rangle$  is a new basis of quantum states space.

**Proposition 6.11.1.1.**

$$\int |\alpha t\rangle \langle\alpha t| d\alpha = 1. \quad (6.11.1.4)$$

*Proof.*

$$\begin{aligned} \int |\alpha t\rangle \langle\alpha t|\alpha_0 t\rangle d\alpha &= \int |\alpha t\rangle e^{it(E_\alpha - E_{\alpha_0})} \langle\alpha|\alpha_0\rangle d\alpha \\ &= \int |\alpha t\rangle e^{it(E_\alpha - E_{\alpha_0})} \delta(\alpha - \alpha_0) d\alpha = |\alpha_0 t\rangle. \end{aligned}$$

□

Assume we have another Hamiltonian:

$$H' = H + \varepsilon W(t). \quad (6.11.1.5)$$

The following abbreviation will be useful:

$$W(t)_{\beta\alpha} = \langle\beta| W(t) |\alpha\rangle.$$

Take an arbitrary  $|\psi(t)\rangle$  which satisfies evolution equation

$$i \frac{\partial}{\partial t} |\psi(t)\rangle = (H + \varepsilon W(t)) |\psi(t)\rangle. \quad (6.11.1.6)$$

Since (6.11.1.1), we can expand  $|\psi(t)\rangle$  as

$$|\psi(t)\rangle = \int \langle \alpha t | \psi(t) \rangle |\alpha t\rangle d\alpha. \quad (6.11.1.7)$$

Let's calculate

$$\begin{aligned} i \frac{\partial}{\partial t} \langle \alpha t | \psi(t) \rangle &= \{i \langle \alpha t | \} |\psi(t)\rangle + \langle \alpha t | \{i \frac{\partial}{\partial t} |\psi(t)\rangle\} = \\ &= -\langle \alpha t | H |\psi(t)\rangle + \langle \alpha t | H + \varepsilon W(t) |\psi(t)\rangle = \langle \alpha t | \varepsilon W(t) |\psi(t)\rangle. \end{aligned}$$

And since (6.11.1.7), we can write an equation:

$$i \frac{\partial}{\partial t} \langle \beta t | \psi(t) \rangle = \int \langle \alpha t | \psi(t) \rangle \langle \beta t | \varepsilon W(t) | \alpha t \rangle d\alpha. \quad (6.11.1.8)$$

Let  $c_\beta(t) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \langle \beta t | \psi(t) \rangle$ . Then (6.11.1.8) will take a form:

$$\boxed{i \frac{\partial}{\partial t} c_\beta(t) = \int c_\alpha(t) \langle \beta t | \varepsilon W(t) | \alpha t \rangle d\alpha} \quad (6.11.1.9)$$

Let's define operator

$$\hat{W}(t) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} e^{itH} W(t) e^{-itH}. \quad (6.11.1.10)$$

Hence (6.11.1.8) becomes

$$i \frac{\partial}{\partial t} c_\beta(t) = \int c_\alpha(t) \langle \beta | \varepsilon \hat{W}(t) | \alpha \rangle d\alpha. \quad (6.11.1.11)$$

Let's define

$$|u(t)\rangle \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \int c_\alpha(t) |\alpha\rangle d\alpha. \quad (6.11.1.12)$$

Note that  $|u(t)\rangle$  satisfies evolution equation

$$i \frac{\partial}{\partial t} |u(t)\rangle = \varepsilon \hat{W}(t) |u(t)\rangle, \quad (6.11.1.13)$$

and  $|u(t_0)\rangle = |\psi(t_0)\rangle$ .

Let

$$U(t_0, t) = \mathcal{T} \exp\left(-i\varepsilon \int_{t_0}^t ds \hat{W}(s)\right), \quad (6.11.1.14)$$

then since (6.6.0.8)

$$|u(t)\rangle = U(t_0, t) |\psi(t_0)\rangle. \quad (6.11.1.15)$$

We are assuming a situation in which the quantum system was in a state  $|\alpha\rangle$  at time  $t_0$ . Then it was evolved by Hamiltonian  $H + \varepsilon W(t)$  and at a time  $t$  part  $\varepsilon W(t)$  was “switched off”. We are then interested in probability (or density of probability)  $P_{\alpha \rightarrow \beta}$  that system “measured” by  $H$  will collapse to the state  $|\beta\rangle$ .

Assume then  $|\psi(0)\rangle = |\alpha\rangle$ .

Then

$$P_{\alpha \rightarrow \beta} = |\langle \beta | \psi(t) \rangle|^2 = |\langle \beta | u(t) \rangle|^2. \quad (6.11.1.16)$$

Note that

$$\langle \beta | u(t) \rangle = \langle \beta | U(t_0, t) | \alpha \rangle, \quad (6.11.1.17)$$

Hence,

$$P_{\alpha \rightarrow \beta} = |\langle \beta | U(t_0, t) | \alpha \rangle|^2. \quad (6.11.1.18)$$

**Lemma 6.11.1.2.**

$$\langle \beta | U(t_0, t) | \alpha \rangle = \delta(\beta - \alpha) + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} (-i\varepsilon)^n \rho_n^{\beta, \alpha}(t), \quad (6.11.1.19)$$

where

$$\begin{aligned} \rho_n^{\gamma_n, \gamma_0}(t) &= \int_{t_0}^t ds_n \int_{t_0}^{s_n} ds_{n-1} \cdots \int_{t_0}^{s_2} ds_1 \int d\gamma_{n-1} \cdots \int d\gamma_1 \\ &\prod_{k=1}^n \exp(is_k(E_{\gamma_k} - E_{\gamma_{k-1}})) W(s_k)_{\gamma_k \gamma_{k-1}}. \end{aligned}$$

*Proof.* By 6.6.0.2 we have

$$U(t_0, t) = 1 - i\varepsilon \int_{t_0}^t ds \hat{W}(s) U(t_0, s). \quad (6.11.1.20)$$

Thus

$$\langle \beta | U(t_0, t) | \alpha \rangle = \delta(\beta - \alpha) - i\varepsilon \int_{t_0}^t ds \langle \beta | \hat{W}(s) U(t_0, s) | \alpha \rangle, \quad (6.11.1.21)$$



and thus

$$\langle \beta | U(t_0, t) | \alpha \rangle = \delta(\beta - \alpha) - i\varepsilon \int_{t_0}^t ds \langle \beta | \hat{W}(s) \int d\gamma | \gamma \rangle \langle \gamma | U(t_0, s) | \alpha \rangle, \quad (6.11.1.22)$$

$$\langle \beta | U(t_0, t) | \alpha \rangle = \delta(\beta - \alpha) - \int_{t_0}^t ds \int d\gamma e^{is(E_\beta - E_\gamma)} W_{\beta\gamma}(s) \langle \gamma | U(t_0, s) | \alpha \rangle. \quad (6.11.1.23)$$

Let  $K_{\beta,\alpha}(t) = \delta(\alpha - \beta) + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} (-i\varepsilon)^n \rho_n^{\beta,\alpha}(t)$ . It is enough to show that  $K_{\beta,\alpha}(t)$  satisfy equation :

$$K_{\beta,\alpha}(t) = \delta(\beta - \alpha) - i\varepsilon \int_{t_0}^t ds \int d\gamma e^{is(E_\beta - E_\gamma)} W_{\beta\gamma}(s) K_{\gamma,\alpha}(s). \quad (6.11.1.24)$$

Let's do calculations

$$\begin{aligned} \int_{t_0}^t ds \int d\gamma e^{is(E_\beta - E_\gamma)} W_{\beta\gamma}(s) K_{\gamma,\alpha}(s) &= \int_{t_0}^t ds \int d\gamma e^{is(E_\beta - E_\gamma)} W_{\beta\gamma}(s) \left( \delta(\gamma - \alpha) + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} (-i\varepsilon)^n \rho_n^{\gamma,\alpha}(s) \right) \\ &= \int_{t_0}^t ds e^{is(E_\beta - E_\alpha)} W_{\beta\alpha}(s) + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} (-i\varepsilon)^n \int_{t_0}^t ds \int d\gamma e^{is(E_\beta - E_\gamma)} W_{\beta\gamma}(s) \rho_n^{\gamma,\alpha}(s) \\ &= \int_{t_0}^t ds e^{is(E_\beta - E_\alpha)} W_{\beta\alpha}(s) + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} (-i\varepsilon)^n \rho_{n+1}^{\beta,\alpha}(s) = \rho_1^{\beta,\alpha}(t) + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} (-i\varepsilon)^n \rho_{n+1}^{\beta,\alpha}(s). \end{aligned}$$

Thus

$$\begin{aligned} &\delta(\beta - \alpha) - i\varepsilon \int_{t_0}^t ds \int d\gamma e^{is(E_\beta - E_\gamma)} W_{\beta\gamma}(s) K_{\gamma,\alpha}(s) \\ &= \delta(\beta - \alpha) - i\varepsilon \rho_1^{\beta,\alpha}(t) + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} (-i\varepsilon)^{n+1} \rho_{n+1}^{\beta,\alpha}(s) = K_{\beta,\alpha}(t). \end{aligned}$$

□

We will assume that  $W(t) = e^{\epsilon t}W$ , where  $W$  is constant in time. We will also take  $t_0 \rightarrow -\infty$ .

Let's try get some useful expression of  $U(t_0, t)$ . Let

$$S_n(t_0, t) = (-i)^n \int_{t_0}^t ds_n \hat{W}(s_n) \int_{t_0}^{s_n} ds_{n-1} \hat{W}(s_{n-1}) \cdots \int_{t_0}^{s_2} \hat{W}(s_1) ds_1. \quad (6.11.1.25)$$

Then, we have

$$U(t_0, t) = 1 + \epsilon^n \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} S_n(t_0, t). \quad (6.11.1.26)$$

Let's calculate  $S_n$ :

$$S_n(-\infty, t) = (-i)^n \int_{-\infty}^t ds_n \int_{-\infty}^{s_n} ds_{n-1} \cdots \int_{-\infty}^{s_2} ds_1 e^{is_n H} W e^{i(s_{n-1}-s_n)H} W \cdots e^{i(s_1-s_2)H} W e^{-is_1 H} e^{\epsilon(s_n+\cdots+s_1)}. \quad (6.11.1.27)$$

Let's do substitution of dummy variables:

$$\begin{aligned} t_n &= s_n, \\ t_{n-1} &= s_{n-1} - s_n, \\ &\cdots \\ t_1 &= s_1 - s_2. \end{aligned}$$

and inversly

$$\begin{aligned} s_n &= t_n, \\ s_{n-1} &= t_n + t_{n-1} \\ &\cdots \\ s_1 &= t_n + t_{n-1} + \cdots + t_1. \end{aligned}$$

Jacobian determinant of this transformation is 1, then we can write

$$S_n(-\infty, t) = (-i)^n \int_{-\infty}^t dt_n \int_{-\infty}^0 dt_{n-1} \cdots \int_{-\infty}^0 dt_1 e^{it_n H} W e^{it_{n-1} H} W \cdots e^{it_1 H} W e^{-i(t_n+\cdots+t_1)H} e^{\epsilon(s_n+\cdots+s_1)}.$$

Note that

$$\begin{aligned} \langle \beta | S_n(-\infty, t) | \alpha \rangle &= (-i)^n \\ \langle \beta | \int_{-\infty}^t dt_n e^{n\epsilon t_n} e^{it_n(E_\beta - E_\alpha)} W \\ &\int_{-\infty}^0 dt_{n-1} e^{(n-1)\epsilon t_{n-1}} e^{i(H - E_\alpha)} W \\ &\dots \\ &\int_{-\infty}^0 dt_1 e^{\epsilon t_1} e^{i(H - E_\alpha)} W | \alpha \rangle. \end{aligned}$$

Note that,

$$\int_{-\infty}^0 ds e^{k\epsilon s} e^{is(H - E_\alpha)} = \frac{i}{E_\alpha - H + ik\epsilon}. \quad (6.11.1.28)$$

Hence,

$$\langle \beta | S_n(-\infty, t) | \alpha \rangle = \frac{e^{-it(\omega_{\alpha\beta} + in\epsilon)}}{\omega_{\alpha\beta} + in\epsilon} \langle \beta | W \prod_{k=n-1}^1 \left( \frac{1}{E_\alpha - H + ik\epsilon} W \right) | \alpha \rangle. \quad (6.11.1.29)$$

Note that the above equation is exact. We will now make a replacement  $k\epsilon \rightarrow \epsilon$ . For now, we will motivate it that because we can treat  $\epsilon$  as a value which disappears in practice with certain power  $\epsilon^n$ , thus in practice we need to consider only finite number of operators  $S_n$ . With this assumption in mind, since we will finally consider limit  $\epsilon \rightarrow 0$ ,  $k\epsilon$  is as good as  $\epsilon$ . This step leaves us with certain distaste, we will need to make a deeper discussion of it in the future.

Keeping above in mind, let's define the operator

$$T_\epsilon \stackrel{def}{=} \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \epsilon^n W \left( \frac{1}{E_\alpha - H + i\epsilon} W \right)^{n-1}. \quad (6.11.1.30)$$

Let's make now a precise distinction let

$$U(t_0, t) = \mathcal{T} \exp \left( -i\epsilon \int_{t_0}^t ds e^{isH} W e^{-isH} \right) \quad (6.11.1.31)$$

and

$$U_\epsilon(t_0, t) = \mathcal{T} \exp \left( -i\epsilon \int_{t_0}^t ds \hat{W}(s) \right). \quad (6.11.1.32)$$

Thus

$$\langle \beta | U_\epsilon(-\infty, t) | \alpha \rangle = \delta(\beta - \alpha) + \frac{e^{-it(\omega_{\alpha\beta} + i\epsilon)}}{\omega_{\alpha\beta} + i\epsilon} \langle \beta | T_\epsilon | \alpha \rangle. \quad (6.11.1.33)$$

Note that

$$S_n(-\infty, 0) | \alpha \rangle = \left( \frac{1}{E_\alpha - H + i\epsilon} W \right)^n | \alpha \rangle, \quad (6.11.1.34)$$

and hence

$$U_\epsilon(-\infty, 0) | \alpha \rangle = | \alpha \rangle + \varepsilon^n \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \left( \frac{1}{E_\alpha - H + i\epsilon} W \right)^n | \alpha \rangle. \quad (6.11.1.35)$$

From the above

$$U_\epsilon(-\infty, 0) | \alpha \rangle = | \alpha \rangle + \left( \frac{1}{E_\alpha - H + i\epsilon} \varepsilon W \right) U(-\infty, 0) | \alpha \rangle. \quad (6.11.1.36)$$

Let's define

$$| \psi_\alpha \rangle \stackrel{def}{=} U_\epsilon(-\infty, 0) | \alpha \rangle. \quad (6.11.1.37)$$

Then we have

$$| \psi_\alpha \rangle = | \alpha \rangle + \left( \frac{1}{E_\alpha - H + i\epsilon} \varepsilon W \right) | \psi_\alpha \rangle. \quad (6.11.1.38)$$

This is called Lippman-Schwinger equation.

By 6.11.1.30, we have

$$T_\epsilon | \alpha \rangle = \varepsilon W | \psi_\alpha \rangle. \quad (6.11.1.39)$$

For the rest of argumentation we will assume that we will operate on states  $|\phi\rangle$  for which there exists self-adjoint  $T$  such that  $T_\epsilon |\phi\rangle - T |\phi\rangle = O(\epsilon) |\phi\rangle$ , where  $O(\epsilon)$  is some polynomial error operator.

We will try to calculate  $\frac{d}{dt} P_{\alpha \rightarrow \beta}$ . We have

$$P_{\alpha \rightarrow \beta} = \langle \beta | U(-\infty, t) | \alpha \rangle \langle \beta | U(-\infty, t) | \alpha \rangle^*. \quad (6.11.1.40)$$

Let's prepare

$$\langle \beta | U_\epsilon(-\infty, t) | \alpha \rangle = \delta(\beta - \alpha) + \frac{e^{i\epsilon t} e^{-it\omega_{\alpha\beta}}}{\omega_{\alpha\beta} + i\epsilon} \langle \beta | T_\epsilon | \alpha \rangle. \quad (6.11.1.41)$$

$$\frac{d}{dt} \langle \beta | U_\epsilon(-\infty, t) | \alpha \rangle = -ie^{\epsilon t} e^{-it\omega_{\alpha\beta}} \langle \beta | T_\epsilon | \alpha \rangle. \quad (6.11.1.42)$$

Then

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{d}{dt} & \left( \langle \beta | U_\epsilon(-\infty, t) | \alpha \rangle \langle \beta | U_\epsilon(-\infty, t) | \alpha \rangle^* \right) = \\ & \left( \delta(\beta - \alpha) + \frac{e^{\epsilon t} e^{-it\omega_{\alpha\beta}}}{\omega_{\alpha\beta} + i\epsilon} \langle \beta | T_\epsilon | \alpha \rangle \right) ie^{\epsilon t} e^{it\omega_{\alpha\beta}} \langle \alpha | T_\epsilon^\dagger | \beta \rangle + \\ & \left( \delta(\beta - \alpha) + \frac{e^{\epsilon t} e^{it\omega_{\alpha\beta}}}{\omega_{\alpha\beta} - i\epsilon} \langle \alpha | T_\epsilon^\dagger | \beta \rangle \right) (-i) e^{\epsilon t} e^{-it\omega_{\alpha\beta}} \langle \beta | T_\epsilon | \alpha \rangle = \\ & -\delta(\alpha - \beta) e^{\epsilon t} \sin(t\omega_{\alpha\beta}) + ie^{\epsilon t} \left( \frac{1}{\omega_{\alpha\beta} + i\epsilon} - \frac{1}{\omega_{\alpha\beta} - i\epsilon} \right) \langle \alpha | T_\epsilon^\dagger | \beta \rangle \langle \beta | T_\epsilon | \alpha \rangle = \\ & \delta(\alpha - \beta) e^{\epsilon t} \sin(t\omega_{\beta\alpha}) + ie^{\epsilon t} \frac{-i2\epsilon}{\omega_{\beta\alpha}^2 + \epsilon^2} \langle \alpha | T_\epsilon^\dagger | \beta \rangle \langle \beta | T_\epsilon | \alpha \rangle \xrightarrow{\epsilon \rightarrow 0} \\ & \delta(\alpha - \beta) \sin(t\omega_{\beta\alpha}) + 2\pi\delta(\omega_{\beta\alpha}) |\langle \beta | T | \alpha \rangle|^2. \end{aligned}$$

Thus

$$\frac{d}{dt} P_{\alpha \rightarrow \beta} = \delta(\alpha - \beta) \sin(t\omega_{\beta\alpha}) + 2\pi\delta(\omega_{\beta\alpha}) |\langle \beta | T | \alpha \rangle|^2. \quad (6.11.1.43)$$

To simplify equations let's assume  $T_{\beta\alpha} \stackrel{def}{=} \langle \beta | T | \alpha \rangle$ .

Let  $\Omega$  will be some set of base states “accessible” from state  $|\alpha\rangle$ .

$$\frac{d}{dt} P_{\alpha \rightarrow \Omega} = 2\pi \int_{\Omega} d\beta \delta(E_\beta - E_\alpha) T_{\beta\alpha}^2. \quad (6.11.1.44)$$

Because we know that  $|\beta\rangle$  are eigenstates of  $H$ , we can find other parametrisation  $\beta \mapsto E, \gamma$ , where  $E = E_\beta$ . In such parametrisation, we have

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{d}{dt} P_{\alpha \rightarrow \Omega} &= 2\pi \int_{\Omega} dE d\gamma \delta(E - E_\alpha) T_{\beta(E, \gamma)\alpha}^2 \left| \frac{\partial \beta}{\partial E \partial \gamma} \right| = \\ & 2\pi \int_{\Omega(E_\alpha)} d\gamma T_{\beta(E_\alpha, \gamma)\alpha}^2 \left| \frac{\partial \beta}{\partial E \partial \gamma} \right|_{E=E_\alpha}. \end{aligned}$$

The derived equation is called Fermi Golden Rule.

$$\boxed{\frac{d}{dt} P_{\alpha \rightarrow \Omega} = \frac{2\pi}{\hbar} \int_{\Omega(E_\alpha)} d\gamma T_{\beta(E_\alpha, \gamma)\alpha}^2 \left| \frac{\partial \beta}{\partial E \partial \gamma} \right|_{E=E_\alpha}} \quad (6.11.1.45)$$

In case  $|\beta\rangle$  are not degenerated on  $\Omega$  (i.e.  $E_\beta \neq E'_\beta$  for  $\beta \neq \beta'$ ), we have  $E \mapsto \beta$ , where  $E = E_\beta$ .

$$\boxed{\frac{d}{dt}P_{\alpha \rightarrow \beta(E_\alpha)} = \frac{2\pi}{\hbar} T_{\beta(E_\alpha)\alpha}^2 \left| \frac{\partial \beta}{\partial E} \right|_{E=E_\alpha}} \quad (6.11.1.46)$$

### 6.11.2 Stationary Perturbation

Let's assume our hamiltonian has a form

$$H = H_0 + \varepsilon W, \quad (6.11.2.1)$$

where complete set of eignestates and eigenvalues of unperturbed hamiltonian  $H_0$  is known

$$H_0 \psi_n^0 = E_n^0 \psi_n^0. \quad (6.11.2.2)$$

We assume also that energy levels are not degenerated, i.e.  $E_i \neq E_j$  for  $i \neq j$ . The goal of perturbation theory is to determine solutions of

$$H\psi = E\psi, \quad (6.11.2.3)$$

as

$$E = E_k = \sum_n E_k^{(n)} \varepsilon^n \quad (6.11.2.4)$$

$$\psi = \psi_k = \sum_m a_{m,k} \psi_m^0, \quad (6.11.2.5)$$

where

$$a_{m,k} = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} a_{m,k}^{(n)} \varepsilon^n. \quad (6.11.2.6)$$

It can be proven (e.g. [Gre01][11.1]) that

$$\begin{cases} E_k^{(0)} = E_k^0, \\ E_k^{(1)} = \langle \psi_k^0 | W | \psi_k^0 \rangle, \\ E_k^{(2)} = \sum_{n \neq k} \frac{|\langle \psi_n^0 | W | \psi_k^0 \rangle|^2}{E_n^0 - E_k^0}, \\ \dots \end{cases} \quad (6.11.2.7)$$

and

$$\begin{cases} a_{m,k}^{(0)} = \delta_{m,k}, \\ \dots \end{cases} \quad (6.11.2.8)$$

### 6.11.3 Degeneracy

Assume that for a given level of energy  $E_n^0$  in unperturbed hamiltonian  $H_0$ , we have a series of eigenfunctions  $\psi_{n,\beta}^0$  where  $\beta = 1, 2, \dots, f_n$ . Such level is called  $f_n$ -fold degenerate.

Solutions  $E_n^{(1)}$  of the below equation (6.11.3.1) with unknown variable  $E_n^{(1)}$  determin the split of energy level  $E_n^0$  into levels  $E_{n,\beta} \approx E_n^0 + \varepsilon E_{n,\beta}^{(1)}$  in perturbed Hamiltonian  $H_0 + \varepsilon W$ .

$$\det \begin{bmatrix} \langle \psi_{n,1}^0 | W | \psi_{n,1}^0 \rangle - E_n^{(1)} & \langle \psi_{n,1}^0 | W | \psi_{n,2}^0 \rangle & \dots & \langle \psi_{n,1}^0 | W | \psi_{n,f_n}^0 \rangle \\ \langle \psi_{n,2}^0 | W | \psi_{n,1}^0 \rangle & \langle \psi_{n,2}^0 | W | \psi_{n,2}^0 \rangle - E_n^{(1)} & \dots & \langle \psi_{n,2}^0 | W | \psi_{n,f_n}^0 \rangle \\ \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ \langle \psi_{n,f_n}^0 | W | \psi_{n,1}^0 \rangle & \langle \psi_{n,f_n}^0 | W | \psi_{n,2}^0 \rangle & \dots & \langle \psi_{n,f_n}^0 | W | \psi_{n,f_n}^0 \rangle - E_n^{(1)} \end{bmatrix} = 0. \quad (6.11.3.1)$$

The above is proven in (e.g. [Gre01][11.2]). To get above equation from matrix equation there, one needs to notice that  $E^0 - E = -\varepsilon E^{(1)}$  and then remove factor  $\varepsilon$  from the matrix. The equation in form similiar to (6.11.3.1) is also in [Des10][16.4 Degenerate States].

### 6.11.4 Time-Dependent Perturbation

We assume that the hamiltonian is given by

$$H = H_0 + W(t) \quad (6.11.4.1)$$

We assume that  $W(t)$  is a small perturbation and acts only in time interval  $[0, T]$ . Let  $\psi_n^0$  be stationary solutions of

$$H_0 \psi_n^0 = E_n \psi_n^0. \quad (6.11.4.2)$$

Time evolution is given by

$$\psi_n^0(t) = e^{-\frac{i}{\hbar} E_n t} \psi_n^0. \quad (6.11.4.3)$$

We will be interested in an evolution

$$i\hbar \frac{\partial \psi_n(t)}{\partial t} = H \psi_n(t), \quad (6.11.4.4)$$

where

$$\psi_n(0) = \psi_n^0. \quad (6.11.4.5)$$

Next we will be interested in the probability for the transition from state  $\psi_n(t)$  to  $\psi_m^0$  in the period  $[0, T]$ . We assume that we start in the state  $\psi_n(0) = \psi_n^0$ , then the state evolve under the perturbed hamiltonian  $H$  according to equation 6.11.4.4. At the time  $t = T$  perturbation  $W$  is “turned off” and we measure the energy of the state. We want to know the probability that our final state will be  $\psi_m^0$ , which is expressed by

$$|\langle \psi_m^0 | \psi_n(t) \rangle|^2. \quad (6.11.4.6)$$

Let's express  $\psi_n(t)$  in basis  $\psi_k^0(t)$ :

$$\psi_n(t) = \sum_k a_{n,k}(t) \psi_k^0(t). \quad (6.11.4.7)$$

Note that

$$|\langle \psi_m^0 | \psi_n(t) \rangle|^2 = |a_{n,m}(t)|^2. \quad (6.11.4.8)$$

Coefficients  $a_{n,m}$  are given by the following system of differential equations

$$i\hbar \frac{da_{n,m}(t)}{dt} = \sum_k a_{n,k}(t) \langle \psi_m^0 | W(t) | \psi_k^0 \rangle e^{i\omega_{mk}t}, \quad (6.11.4.9)$$

where

$$\omega_{mk} = \frac{E_m - E_k}{\hbar}. \quad (6.11.4.10)$$

The first order approximation of  $a_{n,m}(t)$  is

$$a_{n,m}(t) \approx a_{n,m}^{(1)} = \delta_{nm} - \frac{i}{\hbar} \int_0^t \langle \psi_m^0 | W(\tau) | \psi_n^0 \rangle e^{i\omega_{mn}\tau} d\tau. \quad (6.11.4.11)$$

The above is proven in (e.g. [Gre01][11.4]).



# Chapter 7

## Quantum Field Theory

### 7.1 Introduction

#### 7.1.1 Preliminaries

We will have convention that for a space time vector  $x$  in a chosen frame of reference  $\mathbf{x}$  will mean space part of the vector  $x$ .  $x \cdot y$  will mean Minkowsky inner product:

$$x \cdot y = x^0 y^0 - \mathbf{x} \cdot \mathbf{y}, \quad (7.1.1.1)$$

where  $\mathbf{x} \cdot \mathbf{y}$  is euclidean inner product in  $\mathbb{R}^3$ . We will also write  $x^2 = x \cdot x$  and  $\mathbf{x}^2 = \mathbf{x} \cdot \mathbf{x}$ .

When a particle of mass  $m$  has a 4-momentum  $p$ , we will denote it's energy by  $E_{\mathbf{p}} = p^0$ . Note that

$$E_{\mathbf{p}} = \sqrt{\mathbf{p}^2 + m^2}. \quad (7.1.1.2)$$

**Fact 7.1.1.1.** *If  $p, q$  are 4-momentums of particles of mass  $m$ , then the expression*

$$E_{\mathbf{q}} \delta^{(3)}(\mathbf{p} - \mathbf{q}) \quad (7.1.1.3)$$

*is Lorentz invariant.*

*Proof.* Take Lorentz transformation

$$\begin{cases} E_{\mathbf{p}'} = p'^0 = \gamma p^0 - \beta \gamma p^1, \\ p'^1 = \gamma p^1 - \beta \gamma E_{\mathbf{p}}. \end{cases} \quad (7.1.1.4)$$

Let's calculate

$$\begin{aligned}\delta^{(3)}(\mathbf{p}' - \mathbf{q}') &= \delta((p'^1 - q'^1, p'^2 - q'^2, p'^3 - q'^3)) \\ &= \delta((\gamma p^1 - \beta\gamma E_{\mathbf{p}} - \gamma q^1 + \beta\gamma E_{\mathbf{q}}, p^2 - q^2, p^3 - q^3)).\end{aligned}$$

Note that

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial p^k} E_{\mathbf{p}} = \frac{\partial}{\partial p^k} \sqrt{\mathbf{p}^2 + m^2} = \frac{p^k}{E_{\mathbf{p}}}. \quad (7.1.1.5)$$

Then

$$\begin{aligned}\frac{\partial}{\partial p^1}(\gamma p^1 - \beta\gamma E_{\mathbf{p}} - \gamma q^1 + \beta\gamma E_{\mathbf{q}}) \\ = \gamma - \frac{\beta\gamma p^1}{E_{\mathbf{p}}} = \frac{E_{\mathbf{p}}\gamma - \beta\gamma p^1}{E_{\mathbf{p}}} = \frac{E_{\mathbf{p}'}}{E_{\mathbf{p}}}.\end{aligned}$$

Let's write Jacobian

$$\left| \frac{\partial(\mathbf{p}' - \mathbf{q}')}{\partial \mathbf{p}} \right| = \begin{vmatrix} \frac{E_{\mathbf{p}'}}{E_{\mathbf{p}}} & \frac{\beta\gamma p^2}{E_{\mathbf{p}}} & \frac{\beta\gamma p^3}{E_{\mathbf{p}}} \\ 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \end{vmatrix} = \frac{E_{\mathbf{p}'}}{E_{\mathbf{p}}}. \quad (7.1.1.6)$$

By Theorem 6.4.3.6, we have

$$\delta(\mathbf{p}' - \mathbf{q}') = \left( \left| \frac{\partial(\mathbf{p}' - \mathbf{q}')}{\partial \mathbf{p}} \right|_{\mathbf{p}=\mathbf{q}} \right)^{-1} \delta(\mathbf{p} - \mathbf{q}) = \frac{E_{\mathbf{q}}}{E_{\mathbf{q}'}} \delta(\mathbf{p} - \mathbf{q}). \quad (7.1.1.7)$$

Thus

$$E_{\mathbf{q}'} \delta^{(3)}(\mathbf{p}' - \mathbf{q}') = E_{\mathbf{q}} \delta^{(3)}(\mathbf{p} - \mathbf{q}). \quad (7.1.1.8)$$

□

**Klein-Gordon equation** For a relativistic particle  $E^2 = \mathbf{p}^2 + m^2$ , there is an idea for relativistic Schrödinger equation

$$i\hbar \frac{\partial}{\partial t} |\phi(t)\rangle = \sqrt{\mathbf{P}^2 + m^2} |\phi(t)\rangle. \quad (7.1.1.9)$$

which is a motivation for a "squared" version (we will set  $\hbar = 1$ ):

$$-\frac{\partial^2}{\partial t^2} = \mathbf{P}^2 + m^2, \quad (7.1.1.10)$$

which is

$$-\frac{\partial^2}{\partial t^2} = -\nabla^2 + m^2, \quad (7.1.1.11)$$

or

$$\frac{\partial^2}{\partial t^2} - \nabla^2 + m^2 = 0. \quad (7.1.1.12)$$

Can be noted using raised index of partial derivative and Einstein summation convention:

$$\partial^\mu \partial_\mu + m^2 = 0. \quad (7.1.1.13)$$

From this immediately follows Lorentz invariance, but we will give a direct proof in language of tensor transformations [Figure 7.1.1](#).

$$\begin{aligned}
\frac{\partial}{\partial x_\mu} \frac{\partial}{\partial x^\mu} \phi(\hat{x}) &= g^{\sigma\nu} \frac{\partial}{\partial x^\sigma} \frac{\partial}{\partial x^\nu} \phi(\hat{x}) = (\clubsuit) \\
\boxed{\frac{\partial}{\partial x^\nu} \phi(\hat{x}) &= \frac{\partial}{\partial x^\nu} \phi\left(x^\xi \frac{\partial \hat{x}^\eta}{\partial x^\xi}\right) = \partial_\eta \phi(\hat{x}) \frac{\partial \hat{x}^\eta}{\partial x^\nu}} \\
(\clubsuit) &= g^{\sigma\nu} (\partial_{\eta_1} \partial_{\eta_2} \phi)(\hat{x}) \frac{\partial \hat{x}^{\eta_1}}{\partial x^\nu} \frac{\partial \hat{x}^{\eta_2}}{\partial x^\sigma} = g^{\sigma\nu} \Lambda_{\nu}^{\eta_1} \Lambda_{\sigma}^{\eta_2} (\partial_{\eta_1} \partial_{\eta_2} \phi)(\hat{x}) = \\
&= \hat{g}^{\eta_1 \eta_2} (\partial_{\eta_1} \partial_{\eta_2} \phi)(\hat{x}) = (\partial^\mu \partial_\mu \phi)(\hat{x})
\end{aligned}$$

Figure 7.1: Proof of Lorentz invariance of Klein-Gordon equation

**Lemma 7.1.1.2.** *Let  $\Gamma_R$  be a path*

$$\theta \mapsto Re^{i\theta} \text{ for } \theta \in [0, \pi]. \quad (7.1.1.14)$$

*Let  $f : \mathbb{C} \rightarrow \mathbb{C}$  be a measurable function on all  $\Gamma_R$  for large enough  $R$  and there exists  $M > 0$  such that*

$$\lim_{R \rightarrow \infty} \sup_{\Gamma_R} |f| < M. \quad (7.1.1.15)$$

*Then for any complex number  $z \in \mathbb{C}$  and  $a > 0$ , we have*

$$\lim_{R \rightarrow \infty} \int_{\Gamma_R} \frac{f(\gamma)}{\gamma + z} e^{ia\gamma} d\gamma = 0. \quad (7.1.1.16)$$

*Proof.* Note that  $d\gamma = iRe^{i\theta}d\theta$ , thus

$$\int_{\Gamma_R} \frac{f(\gamma)}{\gamma + z} e^{ia\gamma} d\gamma = \int_0^\pi f(Re^{i\theta}) \frac{iRe^{i\theta}}{Re^{i\theta} + z} \exp(iaRe^{i\theta}) d\theta. \quad (7.1.1.17)$$

Note that for big enough  $R$ , we have

$$|f(Re^{i\theta})| < 2M \quad (7.1.1.18)$$

and

$$\left| \frac{iRe^{i\theta}}{Re^{i\theta} + z} \right| < \left| \frac{iRe^{i\theta}}{\frac{1}{2}Re^{i\theta}} \right| < 2. \quad (7.1.1.19)$$

Thus

$$\begin{aligned} \left| \int_{\Gamma_R} \frac{f(\gamma)}{\gamma + z} e^{ia\gamma} d\gamma \right| &\leq 4M \int_0^\pi |\exp(iaR \cos \theta)| \exp(-aR \sin \theta) d\theta = \\ &4M \int_0^\pi \exp(-aR \sin \theta) d\theta = 8M \int_0^{\pi/2} \exp(-aR \sin \theta) d\theta. \end{aligned}$$

Note that for each  $R > 0$  we have  $\theta_R$  such that  $\sin \theta_R = R^{-1/2}$ . Then, we have

$$\int_{\theta_R}^{\pi/2} \exp(-aR \sin \theta) d\theta \leq \int_{\theta_R}^{\pi/2} \exp(-aR^{1/2}) d\theta = (\pi/2 - \theta_R) \exp(-aR^{1/2}), \quad (7.1.1.20)$$

and

$$\int_0^{\theta_R} \exp(-aR \sin \theta) d\theta \leq \theta_R. \quad (7.1.1.21)$$

Hence we have

$$\int_0^{\pi/2} \exp(-aR \sin \theta) d\theta \leq \theta_R + (\pi/2 - \theta_R) \exp(-aR^{1/2}) \xrightarrow{R \rightarrow \infty} 0. \quad (7.1.1.22)$$

□

**Corollary 7.1.1.3.** *The above lemma holds symmetrically for a path  $\Gamma_R$*

$$\theta \mapsto Re^{i\theta} \text{ for } \theta \in [\pi, 2\pi]. \quad (7.1.1.23)$$

and for  $a < 0$ .

We will often use  $\theta$  function (which has nothing to do with  $\theta$  in the above proof) as Heaviside step function, defined as follows:

$$\theta(a) = \begin{cases} 1 & \text{for } a > 0, \\ 0 & \text{for } a < 0. \end{cases} \quad (7.1.1.24)$$

**Proposition 7.1.1.4.**

$$\theta(a) = \lim_{\varepsilon \rightarrow 0^+} \frac{i}{2\pi} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \frac{e^{-iax}}{x + i\varepsilon} dx \quad (7.1.1.25)$$

for  $a \neq 0$ .

*Proof.* Take  $a > 0$ . Consider a path  $\Gamma$  from  $R$  to  $-R$  closed by a half-circle  $\Gamma_{-R} : \theta \mapsto Re^{i\theta}$  for  $\theta \in [\pi, 2\pi]$ . ( $-R$  in  $\Gamma_{-R}$  simply indicates that we take lower part of the circle). Since  $-i\varepsilon$  belongs to the interior of  $\Gamma$ , by Theorem 10.6.0.8, we have

$$\begin{aligned} e^{-a\varepsilon} &= \frac{1}{2\pi i} \int_{\Gamma} \frac{e^{-iax}}{x + i\varepsilon} dx = -\frac{1}{2\pi i} \int_{-R}^R \frac{e^{-iax}}{x + i\varepsilon} dx + \frac{1}{2\pi i} \int_{\Gamma_{-R}} \frac{e^{-iax}}{x + i\varepsilon} dx = \\ &= \frac{i}{2\pi} \int_{-R}^R \frac{e^{-iax}}{x + i\varepsilon} dx + \frac{1}{2\pi i} \int_{\Gamma_{-R}} \frac{e^{-iax}}{x + i\varepsilon} dx. \end{aligned}$$

By Corollary 7.1.1.3, we have

$$\lim_{R \rightarrow \infty} \frac{i}{2\pi} \int_{-R}^R \frac{e^{-iax}}{x + i\varepsilon} dx = e^{-a\varepsilon}. \quad (7.1.1.26)$$

Thus

$$\lim_{\varepsilon \rightarrow 0^+} \frac{i}{2\pi} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \frac{e^{-iax}}{x + i\varepsilon} dx = 1. \quad (7.1.1.27)$$

Now, take  $a < 0$ . Consider a new path  $\Gamma$  from  $-R$  to  $R$  closed by a half-circle  $\Gamma_R : \theta \mapsto Re^{i\theta}$  for  $\theta \in [0, \pi]$ . Since  $-i\varepsilon$  does not belong to the interior of  $\Gamma$ , by Theorem 10.6.0.8, we have

$$\frac{1}{2\pi i} \int_{\Gamma} \frac{e^{-iax}}{x + i\varepsilon} dx = 0. \quad (7.1.1.28)$$

Now, by Corollary 7.1.1.3, we have

$$\lim_{R \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{2\pi i} \int_{\Gamma_R} \frac{e^{-iax}}{x + i\varepsilon} dx = 0, \quad (7.1.1.29)$$

hence

$$0 = \lim_{R \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{2\pi i} \int_{-R}^R \frac{e^{-iax}}{x + i\varepsilon} dx = \frac{1}{2\pi i} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \frac{e^{-iax}}{x + i\varepsilon} dx. \quad (7.1.1.30)$$

□

### 7.1.2 Creation and annihilation algebra for bosons and fermions

In this subsection  $p$  indexes are arbitrary and they are not necessarily related to momentum.

We are still in a “usual” Dirac formulation of quantum mechanics. We simply make certain assumptions about family of operators  $a_p$  and one distinguished state  $|0\rangle \neq 0$ , which is called a vacuum state.

**Definition 7.1.2.1** (Bosonic creation and annihilation assumptions). *We will call the below statements bosonic creation and annihilation assumptions*

$$[a_p, a_q^\dagger] = \delta(p - q), \quad (7.1.2.1)$$

$$[a_p, a_q] = 0 \text{ and } [a_p^\dagger, a_q^\dagger] = 0, \quad (7.1.2.2)$$

$$a_p |0\rangle = 0. \quad (7.1.2.3)$$

**Proposition 7.1.2.2.** *Under bosonic creation and annihilation assumptions, we have*

$$a_p(a_{q_1}^\dagger \dots a_{q_n}^\dagger) = \sum_{k=1}^n \delta(p - q_k) a_{q_1}^\dagger a_{q_{k-1}}^\dagger \dots a_{q_{k+1}}^\dagger a_{q_n}^\dagger + (a_{q_1}^\dagger \dots a_{q_n}^\dagger) a_p. \quad (7.1.2.4)$$

*Proof.* Note that (7.1.2.18) holds for  $n = 1$ . We will prove it by induction. Let's now assume (7.1.2.18) holds for  $n - 1$ .

$$\begin{aligned} a_p(a_{q_1}^\dagger \dots a_{q_n}^\dagger) &= a_{q_1}^\dagger a_p(a_{q_2}^\dagger \dots a_{q_n}^\dagger) + \delta(p - q_1)(a_{q_2}^\dagger \dots a_{q_n}^\dagger) = \\ &= a_{q_1}^\dagger \sum_{k=2}^n \delta(p - q_k) a_{q_2}^\dagger a_{q_{k-1}}^\dagger \dots a_{q_{k+1}}^\dagger a_{q_n}^\dagger + \delta(p - q_1)(a_{q_2}^\dagger \dots a_{q_n}^\dagger) + a_{q_1}^\dagger (a_{q_2}^\dagger \dots a_{q_n}^\dagger) a_p. \end{aligned}$$

□

**Corollary 7.1.2.3.**

$$a_p(a_{q_1}^\dagger \dots a_{q_n}^\dagger) |0\rangle = \sum_{k=1}^n \delta(p - q_k) a_{q_1}^\dagger a_{q_{k-1}}^\dagger \dots a_{q_{k+1}}^\dagger a_{q_n}^\dagger |0\rangle. \quad (7.1.2.5)$$

**Corollary 7.1.2.4.**

$$a_p(a_q^\dagger)^n |0\rangle = n\delta(p - q)(a_q^\dagger)^{n-1} |0\rangle. \quad (7.1.2.6)$$

**Lemma 7.1.2.5.** *If  $[a_p, a_q^\dagger] = \delta(p - q)$ , then*

$$\begin{aligned} & \int K_1(\dots, p, q, \dots) a_p a_q^\dagger K_2(\dots, p, q, \dots) d\dots dp dq \dots = \\ & \int K_1(\dots, p, q, \dots) a_q^\dagger a_p K_2(\dots, p, q, \dots) d\dots dp dq \dots + \\ & \int K_1(\dots, p, p, \dots) K_2(\dots, p, p, \dots) d\dots dp \dots \end{aligned}$$

**Proposition 7.1.2.6.** *We assume bozonic creation and annihilation assumptions. Let  $F = \int dp f(p) a_p^\dagger a_p$  and  $G = \int dp g(p) a_p^\dagger a_p$ , then*

$$[F, G] = 0. \quad (7.1.2.7)$$

*Proof.*

$$\begin{aligned} FG &= \int dp dq f(p) g(q) a_p^\dagger a_p a_q^\dagger a_q = \\ & \int dp dq f(p) g(q) a_p^\dagger a_q^\dagger a_p a_q + \int dp f(p) g(p) a_p^\dagger a_p = \\ & \int dp dq f(p) g(q) a_q^\dagger a_p^\dagger a_q a_p + \int dp f(p) g(p) a_p^\dagger a_p \\ &= \int dp dq f(p) g(q) a_q^\dagger a_q a_p^\dagger a_p - \cancel{\int dq f(q) g(q) a_q^\dagger a_q} + \cancel{\int dp f(p) g(p) a_p^\dagger a_p} = GF. \end{aligned}$$

□

**Proposition 7.1.2.7.** *We assume bozonic creation and annihilation assumptions. Let  $P = \int dp a_p^\dagger a_p$  and*

$$\hat{V} = \int dp_1 dp_2 dq V_q a_{p_1+q}^\dagger a_{p_2-q}^\dagger a_{p_2} a_{p_1}, \quad (7.1.2.8)$$

*then  $[\hat{V}, P] = 0$ .*

*Proof.* Let's do calculations:



$$\begin{aligned}
\hat{V}P &= \int d\rho_1 d\rho_2 dq dp' V_q p' a_{\rho_1+q}^+ a_{\rho_2-q}^+ a_{\rho_2} a_{\rho_1} a_{\rho'}^+ a_{\rho'} = \\
&= \int \dots a_{\rho_1}^+ a_{\rho_2} \dots + \int d\rho_1 d\rho_2 dq V_q p_1 a_{\rho_1+q}^+ a_{\rho_2-q}^+ a_{\rho_2} a_{\rho_1} = \\
&= \int \dots a_{\rho_1}^+ a_{\rho_2} \dots + \int d\rho_1 d\rho_2 dq V_q p_2 a_{\rho_1+q}^+ a_{\rho_2-q}^+ a_{\rho_1} a_{\rho_2} + \text{I} = \\
&= \int \dots a_{\rho_1}^+ a_{\rho_2-q} \dots - \int d\rho_1 d\rho_2 dq V_q (p_2-q) a_{\rho_2-q}^+ a_{\rho_1+q}^+ a_{\rho_2} a_{\rho_1} + \text{II} + \text{I} = \\
&= \int \dots a_{\rho_1}^+ a_{\rho_1+q} \dots - \int d\rho_1 d\rho_2 dq V_q (p_1+q) a_{\rho_1+q}^+ a_{\rho_2-q}^+ a_{\rho_2} a_{\rho_1} + \text{III} + \text{II} + \text{I} = \\
&= P \hat{V} - \int d\rho_1 d\rho_2 dq V_q q a_{\rho_1+q}^+ a_{\rho_2-q}^+ a_{\rho_2} a_{\rho_1} + \\
&\quad \int d\rho_1 d\rho_2 dq V_q q a_{\rho_1+q}^+ a_{\rho_2-q}^+ a_{\rho_1} a_{\rho_2} = P \hat{V}
\end{aligned}$$

□

Let's now work out a more generic equations which will work with bozons as well as with fermions. For that it will be usefull to introduce a generic commutator expression

$$[A, B]_\zeta \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} AB - \zeta BA. \quad (7.1.2.9)$$

Note that for commutator, we have  $[A, B] = [A, B]_1$  and for anticommutator, we have  $\{A, B\} = [A, B]_{-1}$ .

Note a usefull transposition:

$$AB = [A, B]_\zeta + \zeta BA. \quad (7.1.2.10)$$

**Assumption 7.1.2.8.** Let  $\zeta \in \{-1, 1\}$ . Assume that the bellow conditions holds for a family of operators  $a_p$ .

$$[a_p, a_q^\dagger]_\zeta = \delta(p - q), \quad (7.1.2.11)$$

$$[a_p, a_q]_\zeta = 0 \text{ and } [a_p^\dagger, a_q^\dagger]_\zeta = 0, \quad (7.1.2.12)$$

$$a_p |0\rangle = 0. \quad (7.1.2.13)$$

For  $\zeta = 1$  the above are *bozonic annihilation and creation assumptions*, for  $\zeta = -1$  the above are *fermionic annihilation and creation assumptions*.

Note that under Assumption 7.1.2.8, we have always

$$a_p a_q^\dagger = \delta(p - q) + \zeta a_q^\dagger a_p, \quad (7.1.2.14)$$

$$a_q^\dagger a_p = \zeta \delta(p - q) - \zeta a_p a_q^\dagger, \quad (7.1.2.15)$$

$$a_p a_q = \zeta a_q a_p, \quad (7.1.2.16)$$

$$a_p^\dagger a_q^\dagger = \zeta a_q^\dagger a_p^\dagger. \quad (7.1.2.17)$$

Note that it follows that for fermions we have  $a_p^\dagger a_p^\dagger = 0$ . For all subsequent calculations it is also worth to remember that  $\zeta^{2k} = 1$  for any integer  $k$ .

**Proposition 7.1.2.9.** *Under Assumption 7.1.2.8, we have*

$$a_p(a_{q_1}^\dagger \dots a_{q_n}^\dagger) = \sum_{k=1}^n \zeta^{k-1} \delta(p - q_k) a_{q_1}^\dagger \dots a_{q_{k-1}}^\dagger a_{q_{k+1}}^\dagger \dots a_{q_n}^\dagger + \zeta^n (a_{q_1}^\dagger \dots a_{q_n}^\dagger) a_p. \quad (7.1.2.18)$$

*Proof.* Note that (7.1.2.18) holds for  $n = 1$ . We will prove it by induction. Let's now assume (7.1.2.18) holds for  $n - 1$ .

$$\begin{aligned} a_p(a_{q_1}^\dagger \dots a_{q_n}^\dagger) &= \zeta a_{q_1}^\dagger a_p(a_{q_2}^\dagger \dots a_{q_n}^\dagger) + \delta(p - q_1)(a_{q_2}^\dagger \dots a_{q_n}^\dagger) = \\ &= \zeta a_{q_1}^\dagger \sum_{k=2}^n \zeta^k \delta(p - q_k) a_{q_2}^\dagger \dots a_{q_{k-1}}^\dagger a_{q_{k+1}}^\dagger \dots a_{q_n}^\dagger + \zeta^0 \delta(p - q_1)(a_{q_2}^\dagger \dots a_{q_n}^\dagger) \\ &+ \zeta a_{q_1}^\dagger \zeta^{n-1} (a_{q_2}^\dagger \dots a_{q_n}^\dagger) a_p = \\ &= \sum_{k=1}^n \zeta^{k-1} \delta(p - q_k) a_{q_1}^\dagger a_{q_{k-1}}^\dagger \dots a_{q_{k+1}}^\dagger a_{q_n}^\dagger + \zeta^n (a_{q_1}^\dagger \dots a_{q_n}^\dagger) a_p. \end{aligned}$$

□

**Corollary 7.1.2.10.** *Under Assumption 7.1.2.8, we have*

$$a_p(a_{q_1}^\dagger \dots a_{q_n}^\dagger) |0\rangle = \sum_{k=1}^n \zeta^{k-1} \delta(p - q_k) a_{q_1}^\dagger \dots a_{q_{k-1}}^\dagger a_{q_{k+1}}^\dagger \dots a_{q_n}^\dagger |0\rangle. \quad (7.1.2.19)$$

**Proposition 7.1.2.11.** *Under Assumption 7.1.2.8 for  $F = \int dp f(p) a_p^\dagger a_p$ , we have*

$$F a_{p_1}^\dagger \dots a_{p_n}^\dagger |0\rangle = \left( \sum_{k=1}^n f(p_k) \right) a_{p_1}^\dagger \dots a_{p_n}^\dagger |0\rangle. \quad (7.1.2.20)$$

*Proof.*

$$\begin{aligned}
Fa_{p_1}^\dagger \dots a_{p_n}^\dagger |0\rangle &= \int dp f(p) a_p^\dagger a_p a_{p_1}^\dagger \dots a_{p_n}^\dagger |0\rangle = \\
&\sum_{k=1}^n \zeta^{k-1} f(a_{p_k}) a_{p_k}^\dagger a_{p_1}^\dagger \dots \cancel{a_{p_k}^\dagger} \dots a_{p_n}^\dagger |0\rangle = \\
&\sum_{k=1}^n \zeta^{k-1} \zeta^{k-1} f(a_{p_k}) a_{p_1}^\dagger \dots a_{p_n}^\dagger |0\rangle = \\
&\left( \sum_{k=1}^n f(p_k) \right) a_{p_1}^\dagger \dots a_{p_n}^\dagger |0\rangle.
\end{aligned}$$

□

**Proposition 7.1.2.12.** *Under Assumption 7.1.2.8, for  $F = \int dp f(p) a_p^\dagger a_p$  and  $G = \int dp g(p) a_p^\dagger a_p$ , we have*

$$[F, G] = 0. \quad (7.1.2.21)$$

*Proof.*

$$\begin{aligned}
FG &= \int dp dq f(p) g(q) a_p^\dagger a_p a_q^\dagger a_q = \\
&\zeta \int dp dq f(p) g(q) a_p^\dagger a_q^\dagger a_p a_q + \int dp f(p) g(p) a_p^\dagger a_p = \\
&\zeta \int dp dq f(p) g(q) a_q^\dagger a_p^\dagger a_q a_p + \int dp f(p) g(p) a_p^\dagger a_p = \\
&= \zeta \left( \zeta \int dp dq f(p) g(q) a_q^\dagger a_q a_p^\dagger a_p - \zeta \int dq f(q) g(q) a_q^\dagger a_q \right) + \int dp f(p) g(p) a_p^\dagger a_p = \\
&\int dp dq f(p) g(q) a_q^\dagger a_q a_p^\dagger a_p - \cancel{\int dq f(q) g(q) a_q^\dagger a_q} + \cancel{\int dp f(p) g(p) a_p^\dagger a_p} = GF.
\end{aligned}$$

□

We will now change  $p, q$  notation to  $\alpha, \beta$  (it is just notation change).

**Proposition 7.1.2.13.** *Under Assumption 7.1.2.8, for an operator defined as*

$$V = \int d\alpha d\beta v(\alpha, \beta) a_\alpha^\dagger a_\beta^\dagger a_\beta a_\alpha, \quad (7.1.2.22)$$

*we have*

$$Va_{\alpha_1}^\dagger \dots a_{\alpha_n}^\dagger |0\rangle = \left( \sum_{k \neq k'} v(\alpha_k, \alpha_{k'}) \right) a_{\alpha_1}^\dagger \dots a_{\alpha_n}^\dagger |0\rangle. \quad (7.1.2.23)$$

*Proof.*

$$\begin{aligned}
V a_{\alpha_1}^\dagger \dots a_{\alpha_n}^\dagger |0\rangle &= \int d\alpha d\beta v(\alpha, \beta) a_\alpha^\dagger a_\beta^\dagger a_\beta a_\alpha a_{\alpha_1}^\dagger \dots a_{\alpha_n}^\dagger |0\rangle = \\
&\sum_{k=1}^n \zeta^{k-1} \int d\beta v(\alpha_k, \beta) a_{\alpha_k}^\dagger a_\beta^\dagger a_\beta (a_{\alpha_1}^\dagger \dots \cancel{a_{\alpha_k}^\dagger} \dots a_{\alpha_n}^\dagger) |0\rangle = \\
&\sum_{k=1}^n \zeta^{k-1} \left( \sum_{k'=1}^{k-1} \zeta^{k'-1} + \sum_{k'=k+1}^n \zeta^{k'} \right) v(\alpha_k, \alpha_{k'}) a_{\alpha_k}^\dagger a_{\alpha_{k'}}^\dagger (a_{\alpha_1}^\dagger \dots \cancel{a_{\alpha_k}^\dagger} \cancel{a_{\alpha_{k'}}^\dagger} \dots a_{\alpha_n}^\dagger) |0\rangle = \\
&\sum_{k=1}^n \zeta^{k-1} \zeta^{k-1} \left( \sum_{k'=1}^{k-1} \zeta^{k'-1} \zeta^{k'-1} + \sum_{k'=k+1}^n \zeta^{k'} \zeta^{k'} \right) v(\alpha_k, \alpha_{k'}) a_{\alpha_1}^\dagger \dots a_{\alpha_n}^\dagger |0\rangle = \\
&\left( \sum_{k \neq k'} v(\alpha_k, \alpha_{k'}) \right) a_{\alpha_1}^\dagger \dots a_{\alpha_n}^\dagger |0\rangle.
\end{aligned}$$

□

### 7.1.3 Assembly of identical particles

Assume we have a space of quantum states  $\mathcal{X}$  which describe single particle of a kind.

We will set  $\zeta = 1$  (for bozons) or  $\zeta = -1$  (for fermions). Let's define the following state:

$$|\psi_1 \dots \psi_n\rangle \stackrel{def}{=} \frac{1}{\sqrt{n!}} \sum_{\sigma \in S_n} \zeta^\sigma |\psi_{\sigma(1)}\rangle \dots |\psi_{\sigma(n)}\rangle. \quad (7.1.3.1)$$

The above should be understood with the convention that  $1^\sigma = 1$  and  $(-1)^\sigma$  is as defined in Definition 11.4.1.1.

Note that this state belongs to the tensor product  $\bigotimes_{k=1}^n \mathcal{X}$ . Let's introduce a new state  $|0\rangle$  which will represent a vaccume state (i.e. 0 particles).

Let's define

$$\begin{cases} \mathcal{F}_0(\mathcal{X}) \stackrel{def}{=} \text{span}\{|0\rangle\}, \\ \mathcal{F}_n(\mathcal{X}) \stackrel{def}{=} \text{span}\{|\psi_1 \dots \psi_n\rangle : \psi_k \in \mathcal{X} \text{ for } k = 1, \dots, n\}. \end{cases} \quad (7.1.3.2)$$

Note that  $\mathcal{F}_n(\mathcal{X})$  is a space of all possible quantum states for  $n$  particles.

Finally we are ready to define a Fock space:

$$\mathcal{F}(\mathcal{X}) \stackrel{def}{=} \bigcup_{n=0}^{\infty} \mathcal{F}_n(\mathcal{X}). \quad (7.1.3.3)$$

To finish definition we need to define amplitudes between states of Fock space.

**Definition 7.1.3.1.**

$$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \langle \phi' | \phi \rangle \stackrel{def}{=} 0 \text{ for any } |\phi'\rangle \in \mathcal{F}_{k'}(\mathcal{X}), |\phi\rangle \in \mathcal{F}_k(\mathcal{X}) \text{ where } k \neq k', \\ \langle 0 | 0 \rangle = 1, \\ \langle \chi_1 \dots \chi_n | \psi_1 \dots \psi_n \rangle \stackrel{def}{=} \frac{1}{n!} \sum_{\sigma \in S_n} \sum_{\sigma' \in S_n} \zeta^\sigma \zeta^{\sigma'} \prod_{k=1}^n \langle \chi_{\sigma'(k)} | \phi_{\sigma(k)} \rangle. \end{array} \right. \quad (7.1.3.4)$$

Note that

$$\langle \chi_1 \dots \chi_n | \psi_1 \dots \psi_n \rangle = \sum_{\sigma \in S_n} \zeta^\sigma \prod_{k=1}^n \langle \chi_k | \phi_{\sigma(k)} \rangle, \quad (7.1.3.5)$$

**Proposition 7.1.3.2.**

$$\begin{aligned} \langle \chi_1 \dots \chi_n | \psi_1 \dots \psi_n \rangle &= \sum_{k=1}^n \zeta^{k+k'} \langle \chi_k | \psi_{k'} \rangle \langle \chi_1 \dots \cancel{\chi_k} \dots \chi_n | \psi_1 \dots \cancel{\psi_{k'}} \dots \psi_n \rangle = \\ &= \sum_{k'=1}^n \zeta^{k+k'} \langle \chi_k | \psi_{k'} \rangle \langle \chi_1 \dots \cancel{\chi_k} \dots \chi_n | \psi_1 \dots \cancel{\psi_{k'}} \dots \psi_n \rangle. \end{aligned}$$

*Proof.* For  $\zeta = 1$  the thesis is obvious. Note that for  $\zeta = -1$

$$\langle \chi_1 \dots \chi_n | \psi_1 \dots \psi_n \rangle = \det[\langle \chi_k | \psi_{k'} \rangle] \quad (7.1.3.6)$$

and the thesis is simply a Laplace expansion of determinant.  $\square$

**Fact 7.1.3.3.**

$$|\psi_{\sigma(1)} \dots \psi_{\sigma(n)}\rangle = \zeta^\sigma |\psi_1 \dots \psi_n\rangle. \quad (7.1.3.7)$$

*Proof.*

$$\begin{aligned} |\psi_{\sigma(1)} \dots \psi_{\sigma(n)}\rangle &= \frac{1}{\sqrt{n!}} \sum_{\sigma' \in S_n} \zeta^{\sigma'} |\psi_{\sigma'\sigma(1)}\rangle \dots |\psi_{\sigma'\sigma(n)}\rangle = \\ &= \zeta^\sigma \frac{1}{\sqrt{n!}} \sum_{\sigma' \in S_n} \zeta^\sigma \zeta^{\sigma'} |\psi_{\sigma'\sigma(1)}\rangle \dots |\psi_{\sigma'\sigma(n)}\rangle = |\psi_{\sigma(1)} \dots \psi_{\sigma(n)}\rangle = \zeta^\sigma |\psi_1 \dots \psi_n\rangle. \end{aligned}$$

$\square$

The above fact is the justification for the whole construction of the Fock space. It says that the order of particles does not matter for the state representation. This is philosophically expected. For two identical particles, the universe is exactly the same whether the 1st particle is in the state  $|\phi\rangle$  and 2nd in state  $|\phi'\rangle$  or the 1st is in the state  $|\phi'\rangle$  and the 2nd in the state  $|\phi\rangle$ . For bosons we have literally  $|\psi_{\sigma(1)} \dots \psi_{\sigma(n)}\rangle = |\psi_1 \dots \psi_n\rangle$  and for fermions they may differ by scalar multiplication of  $-1$ , which can't change any measurement taken on this quantum state (i.e. they are experimentally indistinguishable).

Note that for fermions (i.e.  $\zeta = -1$ ) we have

$$|\psi_{\sigma(1)} \dots \psi_k \dots \psi_{k'} \dots \psi_{\sigma(n)}\rangle = 0, \quad (7.1.3.8)$$

when  $|\psi_k\rangle = |\psi_{k'}\rangle$ .

This is because for each permutation  $\sigma$ , you will find a permutation  $\sigma' = \sigma[k \leftrightarrow k']$  such that

$$|\psi_{\sigma(1)}\rangle \dots |\psi_{\sigma(n)}\rangle = |\psi_{\sigma'(1)}\rangle \dots |\psi_{\sigma'(n)}\rangle \quad (7.1.3.9)$$

and  $(-1)^\sigma = -(-1)^{\sigma'}$ .

The above is the reason, why for fermions we require  $\zeta = -1$ . The equation (7.1.3.8) is Pauli exclusion principle, which says that there can't be two fermions in exactly the same quantum state.

For any single particle state  $|\alpha\rangle$  we can define creation operator:

**Definition 7.1.3.4.**

$$a_\alpha^\dagger |\psi_1 \dots \psi_n\rangle \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} |\alpha \psi_1 \dots \psi_n\rangle \quad (7.1.3.10)$$

for any  $n = 0, \dots, +\infty$  and any  $\psi_1, \dots, \psi_n \in \mathcal{X}$ .

Anihilation operator  $a_\alpha$  is simply an adjoint operator to creation operator  $a_\alpha^\dagger$ . Note that this is arbitrary which one will be used with dagger. By convention we write dagger with creation operator.

**Proposition 7.1.3.5.**

$$a_\alpha |0\rangle = 0. \quad (7.1.3.11)$$

*Proof.*

$$\langle 0 | a_\alpha | \psi_1 \dots \psi_n \rangle = \langle 0 | \alpha \psi_1 \dots \psi_n \rangle = 0. \quad (7.1.3.12)$$

□

**Proposition 7.1.3.6.**

$$a_\alpha |\chi_1 \dots \chi_n\rangle = \sum_{k=1}^n \zeta^{k-1} \langle \alpha | \chi_k \rangle |\chi_1 \dots \cancel{\chi_k} \dots \chi_n\rangle. \quad (7.1.3.13)$$

*Proof.* Note that

$$\langle \chi_1 \dots \chi_n | a_\alpha^\dagger | \psi_1 \dots \psi_{n-1} \rangle = \langle \chi_1 \dots \chi_n | \alpha \psi_1 \dots \psi_{n-1} \rangle \quad (7.1.3.14)$$

By Proposition 7.1.3.2, we have

$$\langle \chi_1 \dots \chi_n | \alpha \psi_1 \dots \psi_{n-1} \rangle = \sum_{k=1}^n \zeta^{k+1} \langle \chi_k | \alpha \rangle \langle \chi_1 \dots \cancel{\chi_k} \dots \chi_n | \psi_1 \dots \psi_{n-1} \rangle. \quad (7.1.3.15)$$

□

**Proposition 7.1.3.7.** *Let  $|\alpha\rangle$  and  $|\beta\rangle$  be single particle states and let  $a_\alpha^\dagger$  and  $a_\beta^\dagger$  be corresponding creation operators, then*

$$a_\alpha a_\beta^\dagger = \langle \alpha | \beta \rangle + \zeta a_\beta^\dagger a_\alpha. \quad (7.1.3.16)$$

*Proof.* Note that

$$a_\beta^\dagger a_\alpha |\psi_1 \dots \psi_n\rangle = \sum_{k=1}^n \zeta^{k-1} \langle \alpha | \psi_k \rangle |\beta \psi_1 \dots \cancel{\psi_k} \dots \psi_n\rangle. \quad (7.1.3.17)$$

Let's calculate

$$\begin{aligned} a_\alpha a_\beta^\dagger |\psi_1 \dots \psi_n\rangle &= a_\alpha |\beta \psi_1 \dots \psi_n\rangle = \\ &= \langle \alpha | \beta \rangle |\psi_1 \dots \psi_n\rangle + \sum_{k=1}^n \zeta^k |\psi_1 \dots \psi_n\rangle \langle \alpha | \psi_k \rangle |\beta \psi_1 \dots \cancel{\psi_k} \dots \psi_n\rangle. \end{aligned}$$

□

**Proposition 7.1.3.8.** *Let  $|\alpha\rangle$  and  $|\beta\rangle$  be single particle states and let  $a_\alpha^\dagger$  and  $a_\beta^\dagger$  be corresponding creation operators, then*

$$a_\alpha^\dagger a_\beta^\dagger = \zeta a_\beta^\dagger a_\alpha^\dagger \quad (7.1.3.18)$$

and

$$a_\alpha a_\beta = \zeta a_\beta a_\alpha. \quad (7.1.3.19)$$

*Proof.* This is a simple conclusion from Fact 7.1.3.7. □

**Corollary 7.1.3.9.** *For any family of states  $|\alpha\rangle$  such that  $\langle \alpha | \alpha' \rangle = \delta(\alpha - \alpha')$ , corresponding creator and annihilator operator families satisfy Assumption 7.1.2.8.*

### 7.1.4 Non-relativistic interacting particles assembly

In this subsection we will consider a theoretical model of identical non-relativistic particles with interaction potential. We will assume  $a_{\mathbf{p}}^\dagger$  satisfies Assumption 7.1.2.8.

Let's define the operator

$$\psi^\dagger(\mathbf{x}) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} (2\pi)^{-3/2} \int d\mathbf{p} e^{-i\mathbf{x}\cdot\mathbf{p}} a_{\mathbf{p}}^\dagger. \quad (7.1.4.1)$$

Let's calculate

$$\begin{aligned} \psi(\mathbf{y})\psi^\dagger(\mathbf{x}) &= (2\pi)^{-3} \int d\mathbf{q} d\mathbf{p} e^{-i(\mathbf{x}\cdot\mathbf{p}-\mathbf{y}\cdot\mathbf{q})} a_{\mathbf{q}} a_{\mathbf{p}}^\dagger = \\ &= (2\pi)^{-3} \int d\mathbf{p} e^{-i(\mathbf{x}-\mathbf{y})\cdot\mathbf{p}} + \zeta (2\pi)^{-3} \int d\mathbf{q} d\mathbf{p} e^{-i(\mathbf{x}\cdot\mathbf{p}-\mathbf{y}\cdot\mathbf{q})} a_{\mathbf{p}}^\dagger a_{\mathbf{q}} = \\ &= \delta(\mathbf{x} - \mathbf{y}) + \zeta \psi^\dagger(\mathbf{x})\psi(\mathbf{y}). \end{aligned}$$

We got

$$\psi(\mathbf{y})\psi^\dagger(\mathbf{x}) = \delta(\mathbf{x} - \mathbf{y}) + \zeta \psi^\dagger(\mathbf{x})\psi(\mathbf{y}). \quad (7.1.4.2)$$

thus

$$\boxed{[\psi(\mathbf{y}), \psi^\dagger(\mathbf{x})]_\zeta = \delta(\mathbf{x} - \mathbf{y})}. \quad (7.1.4.3)$$

It is elementary to notice that:

$$\begin{aligned} [\psi^\dagger(\mathbf{y}), \psi^\dagger(\mathbf{x})]_\zeta &= 0, \\ [\psi(\mathbf{y}), \psi(\mathbf{x})]_\zeta &= 0, \\ \psi(\mathbf{x}) |0\rangle &= 0. \end{aligned}$$

The above means that  $\psi^\dagger(\mathbf{x})$  also satisfies Assumption 7.1.2.8.

Let's calculate

$$a_{\mathbf{p}}\psi^\dagger(\mathbf{x}) |0\rangle = (2\pi)^{-3/2} \int d\mathbf{q} e^{-i\mathbf{x}\cdot\mathbf{q}} a_{\mathbf{p}} a_{\mathbf{q}}^\dagger |0\rangle = (2\pi)^{-3/2} e^{-i\mathbf{x}\cdot\mathbf{p}} |0\rangle.$$

Thus

$$\langle 0 | a_{\mathbf{p}} \psi^\dagger(\mathbf{x}) | 0 \rangle = (2\pi)^{-3/2} e^{-i\mathbf{x}\cdot\mathbf{p}}. \quad (7.1.4.4)$$

Which justifies that  $a_{\mathbf{p}}^\dagger$  creates a particle in momentum state  $|\mathbf{p}\rangle$  and  $\psi^\dagger(\mathbf{x})$  creates a particle in position state  $|\mathbf{x}\rangle$  (we will sometimes write  $|\mathbf{x}_1 \dots \mathbf{x}_n\rangle = \psi^\dagger(\mathbf{x}_1) \dots \psi^\dagger(\mathbf{x}_n) |0\rangle$ ). Keeping that interpretation in mind and Proposition 7.1.2.11, it is apparent that

$$\mathbf{P} = \int d\mathbf{p} \mathbf{p} a_{\mathbf{p}}^\dagger a_{\mathbf{p}} \quad (7.1.4.5)$$



is 3-dimentional (all single dimation operators commute, so we can write this that way) momentum count operator. Let's try to see it in position representation.

$$\begin{aligned}
& \langle \phi | \mathbf{P} \psi^\dagger(\mathbf{x}_1) \dots \psi^\dagger(\mathbf{x}_n) | 0 \rangle = \\
& \langle \phi | (2\pi)^{-3n/2} \int d\mathbf{p}_1 \dots d\mathbf{p}_n e^{-i\mathbf{x}_1 \cdot \mathbf{p}_1} \dots e^{-i\mathbf{x}_n \cdot \mathbf{p}_n} \mathbf{p} a_{\mathbf{p}}^\dagger a_{\mathbf{p}} a_{\mathbf{p}_1}^\dagger \dots a_{\mathbf{p}_n}^\dagger | 0 \rangle = \\
& \langle \phi | (2\pi)^{-3n/2} \sum_{k=1}^n \zeta^{k-1} \int d\mathbf{p}_1 \dots d\mathbf{p}_n e^{-i\mathbf{x}_1 \cdot \mathbf{p}_1} \dots e^{-i\mathbf{x}_n \cdot \mathbf{p}_n} \mathbf{p}_k a_{\mathbf{p}_k}^\dagger a_{\mathbf{p}_1}^\dagger \dots \cancel{a_{\mathbf{p}_k}^\dagger} \dots a_{\mathbf{p}_n}^\dagger | 0 \rangle = \\
& (2\pi)^{-3n/2} \sum_{k=1}^n \int d\mathbf{p}_1 \dots d\mathbf{p}_n e^{-i\mathbf{x}_1 \cdot \mathbf{p}_1} \dots e^{-i\mathbf{x}_n \cdot \mathbf{p}_n} \mathbf{p}_k \langle \phi | a_{\mathbf{p}_1}^\dagger \dots a_{\mathbf{p}_n}^\dagger | 0 \rangle = \\
& (2\pi)^{-3n/2} \sum_{k=1}^n i \frac{\partial}{\partial \mathbf{x}_k} \int d\mathbf{p}_1 \dots d\mathbf{p}_n e^{-i\mathbf{x}_1 \cdot \mathbf{p}_1} \dots e^{-i\mathbf{x}_n \cdot \mathbf{p}_n} \langle \phi | a_{\mathbf{p}_1}^\dagger \dots a_{\mathbf{p}_n}^\dagger | 0 \rangle = \\
& \sum_{k=1}^n i \frac{\partial}{\partial \mathbf{x}_k} \langle \phi | \psi^\dagger(\mathbf{x}_1) \dots \psi^\dagger(\mathbf{x}_n) | 0 \rangle.
\end{aligned}$$

Thus we have

$$\boxed{\langle \phi | \mathbf{P} \psi^\dagger(\mathbf{x}_1) \dots \psi^\dagger(\mathbf{x}_n) | 0 \rangle = \sum_{k=1}^n i \frac{\partial}{\partial \mathbf{x}_k} \langle \phi | \psi^\dagger(\mathbf{x}_1) \dots \psi^\dagger(\mathbf{x}_n) | 0 \rangle.} \quad (7.1.4.6)$$

Let's define operator

$$V = \frac{1}{2} \int d\mathbf{x} d\mathbf{y} V(\mathbf{x} - \mathbf{y}) \psi^\dagger(\mathbf{x}) \psi^\dagger(\mathbf{y}) \psi(\mathbf{y}) \psi(\mathbf{x}). \quad (7.1.4.7)$$

By Proposition 7.1.2.13 we have

$$V \psi^\dagger(\mathbf{x}_1) \dots \psi^\dagger(\mathbf{x}_n) | 0 \rangle = \frac{1}{2} \sum_{k \neq k'} V(\mathbf{x}_k - \mathbf{x}_{k'}) \psi^\dagger(\mathbf{x}_1) \dots \psi^\dagger(\mathbf{x}_n) | 0 \rangle. \quad (7.1.4.8)$$

The physical interpretation of  $V$  is a particle-particle interaction potential. It is easy to notice that it sums potential for each pair of particles.

As it turns out  $V$  and  $P$  commute, which might come as a surprise as their one particle analogs don't commute.

Indeed, let's calculate

$$\begin{aligned}
\langle \phi | P V | \mathbf{x}_1 \dots \mathbf{x}_n \rangle &= \sum_{k \neq k''} V(\mathbf{x}_k - \mathbf{x}_{k''}) \langle \phi | P | \mathbf{x}_1 \dots \mathbf{x}_n \rangle = \\
& i \sum_{k \neq k'} V(\mathbf{x}_k - \mathbf{x}_{k'}) \sum_{k''=1}^n \frac{\partial}{\partial \mathbf{x}_{k''}} \langle \phi | \mathbf{x}_1 \dots \mathbf{x}_n \rangle.
\end{aligned}$$

On the other hand

$$\begin{aligned}
\langle \phi | VP | \mathbf{x}_1 \dots \mathbf{x}_n \rangle &= \sum_{k''=1}^n \frac{\partial}{\partial \mathbf{x}_{k''}} \langle \phi | V | \mathbf{x}_1 \dots \mathbf{x}_n \rangle = \\
&= i \sum_{k''=1}^n \frac{\partial}{\partial \mathbf{x}_{k''}} \left( \sum_{k \neq k''} V(\mathbf{x}_k - \mathbf{x}_{k''}) \langle \phi | \mathbf{x}_1 \dots \mathbf{x}_n \rangle \right) = \\
&= \left( i \sum_{k''=1}^n \sum_{k \neq k''} \frac{\partial}{\partial \mathbf{x}_{k''}} V(\mathbf{x}_k - \mathbf{x}_{k''}) \right) \langle \phi | \mathbf{x}_1 \dots \mathbf{x}_n \rangle + \\
&+ i \sum_{k \neq k''} V(\mathbf{x}_k - \mathbf{x}_{k''}) \sum_{k''=1}^n \frac{\partial}{\partial \mathbf{x}_{k''}} \langle \phi | \mathbf{x}_1 \dots \mathbf{x}_n \rangle = \\
&= \left( i \sum_{k \neq k''} \sum_{k''=1}^n \frac{\partial}{\partial \mathbf{x}_{k''}} V(\mathbf{x}_k - \mathbf{x}_{k''}) \right) \langle \phi | \mathbf{x}_1 \dots \mathbf{x}_n \rangle + \langle \phi | PV | \mathbf{x}_1 \dots \mathbf{x}_n \rangle.
\end{aligned}$$

Note that

$$\begin{aligned}
i \sum_{k \neq k''} \sum_{k''=1}^n \frac{\partial}{\partial \mathbf{x}_{k''}} V(\mathbf{x}_k - \mathbf{x}_{k''}) &= i \sum_{k \neq k''} \left( \frac{\partial}{\partial \mathbf{x}_k} V(\mathbf{x}_k - \mathbf{x}_{k''}) + \frac{\partial}{\partial \mathbf{x}_{k''}} V(\mathbf{x}_k - \mathbf{x}_{k''}) \right) = \\
i \sum_{k \neq k''} (\nabla V(\mathbf{x}_k - \mathbf{x}_{k''}) - \nabla V(\mathbf{x}_k - \mathbf{x}_{k''})) &= 0.
\end{aligned}$$

Let's work out representation of  $V$  in terms of momentum creation and annihilation operators (following [LB18]).

$$V = \frac{(2\pi)^{-6}}{2} \int d\mathbf{x} d\mathbf{y} d\mathbf{p}_1 d\mathbf{p}_2 d\mathbf{p}_3 d\mathbf{p}_4 V(\mathbf{x} - \mathbf{y}) e^{i(-\mathbf{x}\mathbf{p}_1 - \mathbf{y}\mathbf{p}_2 + \mathbf{y}\mathbf{p}_3 + \mathbf{x}\mathbf{p}_4)} a_{\mathbf{p}_1}^\dagger a_{\mathbf{p}_2}^\dagger a_{\mathbf{p}_3} a_{\mathbf{p}_4}.$$

Let's do dummy variables substitution  $\mathbf{z} = \mathbf{x} - \mathbf{y}$ .

$$\begin{aligned}
V &= \frac{(2\pi)^{-6}}{2} \int d\mathbf{z} d\mathbf{y} d\mathbf{p}_1 d\mathbf{p}_2 d\mathbf{p}_3 d\mathbf{p}_4 V(\mathbf{z}) e^{i\mathbf{z}(\mathbf{p}_4 - \mathbf{p}_1)} e^{i\mathbf{y}(-\mathbf{p}_1 - \mathbf{p}_2 + \mathbf{p}_3 + \mathbf{p}_4)} a_{\mathbf{p}_1}^\dagger a_{\mathbf{p}_2}^\dagger a_{\mathbf{p}_3} a_{\mathbf{p}_4} = \\
&= \frac{(2\pi)^{-3}}{2} (2\pi)^{-3} \int e^{i\mathbf{y}(-\mathbf{p}_1 - \mathbf{p}_2 + \mathbf{p}_3 + \mathbf{p}_4)} d\mathbf{y} d\mathbf{z} d\mathbf{p}_1 d\mathbf{p}_2 d\mathbf{p}_3 d\mathbf{p}_4 V(\mathbf{z}) e^{i\mathbf{z}(\mathbf{p}_4 - \mathbf{p}_1)} a_{\mathbf{p}_1}^\dagger a_{\mathbf{p}_2}^\dagger a_{\mathbf{p}_3} a_{\mathbf{p}_4} = \\
&= \frac{(2\pi)^{-3}}{2} \int \delta(-\mathbf{p}_1 - \mathbf{p}_2 + \mathbf{p}_3 + \mathbf{p}_4) d\mathbf{z} d\mathbf{p}_1 d\mathbf{p}_2 d\mathbf{p}_3 d\mathbf{p}_4 V(\mathbf{z}) e^{i\mathbf{z}(\mathbf{p}_4 - \mathbf{p}_1)} a_{\mathbf{p}_1}^\dagger a_{\mathbf{p}_2}^\dagger a_{\mathbf{p}_3} a_{\mathbf{p}_4} = \\
&= \frac{(2\pi)^{-3}}{2} \int V(\mathbf{z}) e^{-i(\mathbf{p}_3 - \mathbf{p}_2)} d\mathbf{z} d\mathbf{p}_1 d\mathbf{p}_2 d\mathbf{p}_3 a_{\mathbf{p}_1}^\dagger a_{\mathbf{p}_2}^\dagger a_{\mathbf{p}_3} a_{\mathbf{p}_1 + \mathbf{p}_2 - \mathbf{p}_3}.
\end{aligned}$$

Let's do another substitution:

$$\begin{cases} \mathbf{q} = \mathbf{p}_3 - \mathbf{p}_2, \\ \mathbf{p}'_1 = \mathbf{p}_1 - \mathbf{q}, \\ \mathbf{p}'_2 = \mathbf{p}_2 + \mathbf{q}. \end{cases} \quad (7.1.4.9)$$

Take also Fourier transform of  $V$

$$\hat{V}(\mathbf{q}) = (2\pi)^{-3/2} \int d\mathbf{z} V(\mathbf{z}) e^{-i\mathbf{q}\mathbf{z}}. \quad (7.1.4.10)$$

$$V = \frac{(2\pi)^{-3/2}}{2} \int d\mathbf{p}'_1 d\mathbf{p}'_2 d\mathbf{q} \hat{V}(\mathbf{q}) a_{\mathbf{p}'_1 + \mathbf{q}}^\dagger a_{\mathbf{p}'_2 - \mathbf{q}}^\dagger a_{\mathbf{p}'_2} a_{\mathbf{p}'_1}. \quad (7.1.4.11)$$

And removing primes just for aesthetic reasons

$$\boxed{V = \frac{(2\pi)^{-3/2}}{2} \int d\mathbf{p}_1 d\mathbf{p}_2 d\mathbf{q} \hat{V}(\mathbf{q}) a_{\mathbf{p}_1 + \mathbf{q}}^\dagger a_{\mathbf{p}_2 - \mathbf{q}}^\dagger a_{\mathbf{p}_2} a_{\mathbf{p}_1}}. \quad (7.1.4.12)$$

Assume that  $V$  is given by Yukawa potential

$$V(\mathbf{x}) = \frac{e^{-\epsilon|\mathbf{x}|} q^2}{4\pi|\mathbf{x}|}. \quad (7.1.4.13)$$

Let's assume  $z$ -ax is parallel to  $\mathbf{p}$ . We will use for calculations spherical coordinates:

$$\begin{cases} x = r \sin \theta \cos \phi, \\ y = r \sin \theta \sin \phi, \\ z = r \cos \theta. \end{cases}$$

Let's calculate

$$\begin{aligned} \int d\mathbf{x} V(\mathbf{x}) e^{-i\mathbf{p}\mathbf{x}} &= \int d\mathbf{x} \frac{e^{-i\mathbf{p}\mathbf{x}} e^{-\epsilon|\mathbf{x}|} q^2}{4\pi|\mathbf{x}|} = \\ &= \int_0^{+\infty} dr \int_0^{2\pi} d\phi \int_0^\pi d\theta \frac{e^{-i|\mathbf{p}|r \cos \theta} e^{-\epsilon r} q^2}{4\pi r} r^2 \sin \theta = \\ &= \frac{q^2}{2} \int_0^{+\infty} dr \int_{-1}^1 du e^{-i|\mathbf{p}|ru} e^{-\epsilon r} r = \frac{iq^2}{2|\mathbf{p}|} \int_0^{+\infty} dr (e^{-i|\mathbf{p}|r} - e^{i|\mathbf{p}|r}) e^{-\epsilon r} = \\ &= \frac{q^2}{|\mathbf{p}|} \int_0^{+\infty} dr \sin(|\mathbf{p}|r) e^{-\epsilon r}. \end{aligned}$$

Note that

$$\int \sin ax e^{bx} dx = \frac{e^{bx}}{a^2 + b^2} (b \sin ax - a \cos ax). \quad (7.1.4.14)$$

Thus

$$\frac{q^2}{|\mathbf{p}|} \int_0^{+\infty} dr \sin(|\mathbf{p}|r) e^{-\epsilon r} = \frac{q^2}{|\mathbf{p}|} \frac{|\mathbf{p}|}{\mathbf{p}^2 + \epsilon^2} = \frac{q^2}{\mathbf{p}^2 + \epsilon^2}. \quad (7.1.4.15)$$

Therefore

$$\boxed{\hat{V}(\mathbf{p}) = (2\pi)^{-3/2} \frac{q^2}{\mathbf{p}^2 + \epsilon^2}} \quad (7.1.4.16)$$

Let's go back to potential operator  $V$  and let's see how it acts on momentum bases states  $|\mathbf{p}_1 \dots \mathbf{p}_n\rangle$ . For convenience, let  $\mathcal{C}_V \stackrel{def}{=} \frac{(2\pi)^{-3/2}}{2}$ .

$$V |\mathbf{p}_1 \dots \mathbf{p}_n\rangle = \mathcal{C}_V \sum_{k \neq k'} \int d\mathbf{q} \hat{V}(\mathbf{q}) |\mathbf{p}_1 \dots (\mathbf{p}_k + \mathbf{q}) \dots (\mathbf{p}_{k'} - \mathbf{q}) \dots \mathbf{p}_n\rangle. \quad (7.1.4.17)$$

# Chapter 8

## Experiments

### 8.1 Secondary Cosmic Rays Detection with Two Geiger-Müller Tubes

#### 8.1.1 Introduction

The idea to detect cosmic rays by registering simultaneous discharges in Geiger-Müller tubes is almost as old as GM tubes themselves. Walther Bothe and Werner Kolhörster published the results from a coincidence experiment with discharges in GM counters in 1929 (“Das Wesen der Höhenstrahlung”, Zeitschrift für Physik 1929, 56: 751), while GM tube was invented in 1928. They registered deflections of fiber electrometers on moving film to detect symyultaneous discharges [Cla05]. The first modern, analogous to AND gate, system for detection of symultaneous discharges was proposed by Bruno Rossi in 1930 [Ros30].

In XIX ceuntry, due to very low prices of electrical components, the experiments which were conducted on the state of art devices in 30’s, are possible to repeat in schools’ and hobbyists’ laboratories. Recently, many experiments detecting muons by the means of two Geiger-Müller tubes were reported on various physical blogs on the Internet and were performed by many students in school laboratories.

The aim of this artcile is to report in possibly rigorous way one of such experiments conducted in hobbiest’s laboratory and compare empirical count rate of symultaneous discharges in GM tubes with theoretically predicted count rate of muons passing exactly through both GM tubes. We hope that the results could help studends to project their own experiments and to make necessary calculations.

### 8.1.2 Description of the Experimental Setup

In the experiment, two electric boards with Geiger-Muller (GM) tubes were fixed to a retord stand in such a way that the tubes were in horisontal position, parallel to each other, one exatly above the other in such a way that the vertical line could be drawn through its centers. The intention of this setup was to register the rate of “simultaneous” discharges caused by particles traveling down from the upper parts of the Earth atmosfere. The experiment was performed for (?) various distances of the tubes (...).

Equipment used:

1. Assembled DIY Geiger-Muller Counter Kit with GM Tube SBM20 with date mark 8903
2. Assembled DIY Geiger-Muller Counter Kit with GM Tube SBM20 with date mark 8904
3. Microcontroler Atmel ATMega328P embedded in the board Elegoo Uno R3 with 16MHz clock.

Both Geiger-Muller Counter boards were built from the same specification. 3 pins from Geiger-Muller Counter boards were of our particular interest: +5V, GND and INT. On INT pin the special signal is generated whenever there is a discharge in the GM tube. This signal can trigger AT-Mega328P interruption if INT output from Geiger-Muller Counter board is connected to the interrupt pin (PIN2 or PIN3) of ATMega328P.

Both Geiger-Muller Counter boards were calibarted before experiment to  $400 \pm 0.8V$  anode-cathode voltage on GM tube. The readings were done by  $1M\Omega$  multimeter and the value read was  $6.56 \pm 0.01V$  with multiplying factor 61.

In the experiment, Elegoo Uno R3 was powered by USB cable from PC. Both Geiger-Muller Counter boards were connected through their +5V pin pararelly to the source of +5V from Elegoo Uno R3 board and grounded by their GND pins to Elegoo Uno R3 board GND pin. INT pin from one Geiger-Muller Counter board (which was placed down) was connected to ATMega328P interrupt pin PIN2 and INT pin from the other Geiger-Muller Counter board (which was placed up) was connected to ATMega328P interrupt pin PIN3.

The software on ATMega328P registered signals on PIN2 and PIN3 caused by discharges in GM tubes and fire up interruptions respectively. It sent a signal through USB to PC if both interruptions fired up in less than

$$\Delta t_{th} = 100 \pm 4\mu s \quad (8.1.2.1)$$

time interval. Time of arrival of the signal was logged on PC together with time interval between interruptions.

It might have been tempting to use simple AND gate to register simultaneous discharges in GM tubes. But even by AND gate will not answer if impulses were really absolutely simultaneous. They always come in certain, however small, intervals and the impulses also last for some time. While the time interval between impulses for AND gate is certainly of order of magnitude shorter than the time interval measured while registering by microcontroller, we had no practical means of quantitative analysis of the former. Thus we decided on the latter, accepting potentially greater, but measurable error.

### 8.1.3 Background readings

In order to determine background readings, both GM Counter boards were monitored for 55 908 s commenced at 2019-01-10 23:00:01.

	SBM20 (8903)	SBM20 (8904)
discharges:	20531	21522
average waiting time:	2.7232s	2.5978s
std of waiting time:	2.7537s	2.6158s
est. expect. waiting time ( $\beta$ ):	$2.72 \pm 0.06s$	$2.60 \pm 0.05s$
est. expect. rate ( $\lambda$ )	$0.367 \pm 0.008s^{-1}$	$0.385 \pm 0.008s^{-1}$

### 8.1.4 Differentiating discharges in tubes caused by secondary cosmic ray from random nearly simultaneous discharges

To detect a charged particle flying from the upper parts of Earth atmosphere by registering “simultaneous” discharges in both tubes, we need to define what “simultaneous” means in our laboratory conditions and prove that we can distinguish them from random nearly simultaneous discharges in tubes. As first test we put one Geiger-Muller Counter board very close ( $2.7 \pm 0.1$  cm) above the other and log all events in which discharges in both tubes were registered by microcontroller in an interval  $\Delta t$  where  $\Delta t < \Delta t_{th} = 100 \pm 4\mu s$ . The microcontroller with the Arduino libraries we used could measure time in microseconds with a resolution of  $4\mu s$ .

We observed tubes for 36 627 s starting at 2019-01-12 12:39:29. During this time we registered 801 such events. In the table below we summarise the distribution of measured time interval  $\Delta t$  between discharges in tubes.

$\Delta t[\mu s]$	number of events
12	385
16	128
20	114
24	87
28	45
32	28
36	12
40	1
44	1
$\Delta t > 44$	0

First thing to notice is that the number of events decreases when the length of interval increases, which should have been exactly in an opposit way if nearly simultaneous discharges had happend only by chance. The mean value is  $m(\Delta t) = 17.12\mu s$  and the standard diviation is  $\sigma(\Delta t) = 6.38\mu s$ . A good candidate for a threshold is  $m(\Delta t) + 3\sigma(\Delta t) = 36.3\mu s$ . Keeping in mind that the resolution of the microcontroler is  $4\mu s$ , the natural choice is  $36\mu s$ .

Therefore, our definition of “simultaneous” will be, if two discharges appear in both tubes in the time interval less or equal

$$\Delta t_s = 36\mu s. \quad (8.1.4.1)$$

Considering the error of our microcontroller, we need to remeber that real  $\Delta t_s = 36 \pm 4\mu s$

We need to keep in mind that based on empirical data in the above table this definition will introduce additional systematic error  $\approx 0.25\%$  for measured count rate of simulatnous discharges.

Now, we need to estimate what are the chances of random discharges in both tubes in interval less than  $\Delta t_s = 36\mu \pm 4s$ . To calculate this, we will assume that discharges in tubes are completely random and independent and as such they follow the Poisson process with  $\lambda_A = 0.367 \pm 0.008s^{-1}$  for the tube with date mark 8903 (called further tube A) and  $\lambda_B = 0.385 \pm 0.008s^{-1}$  for tube with date mark 8904 (called further tube B) as established in Subsection 8.1.3. Let  $T_A$  and  $T_B$  be random variables which denote the waiting times for discharge respectively for tubes A and B. Now, consider two types of events:

1. Discharge in tube A followed by discharge in a tube B in an interval equal or less  $\Delta t_s$ .
2. Discharge in tube B followed by discharge in a tube A in an interval equal or less  $\Delta t_s$ .



They constitute two independent Poisson processes with rates respectively.

1.

$$\lambda_{\Delta t_s}^A = \lambda_A P(T_B \leq \Delta t_s) = \lambda_A (1 - e^{-\lambda_B \Delta t_s}). \quad (8.1.4.2)$$

2.

$$\lambda_{\Delta t_s}^B = \lambda_B P(T_A \leq \Delta t_s) = \lambda_B (1 - e^{-\lambda_A \Delta t_s}). \quad (8.1.4.3)$$

Now if we conceptually merge events of the above two types in one Poisson process, it will have the following rate

$$\lambda_{\Delta t_s} = \lambda_A P(T_B \leq \Delta t_s) + \lambda_B (1 - e^{-\lambda_A \Delta t_s}). \quad (8.1.4.4)$$

For our current values

$$\lambda_{\Delta t_s} = (1.02 \pm 0.16) \cdot 10^{-5} \text{s}^{-1}. \quad (8.1.4.5)$$

Thus, expected waiting time for a spontaneous “simultaneous” discharge (i.e. in interval equal or less  $\Delta t_s = 36 \pm 4 \mu\text{s}$ ) is  $(1.00 \pm 0.16) \cdot 10^5 \text{s}$  which is more than 23 hours and a half. This rate of spontaneous “simultaneous” discharges is quite satisfactory, however we need to keep in mind that  $\lambda_{\Delta t_s}$  is our lower bound of an error for any count rate of particles that we will be able to detect in our experiment. Thus we will assume that any conclusions from the experiment can be drawn only for the rates which are of at least 2 orders of magnitude greater than  $\lambda_{\Delta t_s}$ .

### 8.1.5 Theoretical prediction of mouns count rate in our experimental setup

We attempted to predict theoretically the count rate of muons passing exactly through both of our GM tubes (more precisely, through the active volumes of the tubes). We used the value of vertical intensity of muon flux

$$I_V = (8.4 \pm 0.4) \cdot 10^{-3} \text{cm}^2 \text{s}^{-1} \text{sr}^{-1} \quad (8.1.5.1)$$

as determined in [Dra08] and some of our calculation were inspired by explanations given in [Kuo10].

The count rate  $d\lambda$  of muons coming from an infinitesimal solid angle element  $d\Omega$  of celestial sphere at a zenith angle  $\theta$  and passing through an infinitesimal element of surface with a vector area  $\vec{dS}$  is assumed to be equal to

$$d\lambda = I_V \cos^n \theta (\vec{\eta} \cdot \vec{dS}) d\Omega, \quad (8.1.5.2)$$

where  $\vec{\eta}$  is a unit vector directed from the infinitesimal element of surface  $d\vec{S}$  to the infinitesimal solid angle element of celestial sphere  $d\Omega$ , as illustrated on Figure 8.1. After [Dra08], we assumed  $n = 1.85 \pm 0.10$ .

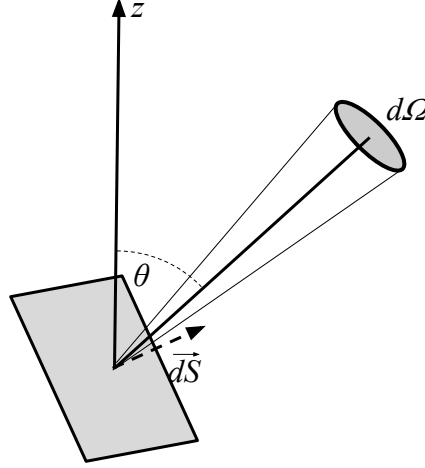


Figure 8.1: Muon flux through the infinitesimal element of surface with a vector area  $d\vec{S}$  from an infinitesimal element of celestial sphere with a solid angle  $d\Omega$  at a zenith angle  $\theta$ .

In case of two cylindrical tubes of the same radius  $R$  and of the same length  $L$  placed horizontally one above the other in a distance  $H$ , the total count rate  $\lambda$  of muons going exactly through both of the tubes will be given by

$$\lambda = I_V \int_U \int_{\Omega} \cos^n \theta (\vec{\eta} \cdot d\vec{S}) d\Omega. \quad (8.1.5.3)$$

Where an infinitesimal vector area element  $d\vec{S}$  runs over the upper part of the lower tube's surface and an infinitesimal solid angle element  $d\Omega$  runs over the part of celestial sphere as visible from the point  $d\vec{S}$  through the lower half of the upper tube's surface.

Let's prepare to express an integral 8.1.5.3 in variables  $x, \alpha$  and  $\theta, \phi$  where  $x, \alpha$  describe surface coordinates of an element  $d\vec{S}$  on the lower tube's surface

as in Figure 8.2 and  $\theta, \phi$  are respectively zenith and azimuth angles of an element  $d\Omega$  looking from an element  $d\vec{S}$ .

Note that

$$d\Omega = \sin \theta d\theta d\phi. \quad (8.1.5.4)$$

We will introduce now help variables  $x, z, y$  and  $x', z', y'$  in such a way that  $(x, z, y)$  are cartesian coordinates of an infinitesimal vector area element  $d\vec{S}$  and  $(x', z', y')$  are cartesian coordinates of the point where an infinitesimal solid angle element  $d\Omega$  crosses the lower half of the upper tube's surface

Note that

$$d\vec{S} = d\alpha dx R \left( \frac{1}{R} [0, y, z] \right) = d\alpha dx [0, y, z]. \quad (8.1.5.5)$$

Now, we can express the integral 8.1.5.3 as dependent on  $\alpha, x, \theta, \phi$ .

$$\lambda = I_V \int_U \int_{\cap} \cos^n \theta \sin \theta (\vec{\eta} \cdot [0, y, z]) d\theta d\phi dx d\alpha. \quad (8.1.5.6)$$

Next, we prepare to integrate by substitution

$$x, \alpha, \theta, \phi \mapsto x, \alpha, x', \alpha' \quad (8.1.5.7)$$

where  $x', \alpha'$  describe surface coordinates of the point where an infinitesimal solid angle element  $d\Omega$  crosses the lower half of the upper tube's surface as in Figure 8.2.

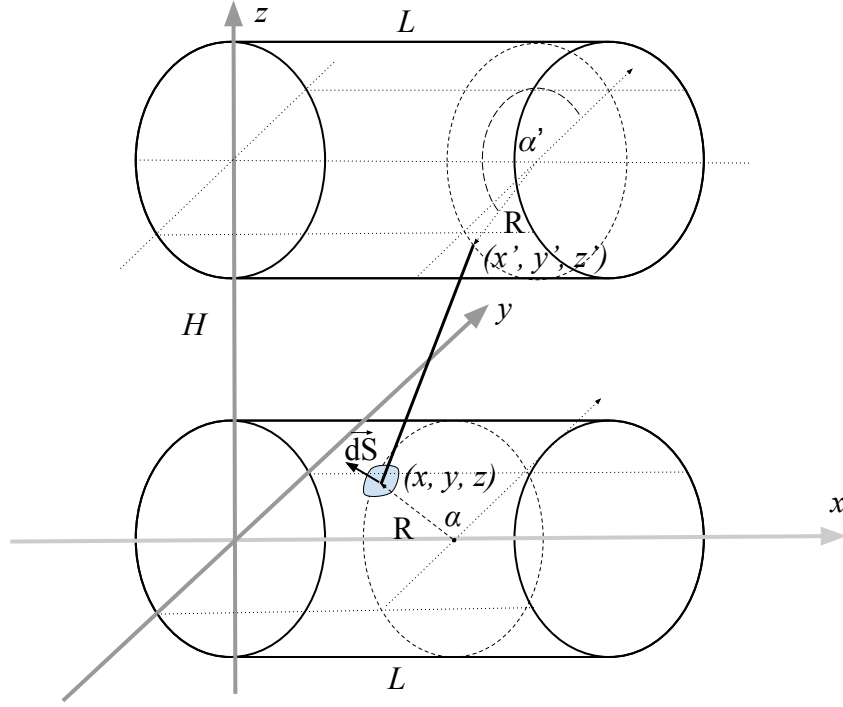


Figure 8.2: Muon flux through two GM tubes.

Let's calculate how  $\theta, \phi, \vec{\eta}$  and  $y, z$  depends on  $x, \alpha, x', \alpha'$ . Note that

$$\begin{cases} y = R \cos \alpha, \\ z = R \sin \alpha \\ y' = R \cos \alpha', \\ z' = R \sin \alpha' + H. \end{cases} \quad (8.1.5.8)$$

Now, we can calculate  $\theta, \phi, \vec{\eta}$ .

$$\begin{cases} \theta = \arccos \left( \frac{z' - z}{\sqrt{(x' - x)^2 + (y' - y)^2 + (z' - z)^2}} \right), \\ \phi = \arccos \left( \frac{(x' - x) + i(y' - y)}{\sqrt{(x' - x)^2 + (y' - y)^2 + (z' - z)^2}} \right), \\ \vec{\eta} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{(x' - x)^2 + (y' - y)^2 + (z' - z)^2}} [x' - x, y' - y, z' - z], \end{cases} \quad (8.1.5.9)$$

It is quite obvious that all above variables depend only on  $x, \alpha, x', \alpha'$ .

To do substitution of variables (8.1.5.7) in the integral 8.1.5.6 we need to

introduce Jacobian

$$J = \begin{bmatrix} \frac{\partial x}{\partial \alpha} & \frac{\partial x}{\partial \alpha} & \frac{\partial x}{\partial \alpha'} & \frac{\partial x}{\partial \alpha'} \\ \frac{\partial \theta}{\partial \alpha} & \frac{\partial \theta}{\partial \alpha} & \frac{\partial \theta}{\partial \alpha'} & \frac{\partial \theta}{\partial \alpha'} \\ \frac{\partial \phi}{\partial \alpha} & \frac{\partial \phi}{\partial \alpha} & \frac{\partial \phi}{\partial \alpha'} & \frac{\partial \phi}{\partial \alpha'} \end{bmatrix} \quad (8.1.5.10)$$

After the substitution we have

$$\lambda = I_V \int_0^L \int_0^\pi \int_0^L \int_\pi^{2\pi} \cos^n \theta \sin \theta (\vec{\eta} \cdot [0, y, z]) |\det(J)| dx d\alpha dx' d\alpha'. \quad (8.1.5.11)$$

We didn't solve the integral (8.1.5.11) manually, instead we used software Mathematica 11 [mat] to calculate  $J$  symbolically and then applied Monte Carlo method (with  $5 \cdot 10^7$  iterations) for fixed  $R, L, H$  to calculate theoretically expected muon count rate  $\lambda$  for particular experimental setups.

### 8.1.6 Experimental symultaneous discharge count rate v. theoretical muon count rate

In the table below we will compare theoretical results calculated by integral (8.1.5.11) with experimental count rate of symultaneous discharges. For used GM tubes SBM20, we assumed after official specification for active length and active radius

$$\begin{cases} L = 9.1 \pm 0.1 \text{cm}, \\ R = 1.0 \pm 0.1 \text{cm}. \end{cases} \quad (8.1.6.1)$$

GM tubes distance [cm]	predicted muon count rate [s <sup>-1</sup> ]	observed symult. discharges count rate [s <sup>-1</sup> ]	observa- tion time [s]	observed symult. discharges
$2.7 \pm 0.1$	$0.031 \pm 0.009$	$0.022 \pm 0.002$	36 627	801
$4.2 \pm 0.1$	$0.0185 \pm 0.0055$	$0.014 \pm 0.002$	43 557	611
$7.9 \pm 0.1$	$(7.9 \pm 2.1) \cdot 10^{-3}$	$(5.2 \pm 0.7) \cdot 10^{-3}$	106 971	545
$11.2 \pm 0.1$	$(4.7 \pm 1.3) \cdot 10^{-3}$	$(3.1 \pm 0.4) \cdot 10^{-3}$	141 383	437



# Chapter 9

## Examples

### 9.1 Quantum Probability

**Example 9.1.0.1.** *In the lowest energy state  $\psi_0$  of harmonic oscillator, there exists a joint distribution for  $P_{\psi_0}$  (momentum) and  $Q_{\psi_0}$  (position) random variables ([Sup61]).*





# Chapter 10

## Mathematics

### 10.1 Vector Analysis

**Definition 10.1.0.1.** (*Cross product*) Let  $x, y \in \mathbb{R}^3$  such that

$$x = (x_1, x_2, x_3) \text{ and } y = (y_1, y_2, y_3). \quad (10.1.0.1)$$

We define

$$x \times y = (x_2y_3 - x_3y_2, x_3y_1 - x_1y_3, x_1y_2 - x_2y_1). \quad (10.1.0.2)$$

**Theorem 10.1.0.2.** Let  $a, b, c \in \mathbb{R}^3$ . The following conditions holds:

1.  $a \times a = 0$
2.  $a \times b = -b \times a$ .
3.  $(ta) \times b = t(a \times b)$  for any  $t \in \mathbb{R}$ .
4.  $(a + b) \times c = a \times c + b \times c$ .
5.  $a \times (b \times c) + b \times (c \times a) + c \times (a \times b) = 0$ .

By  $\cdot$  we will denote inner product.

**Theorem 10.1.0.3.** Let  $a, b, c \in \mathbb{R}^3$ . The following conditions holds:

1.  $a \cdot (a \times b) = 0$ .
2.  $a \cdot (b \times c) = b \cdot (c \times a) = c \cdot (a \times b)$ .
3.  $\|a \times b\|^2 + (a \cdot b)^2 = \|a\|^2 \|b\|^2$ .

### 10.1.1 Vector Spaces

In this chapter when ranges of summation are evident, we will also use Einstein summation convention. We will also use symbol  $\delta$  for Kronecker delta.

$$\delta_{\mu\nu} = \delta_\nu^\mu = \delta^{\mu\nu} = \begin{cases} 1 & \text{for } \mu = \nu, \\ 0 & \text{for } \mu \neq \nu. \end{cases} \quad (10.1.1.1)$$

**Definition 10.1.1.1.** Let  $X$  be a vector space over field  $\mathbb{K}$ . By  $X^*$  we will denote a space of all linear functions  $X \rightarrow \mathbb{K}$ .

If  $u_1, \dots, u_k$  is a set of vectors in vector space  $X$ , for any  $y \in X^*$  we might write a row vector  $[y(u_1), \dots, y(u_k)]$ .

**Lemma 10.1.1.2.** Let  $X$  be a vector space. For any sequence of vectors  $u_1, \dots, u_k \in X$ , for any sequence of functionals  $y^1, \dots, y^k \in X^*$  and for any sequence of scalars  $\lambda_1, \dots, \lambda_k \in \mathbb{K}$ , we have

$$\lambda_\mu y^\mu = 0 \quad (10.1.1.2)$$

if and only if

$$\lambda_\mu [y^\mu(u_1), \dots, y^\mu(u_k)] = 0. \quad (10.1.1.3)$$

*Proof.* Implication from (10.1.1.2) to (10.1.1.3). Now, assume that (10.1.1.3) holds. Take any  $x \in X$ , assume that  $x = x^\nu u_\nu$ .

$$\lambda_\mu y^\mu(x) = \lambda_\mu y^\mu(x^\nu u_\nu) = \lambda_\mu x^\nu y^\mu(u_\nu) = x^\nu \lambda_\mu y^\mu(u_\nu) = 0. \quad (10.1.1.4)$$

□

As a simple conclusion, we will formulate the following.

**Theorem 10.1.1.3.** Let  $X$  be a vector space and let  $u_1, \dots, u_n$  be a linear basis. Then there exist a basis of  $X^*$   $e^1, \dots, e^n$  such that

$$e^\mu(u_\nu) = \begin{cases} 1 & \text{for } \mu = \nu, \\ 0 & \text{for } \mu \neq \nu. \end{cases} \quad (10.1.1.5)$$

*Proof.* We can easily define functionals by  $e^\mu(x^\nu u_\nu) := x^\mu$ . Linearity is easy to show. By Lemma 10.1.1.2  $u^1, \dots, u^n$  are linearly independent. Now we will show that all  $y \in X^*$  can be represented linearly by  $e^1, \dots, e^n$ . Take any  $x = x^\nu u_\nu$  and calculate

$$y(x) = y(x^\nu u_\nu) = x^\nu y(u_\nu) = y(u_\nu) e^\nu(x) = (y(u_\nu) e^\nu)(x). \quad (10.1.1.6)$$

□

**Corollary 10.1.1.4.** *Let  $X$  be a vector space with  $\dim X < \infty$ , then  $\dim X = \dim X^*$ .*

**Definition 10.1.1.5.** *Let  $X$  be a vector space and  $u_1, \dots, u_n$  be an linear basis. We define a dual basis in  $X^*$  as  $u^1, \dots, u^n$  where*

$$u^\mu(u_\nu) = \delta_\nu^\mu. \quad (10.1.1.7)$$

The above tells us that for any chosen basis of  $X$ , for functionals  $y \in X^*$  there exists a natural parametrisation

$$y \mapsto [y(u_1), \dots, y(u_n)] \in \mathbb{R}^n. \quad (10.1.1.8)$$

Note that this parametrisation doesn't establish identity between elements of  $X$  and  $X^*$ . For this we will need a metric tensor.

If not stated other wise we will use the following convention. If  $\{\hat{u}_\mu\}$  is also a basis of a vector space  $X$ , then we will denote transformation matrices using a capital letter - in this case  $U$  like this

$$\hat{u}_\mu = U_\mu^\nu u_\nu \quad (10.1.1.9)$$

and

$$u_\mu = U_\mu^{\hat{\nu}} \hat{u}_{\hat{\nu}}. \quad (10.1.1.10)$$

Where  $\hat{U}$  and  $U$  are treated as a different variable which denote matrices.

**Theorem 10.1.1.6.** *Let  $X$  be a real vector space where  $\dim X = n$  and let  $u_1, \dots, u_n$  and  $\hat{u}_1, \dots, \hat{u}_n$  be two bases of  $X$ , then*

$$\hat{u}^\mu = U_\nu^{\hat{\mu}} u^\nu \quad (10.1.1.11)$$

and

$$u^\mu = U_\nu^\mu \hat{u}^\nu \quad (10.1.1.12)$$

*Proof.* Note that  $U_\nu^{\hat{\mu}} U_\sigma^\nu = \delta_\sigma^{\hat{\mu}}$ . Assume that

$$\hat{u}^\mu = X_\nu^\mu u^\nu. \quad (10.1.1.13)$$

Then

$$\delta_\sigma^\mu = X_\nu^\mu u^\nu(\hat{u}_\sigma) = X_\nu^\mu u^\nu(U_\sigma^\rho \hat{u}_\rho) = X_\nu^\mu U_\sigma^\rho \delta_\rho^\nu = X_\nu^\mu U_\sigma^\nu.$$

Thus  $X_\nu^\mu = U_\nu^{\hat{\mu}}$ . We prove (10.1.1.12) analogously.  $\square$

### 10.1.2 Metric Tensor

It is called otherwise inner product.

**Definition 10.1.2.1.** Let  $X$  be a real vector space. A functional  $g : X^2 \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  is called a metric tensor iff

1.  $\forall_{x,y \in X} g(x, y) = g(y, x),$
2.  $\forall_{x,y,z \in X} \forall_{a,b \in K} g(z, ax + by) = ag(z, x) + bg(z, y),$
3.  $\forall_{x \neq 0} \exists_y g(x, y) \neq 0.$

The property in the point 3 is called *nondegeneracy* of metric tensor. Throughout this chapter if not stated otherwise  $g$  will denote a metric tensor.

**Lemma 10.1.2.2.** Let  $X$  be a real vector space with a metric tensor  $g$ . If  $S$  is a subspace of  $X$  such that  $g(x, x) = 0$  for all  $x \in S$ , then  $g(x, y) = 0$  for all  $x, y \in S$ .

*Proof.* Take any  $x, y \in S$

$$0 = g(x + y, x + y) = g(x, x) + 2g(x, y) + g(y, y) = 2g(x, y). \quad (10.1.2.1)$$

□

**Lemma 10.1.2.3.** Let  $X$  be a real vector space with a metric tensor  $g$ . If  $S$  is a proper subspace of  $X$ , then there exists  $u \notin S$  such that  $g(u, u) \neq 0$ .

*Proof.* Assume by contradiction that  $g(v, v) = 0$  for all  $v \notin S$ . Let  $V$  be a vector subspace such that  $X = S + V$  and  $S \cap V = \{0\}$ . Then we have  $g(v, v) = 0$  for all  $v \in V$  and by Lemma 10.1.2.2, we have  $g(p, q) = 0$  for all  $p, q \in V$ . Take a non-zero vector  $x \in V$ . By definition of metric tensor (Definition 10.1.2.1), we have  $y \in X$  such that  $g(x, y) \neq 0$ . But  $y = s + v$  where  $s \in S$  and  $v \in V$ .

$$g(x, y) = g(x, s) + g(x, v) = g(x, s). \quad (10.1.2.2)$$

Thus  $g(x, s) \neq 0$ . Let  $\lambda$  be an arbitrary scalar. Consider

$$g(x + \lambda s, x + \lambda s) = 2\lambda g(x, s) + \lambda^2 g(s, s). \quad (10.1.2.3)$$

Since  $g(x, s) \neq 0$ , we can choose such a  $\lambda$  that  $g(x + \lambda s, x + \lambda s) \neq 0$ . Let  $u = x + \lambda s$ . We have  $g(u, u) \neq 0$  and since  $x \notin S$ ,  $u \notin S$ . □

**Corollary 10.1.2.4.** *Let  $X$  be a real vector space with a metric tensor  $g$  where  $\dim X < +\infty$ . There exists a basis  $u_1, \dots, u_n$  such that  $g(u_i, u_i) \neq 0$  for any  $i = 1, \dots, k$ .*

**Definition 10.1.2.5.** *Let  $X$  be a real vector space and  $g$  be a metric tensor. We say that vectors  $u_1, \dots, u_k$  are orthogonal with respect to  $g$  iff*

$$g(u_i, u_i) \neq 0 \text{ for } i = 1, \dots, k, \quad (10.1.2.4)$$

and

$$g(u_i, u_j) = 0 \text{ for } i \neq j. \quad (10.1.2.5)$$

**Theorem 10.1.2.6.** *Let  $X$  be a real vector space with a metric tensor  $g$ . If vectors  $u_1, \dots, u_k$  are orthogonal with respect to  $g$ , then vectors  $u_1, \dots, u_k$  are linearly independent.*

*Proof.* We will prove this by induction. For  $k = 1$ , thesis is trivially true. By induction, assume that thesis holds for  $k - 1$ . Thus vectors  $u_1, \dots, u_{k-1}$  are linearly independent. Assume to the contrary that vectors  $u_1, \dots, u_{k-1}, u_k$  are linearly dependent. Therefore we have parameters for which  $u_k = \sum_{i=1}^{k-1} \lambda_i u_i$ . But then

$$g(u_k, u_k) = g(u_k, \sum_{i=1}^{k-1} \lambda_i u_i) = \sum_{i=1}^{k-1} g(u_k, u_i) \lambda_i = 0. \quad (10.1.2.6)$$

Hence, contradiction with  $g(u_k, u_k) \neq 0$ , which proves that  $u_1, \dots, u_{k-1}, u_k$  are linearly independent which completes proof by induction.  $\square$

**Lemma 10.1.2.7.** *Let  $X$  be a real vector space with  $\dim X = n$ . If  $u_1, \dots, u_k$  are orthogonal and  $k < n$  then there exists such  $u \in X$  that  $u_1, \dots, u_k, u$  are orthogonal.*

*Proof.* Let  $S = \text{span}\{u_1, \dots, u_k\}$ . Choose  $v_1, \dots, v_{n-k} \in X$  such that  $u_1, \dots, u_k, v_1, \dots, v_{n-k}$  form a linear basis of  $X$ . Let's define

$$\hat{v}_j = v_j - \sum_{i=1}^k \frac{g(u_i, v_j)}{g(u_i, u_i)} u_i \quad (10.1.2.7)$$

for  $j = 1, \dots, n - k$ . Note that

$$g(u_i, \hat{v}_j) = g(u_i, v_j) - \frac{g(u_i, v_j)}{g(u_i, u_i)} g(u_i, u_i) = 0 \quad (10.1.2.8)$$

for  $i = 1, \dots, k$  and  $j = 1, \dots, n - k$ . Note that  $u_1, \dots, u_k, \hat{v}_1, \dots, \hat{v}_{n-k}$  is an independent linear basis of  $X$ . Let  $V = \text{span}\{\hat{v}_1, \dots, \hat{v}_{n-k}\}$ . It is enough to

show that we have a  $v \in V$  such that  $g(v, v) \neq 0$ . Assume to the contrary that for any  $v \in V$ , we have  $g(v, v) = 0$ . From Lemma 10.1.2.2, we have  $g(v_0, v) = 0$  for all  $v_0, v \in V$ . Take any  $z \in X$ , since  $S + V = X$ , we have  $z = v + s$  where  $v \in V$  and  $s \in S$ . Let's calculate

$$g(v_0, z) = g(v_0, v + s) = g(v_0, v) + g(v_0, s) = g(v_0, s) = 0. \quad (10.1.2.9)$$

Where the last equality is because of (10.1.2.8). But this is in contradiction with nondegeneracy of  $g$ .  $\square$

As a conclusion we can formulate the following:

**Theorem 10.1.2.8.** *Let  $X$  be a real vector space with  $\dim X = n$ . There exists an orthonormal linear basis of  $X$ .*

**Definition 10.1.2.9.** *Let  $X$  be a real vector space with a tensor metric  $g$ . We say that vectors  $e_1, \dots, e_k$  are orthonormal with respect to  $g$  iff*

$$g(e_i, e_i) = \pm 1 \text{ for } i = 1, \dots, k, \quad (10.1.2.10)$$

and

$$g(e_i, e_j) = 0 \text{ for } i \neq j. \quad (10.1.2.11)$$

If we have orthogonal vectors  $u_1, \dots, u_k$ , we can transform them easily into orthonormal by

$$e_i = |g(u_i, u_i)|^{-\frac{1}{2}} u_i. \quad (10.1.2.12)$$

**Corollary 10.1.2.10.** *Let  $X$  be a real vector space with  $\dim X = n$ . There exists an orthonormal linear basis of  $X$ .*

**Theorem 10.1.2.11.** *Let  $X$  be a real vector space with  $\dim X = n$  and let  $g$  be a metric tensor. If  $e_1, \dots, e_n$  and  $f_1, \dots, f_n$  are orthonormal bases with respect to tensor  $g$  then*

$$|\{i : g(e_i, e_i) = 1\}| = |\{i : g(f_i, f_i) = 1\}|. \quad (10.1.2.13)$$

*Proof.* Assume to the contrary that thesis doesn't hold. Let  $g(e_i, e_i) = 1$  for  $i = 1, \dots, k_e$  and  $g(e_i, e_i) = -1$  for  $i = k_e + 1, \dots, n$  and  $g(f_i, f_i) = 1$  for  $i = 1, \dots, k_f$  and  $g(f_i, f_i) = -1$  for  $i = k_f + 1, \dots, n$ . By symmetry assume that  $k_f < k_e$ .

Assume that  $A_i^j$  is a transition matrix and  $e_i = \sum_{j=1}^n A_i^j f_j$ . Let  $V^+ = \text{span}\{e_1, \dots, e_{k_e}\}$ . Take any  $v = \lambda^1 e_1 + \dots + \lambda^{k_e} e_{k_e} \in V^+$ . Note that

$$v = \sum_{i=1}^{k_e} \sum_{j=1}^n \lambda^i A_i^j f_j = \sum_{j=1}^n \left( \sum_{i=1}^{k_e} \lambda^i A_i^j \right) f_j. \quad (10.1.2.14)$$

Let's consider a linear mapping  $L$

$$\mathbb{R}^{k_e} \ni (\lambda^1, \dots, \lambda^{k_e}) \mapsto \left( \sum_{i=1}^{k_e} \lambda^i A_i^1, \dots, \sum_{i=1}^{k_e} \lambda^i A_i^{k_f} \right) \in \mathbb{R}^{k_f}. \quad (10.1.2.15)$$

Since  $\dim(\ker L) + \dim(\operatorname{im} L) = k_e$ , we have  $k_e - k_f \leq \dim(\ker L)$ . Thus we have a non-zero

$$v_0 = \lambda_0^1 e_1 + \dots + \lambda_0^{k_e} e_{k_e} \in V^+ \quad (10.1.2.16)$$

such that  $(\sum_{i=1}^{k_e} \lambda_0^i A_i^1, \dots, \sum_{i=1}^{k_e} \lambda_0^i A_i^{k_f}) = 0$ . Therefore, by (10.1.2.14) we have

$$v_0 = \left( \sum_{i=1}^{k_e} \lambda_0^i A_i^{k_f+1} \right) f_{k_f+1} + \dots + \left( \sum_{i=1}^{k_e} \lambda_0^i A_i^n \right) f_n. \quad (10.1.2.17)$$

By (10.1.2.16), we have

$$g(v_0, v_0) = \sum_{i=1}^{k_e} (\lambda_0^i)^2 > 0. \quad (10.1.2.18)$$

But by (10.1.2.17), we have

$$g(v_0, v_0) = \sum_{j=k_f+1}^n \left( \sum_{i=1}^{k_e} \lambda_0^i A_i^j \right)^2 (-1) < 0, \quad (10.1.2.19)$$

which concludes proof by contradiction.  $\square$

**Lemma 10.1.2.12.** *Let  $X$  be a real vector space and  $e_1, \dots, e_n$  is an orthonormal basis. Then for any  $x$  such that  $g(x, e_i) = 0$  for all  $i = 1, \dots, n$ , we have  $x = 0$ .*

*Proof.* It follows from non-degeneracy of  $g$ .  $\square$

**Corollary 10.1.2.13.** *Let  $X$  be a real vector space and  $e_1, \dots, e_n$  is an orthonormal basis. Then for any  $x, y$  such that  $g(x, e_i) = g(y, e_i)$  for all  $i = 1, \dots, n$ , we have  $x = y$ .*

**Theorem 10.1.2.14.** *Let  $X$  be a real vector space. If  $e_1, \dots, e_n$  is an orthonormal basis, then for any  $x \in X$ , we have*

$$x = \sum_{i=1}^n \frac{g(x, e_i)}{g(e_i, e_i)} e_i. \quad (10.1.2.20)$$

*Proof.* Note that for all  $k = 1, \dots, n$

$$g\left(\sum_{i=1}^n \frac{g(x, e_i)}{g(e_i, e_i)} e_i, e_k\right) = g(x, e_k). \quad (10.1.2.21)$$

Thus by Lemma 10.1.2.13 we have thesis.  $\square$

**Corollary 10.1.2.15.** *Let  $X$  be a real vector space. If  $e_1, \dots, e_n$  is an orthonormal basis, then for any  $x, y \in X$*

$$g(x, y) = \sum_{i=1}^n g(x, e_i)g(y, e_i)g(e_i, e_i). \quad (10.1.2.22)$$

From now on when it is obvious we will use Einstein summation convention.

**Theorem 10.1.2.16.** *Let  $X$  be a real vector space and  $u_1, \dots, u_n$  is any linear basis of  $X$ . If  $x = x^\mu u_\mu$  and  $y = y^\mu u_\mu$ , then*

$$g(x, y) = g_{\mu\nu} x^\mu y^\nu, \quad (10.1.2.23)$$

where

$$g_{\mu\nu} = g(u_\mu, u_\nu). \quad (10.1.2.24)$$

*Proof.* Follows directly from bilinearity of  $g$ .  $\square$

We will call  $g_{\mu\nu}$  a representation of  $g$  in basis  $\{u_\mu\}$ . It also follows that if  $g_{\mu\nu}$  is a representation of  $g$  in orthonormal basis  $g_{\mu\nu} = 0$  for  $\mu \neq \nu$  and  $g_{\mu\mu} = \pm 1$ .

In this convention if  $g_{\mu\nu}$  is a representation of a metric tensor  $g$  in basis  $u_\mu$ , then by  $\hat{g}_{\mu\nu}$  we will denote a representation of a metric tensor  $g$  in basis  $\{\hat{u}_\mu\}$  (i.e.  $\hat{g}_{\mu\nu} = g(\hat{u}_\mu, \hat{u}_\nu)$ ).

**Theorem 10.1.2.17.** *Let  $X$  be a real vector space where  $\dim X = n$  with a metric tensor  $g$ . If  $\{u_\mu\}$  and  $\{\hat{u}_\mu\}$  are two linear bases of  $X$ , then*

$$\hat{g}_{\mu\nu} = g_{\rho\sigma} U_\mu^\rho U_\nu^\sigma. \quad (10.1.2.25)$$

*Proof.*

$$g(\hat{u}_\mu, \hat{u}_\nu) = g(U_\mu^\rho u_\rho, U_\nu^\sigma u_\sigma) = g(u_\rho, u_\sigma) U_\mu^\rho U_\nu^\sigma. \quad (10.1.2.26)$$

$\square$

As a particular case of the above theorem we will formulate the following:



**Theorem 10.1.2.18.** *Let  $X$  be a real vector space with a metric tensor  $g$  and let  $e_1, \dots, e_n$  be an orthonormal basis of  $X$  and let  $g_{\mu\nu} = g(e_\mu, e_\nu)$ . If  $f_1, \dots, f_n$  is an orthonormal basis of  $X$  and*

$$F_\nu^\mu = \frac{g(f_\nu, e_\mu)}{g(e_\mu, e_\mu)}, \quad (10.1.2.27)$$

(i.e.  $f_\mu = F_\nu^\mu e^\nu$ ), then

$$g_{\mu\nu} F_\sigma^\mu F_\rho^\nu = \eta_{\sigma\rho}, \quad (10.1.2.28)$$

where  $\eta_{\sigma\rho} = g(f_\sigma, f_\rho)$ .

Next we will show how metric tensor  $g$  induces a natural linear isomorphism between  $X$  and  $X^*$ .

**Theorem 10.1.2.19.** *Let  $X$  be a real vector space where  $\dim X < +\infty$  with a tensor metric  $g$ . If  $L : X \rightarrow X^*$  is defined as*

$$(Ly)(x) = g(y, x) \text{ for all } x \in X. \quad (10.1.2.29)$$

then  $L$  is a linear isomorphism  $L : X \xrightarrow[\text{onto}]{1-1} X^*$ . Moreover

$$Ly = g(y, u_\mu) u^\mu \quad (10.1.2.30)$$

where  $u_1, \dots, u_n$  is any basis of  $X$ .

*Proof.* Since  $\dim X = \dim X^*$ , to show that  $L$  is an isomorphism it is enough to show that  $\ker L = \{0\}$ . But this follows from nondegeneracy of  $g$ . Let  $u_1, \dots, u_n$  be any basis of  $X$ . Take any  $y \in X$  and any  $x \in X$ . Assume that  $x = x^\mu u_\mu$ . Let's calculate

$$\begin{aligned} (Ly)(x) &= g(y, x) = g(y, x^\mu u_\mu) = x^\mu g(y, u_\mu) = x^\nu \delta_\nu^\mu g(y, u_\mu) \\ &= x^\nu u^\mu(u_\nu) g(y, u_\mu) = g(y, u_\mu) u^\mu(x^\nu u_\nu) = g(y, u_\mu) u^\mu(x). \end{aligned}$$

□

**Lemma 10.1.2.20.** *Let  $X$  be a real vector space where  $\dim X < +\infty$  with a tensor metric  $g$  and let  $u_1, \dots, u_n$  be a basis of  $X$ . If  $g_{\mu\nu} = g(u_\mu, u_\nu)$  then  $g_{\mu\nu}$  understood as matrix is invertible.*

*Proof.* Because  $L$  from Theorem 10.1.2.19 is linear isomorphism, for any  $\sigma = 1, \dots, n$  we have such  $x^{\sigma\nu}$  that

$$u^\sigma = g(x^{\sigma\nu}u_\nu, u_\mu)u^\mu. \quad (10.1.2.31)$$

Thus

$$\delta_\mu^\sigma = g(x^{\sigma\nu}u_\nu, u_\mu) = x^{\sigma\nu}g(u_\nu, u_\mu) = x^{\sigma\nu}g(u_\nu, u_\mu) = x^{\sigma\nu}g_{\mu\nu}. \quad (10.1.2.32)$$

Hence thesis.  $\square$

Note that for a real vector space  $X$  where  $\dim X < \infty$  with metric tensor  $g$ ,  $g$  induces an isometric metric tensor  $g^*$  on  $X^*$  in a following way:

$$g^*(p, q) = g(L^{-1}p, L^{-1}q) \text{ for } p, q \in X^*. \quad (10.1.2.33)$$

where  $L$  is from Theorem 10.1.2.19.

**Theorem 10.1.2.21.** *Let  $X$  be a real vector space where  $\dim X < +\infty$  with a tensor metric  $g$  and let  $u_1, \dots, u_n$  be a basis of  $X$  and  $u^1, \dots, u^n$  be dual basis of  $X^*$ . If  $g_{\mu\nu} = g(u_\mu, u_\nu)$  and  $g^{\mu\nu} = g^*(u^\mu, u^\nu)$  then*

$$g_{\rho\nu}g^{\mu\nu} = \delta_\rho^\mu. \quad (10.1.2.34)$$

*Proof.* For  $u_\sigma$  and  $u_\rho$  we have

$$g^*(Lu_\sigma, Lu_\rho) = g(u_\sigma, u_\rho). \quad (10.1.2.35)$$

Thus

$$g^*(g(u_\sigma, u_\mu)u^\mu, g(u_\rho, u_\nu)u^\nu) = g_{\sigma\rho}. \quad (10.1.2.36)$$

Hence

$$g_{\sigma\mu}g_{\rho\nu}g^{\mu\nu} = g_{\sigma\rho} = g_{\sigma\mu}\delta_\rho^\mu. \quad (10.1.2.37)$$

But by Lemma 10.1.2.20, we have

$$g_{\rho\nu}g^{\mu\nu} = \delta_\rho^\mu. \quad (10.1.2.38)$$

$\square$

This establishes an interesting fact that if  $g_{\mu\nu}$  is representation of  $g$  in certain basis, then its inverse denoted as  $g^{\mu\nu}$  is representation of  $g^*$  in a dual basis.

Assume we talk about real vector space  $X$  with  $\dim X < +\infty$  with a metric tensor  $g$ . We know already that metric tensor  $g$  induces metric tensor  $g^*$  on  $X^*$  through establishing a natural linear isomorphism  $L$  between  $X$

and  $X^*$ . But then  $g^*$  establishes a natural linear isomorphism  $L^*$  between  $X^*$  and  $X^{**}$ . Because  $X^{**}$  has a natural isomorphism with  $X$  defined by  $x(y) := y(x)$ ,  $L^*$  will really establish a linear isomorphism between  $X^*$  and  $X$ . In that sense we will consider it as  $L^* : X^* \rightarrow X$  such that for any  $y, z \in X^*$

$$(L^*y)(z) = z(L^*y) = g^*(y, z). \quad (10.1.2.39)$$

We will show now that  $L^* = L^{-1}$ , which means that this is exactly the same isomorphism as  $L$ , thus  $g^{**} = g$ . First we will show that for a chosen basis  $u_1, \dots, u_n$

$$L^*y = g^*(y, u^\mu)u_\mu \text{ for any } y \in X^*. \quad (10.1.2.40)$$

Let's calculate

$$\begin{aligned} (L^*y)(z) &= g^*(y, z) = g^*(y, z_\mu u^\mu) \\ &= g^*(y, u^\mu)z(u_\mu) = z(L^*y) = z(g^*(y, u^\mu)u_\mu). \end{aligned} \quad (10.1.2.41)$$

To show that  $L^{-1} = L^*$  it is enough to show that  $L^*Lu_\sigma = u_\sigma$ .

$$\begin{aligned} L^*Lu_\sigma &= g^*(g(u_\sigma, u_\nu)u^\nu, u^\mu)u_\mu = g(u_\sigma, u_\nu)g^*(u^\nu, u^\mu)u_\mu \\ &= g_{\sigma\nu}g^{\nu\mu}u_\mu = \delta_\sigma^\mu u_\mu = u_\sigma. \end{aligned}$$

It is trivial now to show that  $g^{**} = g$ .

Take any  $x, y \in X$

$$g^{**}(x, y) = g^*((L^*)^{-1}x, (L^*)^{-1}x) = g^*(Lx, Ly) = g(x, y). \quad (10.1.2.42)$$

All the above can be summarised shortly that metric tensor  $g$  establishes an identity between elements of  $X$  and  $X^*$  by transformation  $x \mapsto g(x, \cdot)$ . By doing so we obtain a metric tensor  $g^*$  on  $X^*$  which assumes the same values as metric tensor  $g$  on corresponding elements of  $X$ . Next when you repeat this operation for  $g^*$  with respect to  $X^*$  and  $X^{**} = X$ , we go back to  $X$  and to the same metric tensor  $g$  (i.e.  $g^{**} = g$ ).

### 10.1.3 Contravariant and covariant coordinates

Let  $X$  be a vector space with a metric tensor  $g$  where  $\dim X = n < +\infty$ . Let  $u_1, \dots, u_n$  be a basis of  $X$  and let  $u^1, \dots, u^n$  be a dual basis of  $X^*$ .

When we consider any vector  $x \in X$  we might write this as

$$x = x^\mu u_\mu. \quad (10.1.3.1)$$

We call  $x^1, \dots, x^n$  contravariant coordinates of  $x$ . Recall that the metric tensor  $g$  establishes a linear isomorphism between  $X$  and  $X^*$ . In this isomorphism a functional  $x^*(z) = g(x, z)$  corresponds to  $x$ . We might write  $x^*$  as

$$x^* = x_\mu u^\mu. \quad (10.1.3.2)$$

We call  $x_1, \dots, x_n$  covariant coordinates of  $x$  (sic: we describe  $x$  in 2 ways because under the isomorphism we treat  $x$  and  $x^*$  as if there were the same object).

Theorem 10.1.2.19 establishes a relation between  $x^\mu$  and  $x_\mu$ . Indeed

$$\begin{aligned} x_\mu u^\mu &= x^* = Lx = g(x, u_\mu) u^\mu = g(x^\nu u_\nu, u_\mu) u^\mu \\ &= x^\nu g(u_\nu, u_\mu) u^\mu = x^\nu g_{\nu\mu} u^\mu. \end{aligned}$$

Thus

$$\boxed{x_\mu = g_{\nu\mu} x^\nu} \quad (10.1.3.3)$$

The operation above is so called "index lowering". Because situation is symmetrical if we talk about linear isomorphism from  $X^*$  to  $X$ , we have:

$$\boxed{x^\mu = g^{\nu\mu} x_\nu} \quad (10.1.3.4)$$

The operation above is so called "index raising".

Let's now investigate how  $x^\mu$  and  $x_\mu$  transform under change of coordinates. Assume that we have other basis of  $X$  -  $\hat{u}_1, \dots, \hat{u}_n$  and  $\hat{u}^1, \dots, \hat{u}^n$  is a dual basis in  $X^*$ .

Recall that by convention

$$\hat{u}_\mu = U_{\hat{\mu}}^\nu u_\nu, \quad (10.1.3.5)$$

and

$$u_\mu = U_{\hat{\mu}}^\nu \hat{u}_\nu. \quad (10.1.3.6)$$

By Theorem 10.1.1.6 we have

$$\hat{u}^\mu = U_\nu^\mu u^\nu, \quad (10.1.3.7)$$

and

$$u^\mu = U_\nu^\mu \hat{u}^\nu. \quad (10.1.3.8)$$

Note the following

$$\hat{x}^\nu \hat{u}_\nu = x^\mu u_\mu = x^\mu U_\mu^\nu \hat{u}_\nu. \quad (10.1.3.9)$$

Thus

$$\boxed{\hat{x}^\nu = U_\mu^\nu x^\mu} \quad (10.1.3.10)$$

Note that the coordinates  $x^\mu$  transform with the inverse of transformation matrix for vectors of basis - thus the name "contravariant".

On the other hand note following

$$\hat{x}_\mu \hat{u}^\mu = x_\nu u^\nu = x_\nu U_\nu^\mu \hat{u}^\mu. \quad (10.1.3.11)$$

Thus

$$\boxed{\hat{x}_\mu = U_\nu^\mu x_\nu} \quad (10.1.3.12)$$

Note that the coordinates  $x_\mu$  transform with the same transformation matrix as vectors of basis - thus the name "covariant".

## 10.2 Mathematical Analysis

**Definition 10.2.0.1.** Let  $U \subset \mathbb{R}^n$ . By  $C^n(U, \mathbb{R})$  we denote a set of all functions  $f : U \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  for which a mapping

$$U \ni (x^1, \dots, x^n) \rightarrow \frac{\partial^n f}{\partial x^{k_1} \dots \partial x^{k_m}}(x^1, \dots, x^n) \quad (10.2.0.1)$$

is continuous for any ordered  $(k_1, \dots, k_m)$  where  $k_i \in \{1, \dots, n\}$  and  $m \leq n$ .

The above definition is equivalent to the one you can find in [War83].

**Theorem 10.2.0.2.** Let  $(X, d)$  be a metric space, let  $(Y, \rho)$  be complete metric space. If  $BC(X, Y)$  is a space of all continuous and bounded functions from  $X$  to  $Y$  with a metric  $\delta(f, g) = \sup_{x \in X} \rho(f(x), g(x))$ , then  $BC(X, Y)$  is a complete metric space.

*Proof.* You may find a proof in [Mau76] (V.4). □

**Definition 10.2.0.3.** Let  $(X, d), (Y, \rho)$  be metric spaces. We say that  $f_n : X \rightarrow Y$  converges uniformly to  $f_0 : X \rightarrow Y$ , if and only if

$$\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \sup_{x \in X} \rho(f_n(x), f_0(x)) = 0. \quad (10.2.0.2)$$

We will also denote uniform convergence as  $f_n \rightrightarrows f_0$ .

**Definition 10.2.0.4.** Let  $(X, d), (Y, \rho)$  be metric spaces. We say that  $f_n : X \rightarrow Y$  converges almost uniformly to  $f_0 : X \rightarrow Y$ , if and only if  $f|_K \rightrightarrows f_0|_K$  for each compact  $K \subset X$ .

**Theorem 10.2.0.5.** Let  $U$  be an open and connected subset of  $\mathbb{R}$ . If  $g_n \in C^1(U)$ ,  $\frac{dg_n}{dt} \rightarrow g$  almost uniformly and there exists at least one  $x_0 \in U$  such that  $g_n(x_0)$  converges to a certain real value, then  $g_n \rightarrow g_0$  almost uniformly, where  $\frac{dg_0}{dt} = g$ .

*Proof.* You will find a proof in [Mau76] (V.4). □

**Theorem 10.2.0.6.** Let  $f_n : [a, b] \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  be a sequence of differentiable functions. If  $\frac{df_n}{dt} \rightrightarrows g$  and there exists  $t_0 \in [a, b]$  such that  $\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} f_n(t_0) \in \mathbb{R}$ , then  $f_n \rightrightarrows f$  and  $\frac{df}{dt} = g$ .

*Proof.* You may find a proof in [Rud76] (Uniform Convergence and Differentiation). □

**Theorem 10.2.0.7. (Lebesgue's Dominated Convergence Theorem)** Let  $X$  be a measurable space with a positive measure  $\mu$ . Let  $f_n$  be a sequence of a complex measurable functions,

$$f(x) = \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} f_n(x)$$

for each  $x \in X$  and  $|f_n| \leq g$  where  $g \in L^1(X)$ , then  $f \in L^1(X)$  and

$$\int_X f(x) \mu(dx) = \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \int_X f_n \mu(dx). \quad (10.2.0.3)$$

*Proof.* You may find a proof in [Rud87] (Abstract Integration). □

**Theorem 10.2.0.8.** Let  $X$  be a measurable space with a positive measure  $\mu$ ,  $U$  be an open subset of  $\mathbb{R}$  and let  $f : U \times X \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ . If

1. the mapping  $X \ni x \rightarrow f(t, x)$  is a  $L^1(X)$  function for each  $t \in U$ ,
2. the mapping  $U \ni t \rightarrow \frac{\partial f}{\partial t}(t, x)$  is continuous for each  $x \in X$ ,
3.  $\left| \frac{\partial f}{\partial t}(t, x) \right| \leq g(x)$  for each  $x \in X$ , where  $g \in L^1(X)$ ,

then the mapping  $X \ni x \rightarrow \frac{\partial f}{\partial t}(t, x)$  is a  $L^1(X)$  function for each  $t \in U$  and

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial t} \int_X f(t, x) \mu(dx) = \int_X \frac{\partial f}{\partial t}(t, x) \mu(dx) \quad (10.2.0.4)$$

for each  $t \in U$ .

*Proof.* Take any  $t_0 \in U$ . Let  $U \supset K(t_0, \varepsilon) \ni \Delta t \rightarrow 0$ . Since the mapping  $U \ni t \rightarrow \frac{\partial f}{\partial t}(t, x)$  is differentiable on  $U$  (thus on  $(t_0 - \Delta t, t_0 + \Delta t)$ ) for each  $x \in X$ , by Lagrange's Theorem we have

$$\frac{f(t_0 + \Delta t, x) - f(t_0, x)}{\Delta t} = \frac{\partial f}{\partial t}(t(t_0, \Delta t, x), x) \quad (10.2.0.5)$$

where  $|t_0 - t(t_0, \Delta t, x)| < \Delta t$  for each  $x \in X$ . Note that since the mapping  $U \ni t \rightarrow \frac{\partial f}{\partial t}(t, x)$  is continuous and  $t(t_0, \Delta t, x) \rightarrow t_0$  for each  $x \in X$ , we have

$$\frac{f(t_0 + \Delta t, x) - f(t_0, x)}{\Delta t} = \frac{\partial f}{\partial t}(t(t_0, \Delta t, x), x) \rightarrow \frac{\partial f}{\partial t}(t_0, x) \quad (10.2.0.6)$$

for each  $x \in X$ . Since by assumptions, we have  $\left| \frac{\partial f}{\partial t}(t(t_0, \Delta t, x), x) \right| \leq g(x)$  for each  $x \in X$  and  $g \in L^1(X)$ , we can apply Theorem 10.2.0.7 (Lebesgue's Dominated Convergence Theorem). Thus

$$\int_X \frac{f(t_0 + \Delta t, x) - f(t_0, x)}{\Delta t} \mu(dx) \rightarrow \int_X \frac{\partial f}{\partial t}(t_0, x) \mu(dx), \quad (10.2.0.7)$$

which is the same as

$$\frac{\int_X f(t_0 + \Delta t, x) \mu(dx) - \int_X f(t_0, x) \mu(dx)}{\Delta t} \rightarrow \int_X \frac{\partial f}{\partial t}(t_0, x) \mu(dx). \quad (10.2.0.8)$$

Hence, we have proved our thesis.  $\square$

**Theorem 10.2.0.9.** *Let  $X$  be a compact space with a Borel additive measure  $\mu$  where  $\mu(X) < +\infty$ ,  $U$  be an open subset of  $\mathbb{R}$  and  $f : U \times X \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ . If*

1. *the mapping  $X \ni x \rightarrow f(t, x)$  is a  $L^1(X)$  function for each  $t \in U$ ,*
2. *the mapping  $U \times X \ni (t, x) \rightarrow \frac{\partial f}{\partial t}(x, t)$  is continuous,*

*then the mapping  $X \ni x \rightarrow \frac{\partial f}{\partial t}(t, x)$  is a  $L^1(X)$  function for each  $t \in U$  and*

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial t} \int_X f(t, x) \mu(dx) = \int_X \frac{\partial f}{\partial t}(x, t) \mu(dx) \quad (10.2.0.9)$$

*for each  $t \in U$ .*

*Proof.* Take any  $t_0 \in U$ . We have an open neighbourhood  $V \subset U$  of the point  $t_0$  such that  $\text{Clo}(V)$  is compact. Since  $\frac{\partial f}{\partial t}$  is continuous on  $\text{Clo}(V) \times X$ , we have  $M > 0$  such that  $\left| \frac{\partial f}{\partial t}(V, x) \right| \leq M$  for each  $x \in X$ . Now, since  $\int_X M \mu(dx) = M \mu(X) < +\infty$ , the assumptions of Theorem 10.2.0.8 are satisfied for the open set  $V$ . Thus

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial t} \int_X f(t_0, x) \mu(dx) = \int_X \frac{\partial f}{\partial t}(x, t_0) \mu(dx). \quad (10.2.0.10)$$

□

**Theorem 10.2.0.10. (Fubini theorem)** *Let  $(X, \mathcal{M}_X, \mu)$ ,  $(Y, \mathcal{M}_Y, \nu)$  be measurable spaces and  $\mu$  and  $\nu$  are  $\sigma$ -finite. If  $f$  is  $\mathcal{M}_X \times \mathcal{M}_Y$  measurable and*

$$\int_X \int_Y |f(x, y)| d\nu(y) d\mu(x) < +\infty, \quad (10.2.0.11)$$

*then*

$$\int_X \int_Y f(x, y) d\nu(y) d\mu(x) = \int_Y \int_X f(x, y) d\mu(x) d\nu(y) < +\infty. \quad (10.2.0.12)$$

*Proof.* [See Rud87, Integration on Product Spaces. The Fubini theorem] □

**Definition 10.2.0.11. (Fréchet derivative)** *Let  $X, Y$  be Banach spaces and  $T : X \rightarrow Y$ . We will say that  $T$  is differentiable at a point  $x_0 \in X$ , if and only if there exist a mapping  $A_{x_0} \in L(X, Y)$  such that*

$$T(x_0 + h) - T(x_0) = A_{x_0}h + r(x_0, h), \quad (10.2.0.13)$$



where

$$\lim_{h \rightarrow 0} \frac{\|r(x_0, h)\|}{\|h\|} = 0. \quad (10.2.0.14)$$

Let  $\nabla T(x_0) := A_{x_0}$ .

You will find basic properties of  $\nabla$  proven in [Mau76] (VII).

**Definition 10.2.0.12.** Let  $X, Y$  be Banach spaces and  $U$  be an open subset of  $X$ . Let's define by induction.

1.  $L_1 := L(X, Y)$ ,
2.  $T \in C^1(U, Y)$  iff.  $\nabla T \in C(U, L_1)$ , i.e.  $U \ni x \rightarrow (\nabla T(x)) \in L_1$ .
3.  $L_{n+1} := L(X, L_n)$ ,
4.  $\nabla^{n+1}T(x_0) := \nabla(\nabla^n(T))(x_0)$ ,
5.  $T \in C^{n+1}(U, Y)$  iff.  $T \in C^n(U, Y)$  and  $\nabla(\nabla^n T) \in C(U, L_{n+1})$ , i.e.  $U \ni x \rightarrow \nabla(\nabla^n T)(x) \in L_{n+1}$  is continuous.

Because of the isometry

$$L(X_1 \times \cdots \times X_n; Y) \cong L(X_1, L(X_2, \dots, L(X_{n-1}, L(X_n, Y)) \dots)) \quad (10.2.0.15)$$

proven in [Mau76] (VII.7), we have

$$L_n \cong L(\underbrace{X, \dots, X}_{n \text{ times}}; Y). \quad (10.2.0.16)$$

and we can exchangeably use

$$\nabla^n T(x_0)(h_1, h_2, \dots, h_n) := (\dots (\nabla^n T(x_0)h_1)h_2 \dots)h_n. \quad (10.2.0.17)$$

The below propositions will be written in Einstein summation convention.

**Proposition 10.2.0.13.** Let  $U$  be an open subset of  $\mathbb{R}^n$ . If  $f \in C^1(U, \mathbb{R}^m)$ , then

$$\nabla f(x)(\Delta x) = \frac{\partial f^i}{\partial x_j}(x) \Delta x^j. \quad (10.2.0.18)$$

**Proposition 10.2.0.14.**

$$\nabla^n f(x)(\Delta x_1, \dots, \Delta x_n) = \frac{\partial^n f^i}{\partial x_{j_1} \dots \partial x_{j_n}}(x) \Delta x_1^{j_1} \dots \Delta x_n^{j_n}. \quad (10.2.0.19)$$

In the theorem below  $h^{(k)}$  is just an abbreviation of  $\underbrace{(h, \dots, h)}_{k \text{ times}}$ .

**Theorem 10.2.0.15. (*The Taylor Formula*)** Let  $X, Y$  be Banach spaces,  $U$  be an open subset of  $X$  and  $T \in C^{n+1}(U, Y)$ . If the interval  $[x, x+h] \subset U$  then

$$T(x+h) = T(x) + \sum_{k=1}^n \frac{1}{k!} (\nabla^k T(x)) h^{(k)} + R_{n+1}(x) h^{(n+1)}, \quad (10.2.0.20)$$

where

$$R_{n+1}(x) = \int_0^1 \frac{(1-s)^n}{n!} (\nabla^{n+1} T)(x+sh) ds. \quad (10.2.0.21)$$

*Proof.* You may find a proof in [Mau76] (VII.9).  $\square$

**Theorem 10.2.0.16.** Let  $V, Y$  be normed vector spaces and let  $X$  be a topological space. If  $A : X \rightarrow L(V, Y)$  is continuous at  $x_0$  and  $u : X \rightarrow V$  is continuous at  $x_0$ , then the mapping  $X \ni x \rightarrow A(x)u(x) \in Y$  is continuous at  $x_0$ .

**Theorem 10.2.0.17.** Let  $E$  be a compact Hausdorff space, let  $X, Y$  be Banach spaces. We consider  $C(E, X)$  and  $C(E, Y)$  as Banach spaces with supremum norm  $\|\cdot\|_\infty$ . If  $A \in C(E, L(X, Y))$  and  $\hat{A} : C(E, X) \rightarrow C(E, Y)$  is defined as

$$\hat{A}(u)(t) = A(t)u(t) \quad (10.2.0.22)$$

for each  $t \in E$ , then  $\hat{A} \in L(C(E, X), C(E, Y))$ .

**Theorem 10.2.0.18.** Let  $E$  be a compact Hausdorff space, let  $X, Y$  be Banach spaces and let  $\mathcal{L} \in C^2(X, Y)$ . We consider  $C(E, X)$  and  $C(E, Y)$  as Banach spaces with supremum norm  $\|\cdot\|_\infty$ . Let  $\hat{\mathcal{L}} : C(E, X) \rightarrow C(E, Y)$  be defined as

$$\hat{\mathcal{L}}(u)(t) = \mathcal{L}(u(t)), \quad (10.2.0.23)$$

then  $\nabla \hat{\mathcal{L}}$  exists for all  $u \in C(E, X)$  and

$$(\nabla \hat{\mathcal{L}}(u)(\Delta u))(t) = \nabla \mathcal{L}(u(t))(\Delta u(t)). \quad (10.2.0.24)$$

## 10.2.1 Fourier Transforms and Related Theorems

In this subsection, if not stated otherwise, we assume that  $L^p(X)$  is a space of complex valued functions  $f : X \rightarrow \mathbb{C}$  for which  $\int |f|^p < +\infty$ .

**Theorem 10.2.1.1.** *Let  $X$  be a measurable space with a positive measure  $\mu$ . If  $f \in L^1(X)$ , then*

$$\left| \int f \mu \right| \leq \int |f| d\mu. \quad (10.2.1.1)$$

*Proof.* [see Rud87, Abstract Integration]  $\square$

**Theorem 10.2.1.2. (*Hölder's inequality*)** *Let  $X$  be a measurable space with a positive measure  $\mu$ . Let  $p, q \in (1, +\infty)$  such that  $\frac{1}{p} + \frac{1}{q} = 1$ . If  $f, g : X \rightarrow [0, \infty]$  are measurable, then*

$$\int f g d\mu \leq \left( \int f^p d\mu \right)^{\frac{1}{p}} \left( \int g^q d\mu \right)^{\frac{1}{q}}. \quad (10.2.1.2)$$

*Proof.* [see Rud87,  $L^p$ -Spaces]  $\square$

**Definition 10.2.1.3.** *Let  $f \in L^1(\mathbb{R})$ .*

$$\mathcal{F}(f)(t) := \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} f(x) e^{-ixt} dx. \quad (10.2.1.3)$$

In many equations with Fourier transform we will be using  $u$  as identity function  $u(t) := t$  but we will be omitting  $t$  for a purpose, making a silent assumption that everything is a function of  $t$ . In this convention i.e.  $uf(u)$  is the function  $t \rightarrow u(t)f(u(t)) = tf(t)$ .

**Theorem 10.2.1.4.** *If  $f \in L^1(\mathbb{R})$ , then  $\mathcal{F}(f)(t) \in \mathbb{R}$  is well defined for each  $t \in \mathbb{R}$ .*

*Proof.* You may find a proof in [Rud87] (Fourier Transforms. Formal Properties.)  $\square$

**Definition 10.2.1.5.** *Let  $f \in L^1(\mathbb{R})$ .*

$$\mathcal{F}^{-1}(f)(t) := \mathcal{F}(f)(-t). \quad (10.2.1.4)$$

**Theorem 10.2.1.6.** *If  $f \in L^1(\mathbb{R})$  and  $\mathcal{F}(f) \in L^1(\mathbb{R})$ , then*

$$f \underset{a.e.}{=} \mathcal{F}^{-1}(\mathcal{F}(f)) \in C_0(\mathbb{R}). \quad (10.2.1.5)$$

*Proof.* You may find a proof in [Rud87] (Fourier Transforms. The Inversion Theorem.)  $\square$

**Theorem 10.2.1.7.** *If  $f \in L^1(\mathbb{R})$ , then*

$$\mathcal{F}^{-1}(f) = \mathcal{F}(f(-u)). \quad (10.2.1.6)$$

*Proof.* By definition 10.2.1.5 we have

$$\mathcal{F}^{-1}(f)(t) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} f(x) e^{ixt} dx. \quad (10.2.1.7)$$

Make the substitution  $z = -x$ , so  $dz = -dx$ . Thus

$$\mathcal{F}^{-1}(f)(t) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} f(-z) e^{-izt} dz. \quad (10.2.1.8)$$

□

**Theorem 10.2.1.8.** *Let  $f \in L^1(\mathbb{R})$  and let  $\alpha, \gamma \in \mathbb{R}$ . The following conditions holds:*

1.  $\mathcal{F}(f(u)e^{i\alpha u})(t) = \mathcal{F}(f)(t - \alpha)$ .
2.  $\mathcal{F}(f(u - \alpha))(t) = e^{-i\alpha t} \mathcal{F}(f)(t)$ .
3.  $\mathcal{F}(\overline{f(-u)}) = \overline{\mathcal{F}(f)}$ .
4. If  $\gamma > 0$  then  $\mathcal{F}(f(\frac{u}{\gamma}))(t) = \gamma \mathcal{F}(f)(\gamma t)$ .
5. If  $-iuf(u) \in L^1(\mathbb{R})$ , then  $\mathcal{F}(f)$  is differentiable and

$$\frac{d}{dt} \mathcal{F}(f) = \mathcal{F}(-iuf(u)). \quad (10.2.1.9)$$

*Proof.* You may find a proof in [Rud87] (Fourier Transforms. Formal Properties.) □

**Theorem 10.2.1.9.** *If  $iuf(u) \in L^1(\mathbb{R})$ , then*

$$\frac{d}{dt} \mathcal{F}^{-1}(f) = \mathcal{F}^{-1}(iuf(u)). \quad (10.2.1.10)$$

*Proof.*

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{d}{dt} \mathcal{F}^{-1}(f) &= \frac{d}{dt} \mathcal{F}(f(-u)) = \mathcal{F}(-iuf(-u)) = \mathcal{F}(iuf(-u)) \\ &= -\mathcal{F}^{-1}(i(-u)f(u)) = \mathcal{F}^{-1}(iuf(u)). \end{aligned} \quad (10.2.1.11)$$

□

**Theorem 10.2.1.10. (The Parseval Formula)** *If  $f, g \in L^1(\mathbb{R}) \cap L^2(\mathbb{R})$ , then*

$$\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} f \bar{g} dx = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \mathcal{F}(f) \overline{\mathcal{F}(g)} dx. \quad (10.2.1.12)$$

*Proof.* You may find a proof in [Rud87] (Fourier Transforms. The Plancherel Theorem.)  $\square$

**Corollary 10.2.1.11.** *If  $f, g \in L^1(\mathbb{R}) \cap L^2(\mathbb{R})$ , then*

$$\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} f \bar{g} \, dx = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \mathcal{F}^{-1}(f) \overline{\mathcal{F}^{-1}(g)} \, dx. \quad (10.2.1.13)$$

**Corollary 10.2.1.12.** *If  $f \in L^1(\mathbb{R}) \cap L^2(\mathbb{R})$ , then  $\mathcal{F}(f) \in L^2(\mathbb{R})$ .*

**Theorem 10.2.1.13.** *If  $\psi_1, \psi_2 \in L^1(\mathbb{R}) \cap L^2(\mathbb{R})$  and the function  $x \rightarrow x\mathcal{F}(\psi_1)(x)$  is in  $L^1(\mathbb{R}) \cap L^2(\mathbb{R})$ , then*

$$\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} -i \frac{d\psi_1}{dx}(x) \cdot \overline{\psi_2(x)} \, dx = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x \mathcal{F}(\psi_1)(x) \cdot \overline{\mathcal{F}(\psi_2)(x)} \, dx. \quad (10.2.1.14)$$

*Proof.* Let

$$P = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \frac{d\psi_1}{dx}(x) \cdot \overline{\psi_2(x)} \, dx = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \frac{d}{dx} \mathcal{F}^{-1}(\mathcal{F}(\psi_1)) \cdot \overline{\mathcal{F}^{-1}(\mathcal{F}(\psi_2))} \, dx. \quad (10.2.1.15)$$

By Theorem 10.2.1.9 we have

$$P = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \mathcal{F}^{-1}(ix\mathcal{F}(\psi_1)(x)) \cdot \overline{\mathcal{F}^{-1}(\mathcal{F}(\psi_2))} \, dx. \quad (10.2.1.16)$$

Now, by Corollary 10.2.1.11 we have

$$P = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} ix\mathcal{F}(\psi_1)(x) \cdot \overline{\mathcal{F}(\psi_2)(x)} \, dx, \quad (10.2.1.17)$$

which completes the proof.  $\square$

**Theorem 10.2.1.14.** *If  $\psi_1, \psi_2 \in L^1(\mathbb{R}) \cap L^2(\mathbb{R})$  and the function  $x \rightarrow x\psi_1(x)$  is in  $L^1(\mathbb{R}) \cap L^2(\mathbb{R})$ , then*

$$\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x\psi_1(x) \cdot \overline{\psi_2(x)} \, dx = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} i \frac{d}{dx} \mathcal{F}(\psi_1)(x) \cdot \overline{\mathcal{F}(\psi_2)(x)} \, dx. \quad (10.2.1.18)$$

*Proof.* Let

$$Q = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x\psi_1(x) \cdot \overline{\psi_2(x)} \, dx. \quad (10.2.1.19)$$

By Theorem 10.2.1.10 we have

$$Q = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \mathcal{F}(x\psi_1(x)) \cdot \overline{\mathcal{F}(\psi_2(x))} \, dx = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} i\mathcal{F}(-ix\psi_1(x)) \cdot \overline{\mathcal{F}(\psi_2(x))} \, dx. \quad (10.2.1.20)$$

Now, by Theorem 10.2.1.8

$$Q = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} i \frac{d}{dx} \mathcal{F}(\psi_1)(x) \cdot \overline{\mathcal{F}(\psi_2)(x)} dx, \quad (10.2.1.21)$$

which completes the proof.  $\square$

**Lemma 10.2.1.15.** *Let  $p_1, p_2 \in [1, +\infty)$  and  $f : \mathbb{R} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ . If  $f \in L^{p_1}(\mathbb{R})$  and  $\frac{df}{dx} \in L^{p_2}(\mathbb{R})$ , then*

$$\lim_{x \rightarrow -\infty} f(x) = 0, \quad (10.2.1.22)$$

and

$$\lim_{x \rightarrow +\infty} f(x) = 0. \quad (10.2.1.23)$$

*Proof.* Without loss of generality we will show only  $\lim_{x \rightarrow +\infty} f(x) = 0$ . By proof by contradiction, assume that  $\limsup_{x \rightarrow \infty} |f(x)| > 0$ . Without loss of generality we may assume that we have such  $\varepsilon > 0$  and a sequence  $b_n \rightarrow \infty$  such that  $f(b_n) > \varepsilon$ . Fix some  $\Delta s > 0$ . There must be

$$\inf_{x \in (c_n - \Delta s, c_n)} f(x) < \frac{1}{2}\varepsilon \quad (10.2.1.24)$$

for almost all  $n \in \mathbb{N}$ . Otherwise  $f \notin L^{p_1}(\mathbb{R})$ . Hence, we have a sequence  $a_n \rightarrow \infty$  such that  $a_n \in (b_n - \Delta s, b_n)$  and  $f(a_n) < \frac{1}{2}\varepsilon$  for almost all  $n \in \mathbb{N}$ . Since  $f(b_n) > \varepsilon$  and  $f(a_n) < \frac{1}{2}\varepsilon$  we have

$$\int_{a_n}^{b_n} \frac{df}{dx} = f(b_n) - f(a_n) > \frac{1}{2}\varepsilon \quad (10.2.1.25)$$

for almost all  $n \in \mathbb{N}$ . This immediately contradicts  $\frac{df}{dx} \in L^{p_2}(\mathbb{R})$  for  $p_2 = 1$ . Assume now that  $p_2 > 1$ . By Theorem 10.2.1.1 and Theorem 10.2.1.2 (Hölder's inequality), for almost all  $n \in \mathbb{N}$  we are getting

$$\frac{1}{2}\varepsilon < \int_{a_n}^{b_n} \left| \frac{df}{dx} \right| \cdot 1 dx \leq \left( \int_{a_n}^{b_n} \left| \frac{df}{dx} \right|^{p_2} dx \right)^{\frac{1}{p_2}} (b_n - a_n)^{\frac{1}{q_2}}, \quad (10.2.1.26)$$

where  $q_2$  is such that  $\frac{1}{p_2} + \frac{1}{q_2} = 1$ . But  $b_n - a_n < \Delta s$ . Thus

$$\left( \frac{\varepsilon}{(\Delta s)^{\frac{1}{q_2}}} \right)^{p_2} < \left( \frac{\varepsilon}{(b_n - a_n)^{\frac{1}{q_2}}} \right)^{p_2} < \int_{a_n}^{b_n} \left| \frac{df}{dx} \right|^{p_2} dx. \quad (10.2.1.27)$$

Since  $b_n \rightarrow \infty$  the above contradicts  $\frac{df}{dx} \in L^{p_2}(\mathbb{R})$ .  $\square$

The assumption that  $\frac{df}{dx} \in L^{p_2}(\mathbb{R})$  is important, for counterexample [see [Gie00](#), Example 2].

**Theorem 10.2.1.16.** *Let  $p_1, p_2 \in [1, +\infty)$  and  $f : \mathbb{R} \rightarrow \mathbb{C}$ . If  $f \in L^{p_1}(\mathbb{R})$  and  $\frac{df}{dx} \in L^{p_2}(\mathbb{R})$ , then*

$$\lim_{x \rightarrow -\infty} f(x) = 0, \quad (10.2.1.28)$$

and

$$\lim_{x \rightarrow +\infty} f(x) = 0. \quad (10.2.1.29)$$

*Proof.* It is enough to notice  $f(x) = \operatorname{Re}(f(x)) + i\operatorname{Im}(f(x))$ . From  $\max\{|a|, |b|\} \leq |a + ib|$  follows that  $\operatorname{Re}(f), \operatorname{Im}(f) \in L^{p_1}(\mathbb{R})$  and  $\frac{d\operatorname{Re}f}{dx}, \frac{d\operatorname{Im}f}{dx} \in L^{p_2}(\mathbb{R})$ . Thus, applying the above Lemma to both  $\operatorname{Re}f$  and  $\operatorname{Im}f$  completes the proof.  $\square$

**Theorem 10.2.1.17.** *Let  $\mathcal{D} = \{f : \mathbb{R} \rightarrow \mathbb{C} \mid f \in L^2(\mathbb{R}) \text{ and } \frac{df}{dx} \in L^2(\mathbb{R})\}$ . If  $f, g \in \mathcal{D}$ , then*

$$\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} i \frac{df}{dx} \cdot \bar{g} dx = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} f \cdot i \overline{\frac{dg}{dx}} dx. \quad (10.2.1.30)$$

*Proof.* Note that by Theorem 10.2.1.16 we have

$$\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} i \frac{d}{dx} (f\bar{g}) = 0. \quad (10.2.1.31)$$

From the above, we get the equation (10.2.1.30).  $\square$

## 10.2.2 Euler-Lagrange Equations

Let  $I = [a, b]$ . In this subsection we will consider a function  $\mathcal{L} \in C^2(I \times \mathbb{R}^n \times \mathbb{R}^n, \mathbb{R})$ . We will also consider a space  $C^1(I, \mathbb{R}^n)$  equipped with the norm

$$\|u\|_{C^2} := \sum_{i=1}^n \sup |u_i(I)| + \sum_{i=1}^n \sup \left| \frac{du_i}{dt}(I) \right|. \quad (10.2.2.1)$$

By Theorem 10.2.0.2 and Theorem 10.2.0.6 one can easily prove that  $(C^1(I, \mathbb{R}^n), \|\cdot\|_{C^2})$  is a Banach space. Define a function  $J$  on  $C^1(I, \mathbb{R}^n)$ .

$$J(u) := \int_b^a \mathcal{L}(t, u(t), \frac{du}{dt}(t)) dt. \quad (10.2.2.2)$$

**Definition 10.2.2.1.** We will say that  $F_\varepsilon : \mathbb{R}^n \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^n$  is a continuous symmetry group iff.

$$F_\varepsilon(x) = v(\varepsilon) + A_\varepsilon x, \quad (10.2.2.3)$$

where  $\frac{d}{d\varepsilon}v|_{\varepsilon=0} \in \mathbb{R}$  and  $A_\varepsilon$  is a continuous group of linear mappings, for which there exists a linear mapping  $Q_A$  such that

$$\lim_{\varepsilon \rightarrow 0} \left\| \frac{1}{\varepsilon}(A_\varepsilon - I) - Q_A \right\| = 0. \quad (10.2.2.4)$$

We will say that  $Q_F := \frac{d}{d\varepsilon}v|_{\varepsilon=0} + Q_A$  is an infinitesimal generator of  $F_\varepsilon$ .

**Lemma 10.2.2.2.** Let  $F_\varepsilon$  be a continuous symmetry group, let  $u \in C^1(I, \mathbb{R}^n)$ . Let

$$\Phi(t, \varepsilon) = F_\varepsilon(u(t)). \quad (10.2.2.5)$$

Then

$$\left. \frac{d}{dt} \frac{d}{d\varepsilon} \Phi(t, \varepsilon) \right|_{\varepsilon=0} = \left. \frac{d}{d\varepsilon} \frac{d}{dt} \Phi(t, \varepsilon) \right|_{\varepsilon=0} = Q_F \dot{u}(t). \quad (10.2.2.6)$$

**Theorem 10.2.2.3. (Noether's Theorem)** Let  $\mathcal{L} \in C^2(I \times \mathbb{R}^n \times \mathbb{R}^n, \mathbb{R})$ , let  $u \in C^1(\mathbb{R}, \mathbb{R}^n)$  and

$$\frac{d}{dt} \frac{\partial \mathcal{L}}{\partial \dot{x}}(t, u, \dot{u}) - \frac{\partial \mathcal{L}}{\partial x}(t, u, \dot{u}) = 0. \quad (10.2.2.7)$$

Let  $F_\varepsilon$  be a continuous symmetry group with an infinitesimal generator  $Q_F$  and let  $Q_T \in \mathbb{R}$ . Let  $T_\varepsilon(t) = t + Q_T \varepsilon$  and  $u_\varepsilon(t) = F_\varepsilon(u(t))$ . If

$$\mathcal{L}(T_\varepsilon, u_\varepsilon, \dot{u}_\varepsilon) = \mathcal{L}(t, u, \dot{u}) \quad (10.2.2.8)$$

for all  $\varepsilon \in \mathbb{R}$ , then

$$(\mathcal{L} - \frac{\partial \mathcal{L}}{\partial \dot{x}} \dot{u}) Q_T + \frac{\partial \mathcal{L}}{\partial \dot{x}} Q_F u = \text{const.} \quad (10.2.2.9)$$

*Proof.* Let

$$\psi_t(\varepsilon) := (t + Q_T \varepsilon, F_\varepsilon(u(t)), \frac{d}{dt} F_\varepsilon(u(t))). \quad (10.2.2.10)$$

For fixed  $t \in \mathbb{R}$ ,  $\psi_t$  is differentiable in  $\varepsilon = 0$  and by Lemma 10.2.2.2, we have

$$\left. \frac{d}{d\varepsilon} \psi_t(\varepsilon) \right|_{\varepsilon=0} = (Q_T, Q_F u(t), Q_F \dot{u}(t)). \quad (10.2.2.11)$$



By equation (10.2.2.8) we have

$$\mathcal{L}(\psi_t(\varepsilon)) - \mathcal{L}(\psi_t(0)) = 0 \quad (10.2.2.12)$$

for all  $\varepsilon \in \mathbb{R}$ . Thus

$$\left. \frac{d}{d\varepsilon} \mathcal{L}(\psi_t(\varepsilon)) \right|_{\varepsilon=0} = 0. \quad (10.2.2.13)$$

By the law of derivatives composition ([Mau76] VII.4), we have

$$\nabla \mathcal{L}(\psi_t(0)) \left. \frac{d}{d\varepsilon} \psi_t(\varepsilon) \right|_{\varepsilon=0} = 0, \quad (10.2.2.14)$$

Since  $\psi_t(0) = (t, u(t), \dot{u}(t))$ , the above expands to

$$\frac{\partial \mathcal{L}}{\partial t}(t, u, \dot{u}) Q_T + \frac{\partial \mathcal{L}}{\partial x}(t, u, \dot{u}) Q_F u + \frac{\partial \mathcal{L}}{\partial \dot{x}}(t, u, \dot{u}) Q_F \dot{u} = 0. \quad (10.2.2.15)$$

By (10.2.2.7)

$$\frac{\partial \mathcal{L}}{\partial t}(t, u, \dot{u}) Q_T + \frac{d}{dt} \frac{\partial \mathcal{L}}{\partial \dot{x}}(t, u, \dot{u}) Q_F u + \frac{\partial \mathcal{L}}{\partial \dot{x}}(t, u, \dot{u}) Q_F \dot{u} = 0. \quad (10.2.2.16)$$

From that point we will omit  $(t, u, \dot{u})$  but we will consider  $\mathcal{L}$  and its all derivatives at point  $(t, u(t), \dot{u}(t))$ . From the above we get immediately

$$\frac{\partial \mathcal{L}}{\partial t} Q_T + \frac{d}{dt} \left( \frac{\partial \mathcal{L}}{\partial \dot{x}} Q_F u \right) = 0. \quad (10.2.2.17)$$

Note that we have

$$\frac{d}{dt} \mathcal{L} = \frac{\partial \mathcal{L}}{\partial t} + \frac{\partial \mathcal{L}}{\partial x} \dot{u} + \frac{\partial \mathcal{L}}{\partial \dot{x}} \ddot{u}. \quad (10.2.2.18)$$

But again from (10.2.2.7) we get

$$\frac{d}{dt} \mathcal{L} = \frac{\partial \mathcal{L}}{\partial t} + \frac{d}{dt} \left( \frac{\partial \mathcal{L}}{\partial \dot{x}} \dot{u} \right). \quad (10.2.2.19)$$

Thus using (10.2.2.17) we get

$$\frac{d}{dt} \left( \left( \mathcal{L} - \frac{\partial \mathcal{L}}{\partial \dot{x}} \dot{u} \right) Q_T + \frac{\partial \mathcal{L}}{\partial \dot{x}} Q_F u \right) = 0, \quad (10.2.2.20)$$

which gives (10.2.2.9).  $\square$

## 10.3 Spectral Theory

### 10.3.1 Spectral Measure

For any vector space  $X$ , by  $\mathcal{B}(X)$  we will mean a space of all bounded linear operators.

**Definition 10.3.1.1.** Let  $\mathfrak{M}$  be a  $\sigma$ -algebra in a set  $\Omega$  and let  $H$  be a Hilbert space. The mapping

$$E : \mathfrak{M} \rightarrow \mathcal{B}(H) \quad (10.3.1.1)$$

is a spectral measure iff

1.  $E(\Omega) = I$ .
2.  $E(\omega)$  is a selfadjoint projection for any  $\omega \in \mathfrak{M}$ .
3.  $E(\omega_1 \cup \omega_2) = E(\omega_1) + E(\omega_2)$  where  $\omega_1 \cap \omega_2 = \emptyset$  for any  $\omega_1, \omega_2 \in \mathfrak{M}$ .
4.  $E(\bigcup_{i=1}^{\infty} \omega_i)\psi = \sum_{i=1}^{\infty} E(\omega_i)\psi$  for any pairwise disjoint sequence of sets  $\omega_i \in \mathfrak{M}$  and any  $\psi \in H$ .

**Theorem 10.3.1.2.** Let  $\mathfrak{M}$  be a  $\sigma$ -algebra in a set  $\Omega$  and let  $H$  be a Hilbert space. If  $E : \mathfrak{M} \rightarrow \mathcal{B}(H)$  is a spectral measure, then the following holds:

1.  $E(\Omega \setminus \omega) = I - E(\omega)$  for any  $\omega \in \mathfrak{M}$ , in particular  $E(\emptyset) = 0$ .
2.  $E(\omega_1 \cap \omega_2) = E(\omega_1)E(\omega_2)$  for any  $\omega_1, \omega_2 \in \mathfrak{M}$ .
3.  $\mu_{\psi, \phi}^E(\omega) := \langle E(\omega)\psi, \phi \rangle$  is a complex valued measure on  $\mathfrak{M}$ .

*Proof.* [see [Tes14](#), The Spectral Theorem] □

We will denote

$$\mu_{\psi}^E(\omega) := \mu_{\psi, \psi}^E(\omega). \quad (10.3.1.2)$$

Note that because of  $E(\omega)$  is a projection  $\mu_{\psi}^E(\omega) \geq 0$ .

**Definition 10.3.1.3.** Let  $H$  be a Hilbert space. We say that  $E$  is a spectral measure on real line iff  $E : \mathfrak{M} \rightarrow \mathcal{B}(H)$  where  $\mathfrak{M}$  is  $\sigma$ -algebra of Lebesgue measurable sets on  $\mathbb{R}$ .

**Definition 10.3.1.4.** Let  $H$  be a Hilbert space, let  $f : \mathbb{R} \rightarrow \mathbb{C}$  be a measurable function and let  $E : \mathfrak{M} \rightarrow \mathcal{B}(H)$  be a spectral measure.

$$\mathcal{D}_f^E := \{\psi \in H : \int |f|^2 d\mu_{\psi}^E < +\infty\}. \quad (10.3.1.3)$$

**Theorem 10.3.1.5.** *Let  $\mathcal{D}_f^E$  be like in Definition 10.3.1.4, then  $\mathcal{D}_f^E$  is a dense subspace of  $H$ .*

*Proof.* [see Rud91, Unbounded Operators on a Hilbert Space, Resolution of Identity]  $\square$

**Theorem 10.3.1.6.** *Let  $H$  be a Hilbert space, let  $f : \mathbb{R} \rightarrow \mathbb{C}$  be a measurable function and let  $E : \mathfrak{M} \rightarrow \mathcal{B}(H)$  be a spectral measure. Then*

$$\int |f| d\mu_{\psi, \phi}^E \leq \|\phi\| \left( \int |f|^2 d\mu_{\psi}^E \right)^{\frac{1}{2}} \text{ for } \psi, \phi \in H. \quad (10.3.1.4)$$

*Proof.* [see Rud91, Unbounded Operators on a Hilbert Space, Resolution of Identity]  $\square$

**Theorem 10.3.1.7.** *Let  $H$  be a Hilbert space, let  $f : \mathbb{R} \rightarrow \mathbb{C}$  be a measurable function and let  $E : \mathfrak{M} \rightarrow \mathcal{B}(H)$  be a spectral measure. There exists a densely defined normal operator  $\Psi^E(f)$  with a domain  $\mathcal{D}(\Psi^E(f)) = \mathcal{D}_f^E$  such that*

$$\langle \Psi^E(f)\psi, \phi \rangle = \int f d\mu_{\psi, \phi}^E \text{ for all } \psi \in \mathcal{D}_f^E \text{ and } \phi \in H. \quad (10.3.1.5)$$

Moreover

1.  $\|\Psi^E(f)\psi\| = \left( \int |f|^2 d\mu_{\psi}^E \right)^{\frac{1}{2}}$  for all  $\psi \in \mathcal{D}_f^E$ .
2.  $\Psi^E(f)^* = \Psi^E(\bar{f})$ .
3. If  $f, g : \mathbb{R} \rightarrow \mathbb{C}$  are measurable, then  $\Psi^E(f)\Psi^E(g) \subset \Psi^E(fg)$  and  $\mathcal{D}(\Psi^E(f)\Psi^E(g)) = \mathcal{D}_g^E \cap \mathcal{D}_{fg}^E$ .
4.  $\Psi^E(f)\Psi^E(g) = \Psi^E(fg)$  iff  $\mathcal{D}_{fg}^E \subset \mathcal{D}_g^E$ .

*Proof.* [see Rud91, Unbounded Operators on a Hilbert Space, Resolution of Identity]  $\square$

**Corollary 10.3.1.8.** *If  $E$  is a spectral measure on real line, then for  $\Psi^E$  from Theorem 10.3.1.7,  $\Psi^E(id)$  is self-adjoint.*

*Proof.* It follows from Theorem 10.3.1.7 Moreover part point 1.  $\square$

We will use symbol  $E(f) := \Psi^E(f)$  as defined in the theorem above. Note that in this convention  $E(1_{\omega}) = E(\omega)$ . We will use also another convention, if we consider operator  $A = E(id)$ , we will write  $f(A) := \Psi^E(f)$ .

**Definition 10.3.1.9.** Let  $H$  be Hilbert space and let  $E : \mathfrak{M} \rightarrow \mathcal{B}(H)$  be a spectral measure on real line. Let  $\psi \in H$ .

$$H_\psi^E := \{E(f)\psi : \int |f|^2 d\mu_\psi^E < +\infty\}. \quad (10.3.1.6)$$

**Definition 10.3.1.10.** Let  $H$  be Hilbert space and let  $E : \mathfrak{M} \rightarrow \mathcal{B}(H)$  be a spectral measure on real line. Let  $\psi \in H$ . We will say that  $\psi$  is **cyclic** in  $E$  iff  $H_\psi^E = H$ .

**Definition 10.3.1.11.** Let  $H_1, H_2$  be Hilbert spaces.  $U : H_1 \rightarrow H_2$  is called a unitary mapping, if  $U$  is a linear bijection and

$$\langle U(\psi), U(\phi) \rangle_{H_2} = \langle \psi, \phi \rangle_{H_1} \text{ for all } \psi, \phi \in H_1. \quad (10.3.1.7)$$

**Definition 10.3.1.12.** Let  $H$  be Hilbert space and let  $E : \mathfrak{M} \rightarrow \mathcal{B}(H)$  be a spectral measure on real line. Let  $\psi \in H$ . We define

$$U_\psi^E : H_\psi^E \rightarrow L^2(\mathbb{R}, \mu_\psi^E), \quad (10.3.1.8)$$

such that

$$U_\psi^E(E(f)\psi) := f \text{ for all } f \in L^2(\mathbb{R}, \mu_\psi^E). \quad (10.3.1.9)$$

**Theorem 10.3.1.13.** Let  $H$  be Hilbert space and let  $E : \mathfrak{M} \rightarrow \mathcal{B}(H)$  be a spectral measure on real line. Let  $\psi \in H$ . Then  $U_\psi^E$  is a unitary mapping between  $H_\psi^E$  and  $L^2(\mathbb{R}, \mu_\psi^E)$  and

$$U_\psi^E(E(f)\phi) = f \cdot U_\psi^E(\phi) \text{ for any } f \in L^2(\mathbb{R}, \mu_\psi^E) \text{ and } \phi \in H_\psi \cap \mathcal{D}_f. \quad (10.3.1.10)$$

Moreover  $U_f^E(\mathcal{D}_f \cap H_\psi) = \mathcal{D}(g \rightarrow f \cdot g)$  for any  $f \in L^2(\mathbb{R}, \mu_\psi^E)$ .

*Proof.* [see [Tes14](#), The Spectral Theorem] Note that to prove equation (10.3.1.10), you represent  $\phi$  as  $\phi = E(g)\psi$  for some  $g \in L^2(\mathbb{R}, \mu_\psi^E)$  and then use Theorem 10.3.1.7 for

$$U_\psi^E(E(f)\phi) = U_\psi^E(E(f)E(g)\psi) = U_\psi^E(E(fg))\psi = fg = f \cdot U_\psi^E(\phi). \quad (10.3.1.11)$$

□

**Definition 10.3.1.14.** Let  $H$  be a separable Hilbert space and let  $E : \mathfrak{M} \rightarrow \mathcal{B}(H)$  be a spectral measure on real line. A set of vectors  $\{\psi_i\}_{i \in J}$  is a spectral basis with respect to a spectral measure on real line  $E$  iff

1.  $\|\psi_i\| = 1$  for each  $i \in J$ .

2.  $H_{\psi_i}^E \perp H_{\psi_j}^E$  for all  $i, j \in J$  where  $i \neq j$ .

3.  $H = \bigoplus H_{\psi_i}^E$ .

**Theorem 10.3.1.15.** *Let  $H$  be a separable Hilbert space and let  $E : \mathfrak{M} \rightarrow \mathcal{B}(H)$  be a spectral measure on real line. There exist at least countable spectral basis  $\{\psi_i\}_{i \in J}$  and an unitary mapping  $U^E$  such that*

$$U^E : H \rightarrow \bigoplus L^2(\mathbb{R}, \mu_{\psi_i}^E), \quad (10.3.1.12)$$

and for any measurable function  $f : \mathbb{R} \rightarrow \mathbb{C}$  and  $\psi \in \mathcal{D}_f$ .

$$U^E(E(f)\psi) = f^M U^E(\psi) \text{ and } U^E(\mathcal{D}_f) = \mathcal{D}(f^M), \quad (10.3.1.13)$$

where  $f^M := \bigoplus f_i^M$  and  $f_i^M(g) := f \cdot g$  on  $L^2(\mathbb{R}, \mu_{\psi_i}^E)$ , in particular

$$E(\omega)\psi = (U^E)^{-1}(1_\omega^M \cdot U^E(\psi)). \quad (10.3.1.14)$$

*Proof.* [see [Tes14](#), The Spectral Theorem] □

Treat the above theorem also as a definition of  $U^E$ . Note the equation (10.3.1.14) shows that having a unitary mapping  $U^E$  we can reconstruct spectral measure  $E$ .

**Theorem 10.3.1.16.** *Let  $H$  be a Hilbert space and  $U : H \rightarrow L^2(\mathbb{R}, \nu)$  be a unitary mapping. If*

$$E(\omega)\psi = U^{-1}(1_\omega \cdot U(\psi)) \text{ for all } \psi \in H \quad (10.3.1.15)$$

and any Lebesgue measurable  $\omega \subset \mathbb{R}$ , then  $E$  is a spectral measure on real line and  $A = E(id)$  is a densely defined self-adjoint linear operator. Moreover

$$\langle f(A)\psi, \phi \rangle = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} f(\lambda) U(\psi) \overline{U(\phi)} d\nu(\lambda) \quad (10.3.1.16)$$

and

$$f(A)\psi = U^{-1}(f \cdot U(\psi)) \quad (10.3.1.17)$$

for any measurable  $f : \mathbb{R} \rightarrow \mathbb{C}$  and all  $\psi \in \mathcal{D}_f^E = \mathcal{D}(f(A))$  and  $\phi \in H$ .

### 10.3.2 Spectral Measure - Multidimensional representation

**Theorem 10.3.2.1.** *Let  $H$  be a Hilbert space and let  $(X, \mathfrak{M}, \nu)$  be a measurable space. Let  $U : H \rightarrow L^2(X, \nu)$  be a unitary mapping and  $g : X \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  be a measurable function.*

$$E(\omega)\psi = U^{-1}(1_\omega(g) \cdot U(\psi)) \text{ for all } \psi \in H, \quad (10.3.2.1)$$

and any Lebesgue measurable  $\omega \subset \mathbb{R}$ , then  $E$  is a spectral measure on real line and  $A = E(id)$  is a densely defined self-adjoint linear operator. Moreover

$$\langle f(A)\psi, \phi \rangle = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} f(g(x))U(\psi)\overline{U(\phi)}d\nu \quad (10.3.2.2)$$

and

$$f(A)\psi = U^{-1}(f(g) \cdot U(\psi)) \quad (10.3.2.3)$$

for any measurable  $f : \mathbb{R} \rightarrow \mathbb{C}$  and all  $\psi \in \mathcal{D}(f(A))$  and  $\phi \in H$ . Also

$$\mathcal{D}(f(A)) = D_f^E = \{\psi \in H : f(g) \cdot U(\psi) \in L^2(X, \nu)\}. \quad (10.3.2.4)$$

*Proof.* Note first that if  $u \in L^1(X, \nu)$  then

$$\mu(\omega) = \int 1_\omega(g)u d\nu \quad (10.3.2.5)$$

is a finite measure on  $\mathbb{R}$ . From that show that  $\langle E(\omega)\psi, \phi \rangle = \int 1_\omega(g)U(\psi)\overline{U(\phi)}d\nu$  is a complex valued measure on  $\mathbb{R}$  for fixed  $\psi, \phi \in H$ . From that it is easy to show that  $E$  is a spectral measure and all other properties using Theorem 10.3.1.7. Self-adjointness of  $A$  follows easily from Corollary 10.3.1.8. To prove (10.3.2.4), recall that by Definition 10.3.1.4 and Theorem 10.3.1.7 we have

$$\mathcal{D}(f(A)) = \mathcal{D}_f^E = \{\psi \in H : \int |f|^2 d\mu_\psi^E < +\infty\}. \quad (10.3.2.6)$$

But since (10.3.2.5),

$$\int |f|^2 d\mu_\psi^E = \int |f(g)|^2 U(\psi)\overline{U(\psi)}d\nu. \quad (10.3.2.7)$$

And this proves (10.3.2.4). □

The following form of “inverse” theorem is possible.

**Theorem 10.3.2.2.** (*spectral theorem–multiplication operator form*) Let  $H$  be a separable Hilbert space and let  $A$  be a densely defined self-adjoint operator. Then, there exists a measurable space  $(X, \mathfrak{M}, \nu)$  with  $\nu(X) < +\infty$ , a unitary mapping  $U : H \rightarrow L^2(X, \nu)$  and a measurable function  $g : X \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  such that

$$\psi \in \mathcal{D}(A) \text{ iff } g \cdot U(\psi) \in L^2(X, \nu) \quad (10.3.2.8)$$

and

$$A\psi = U^{-1}(g \cdot U(\psi)) \text{ for any } \psi \in \mathcal{D}(A). \quad (10.3.2.9)$$

*Proof.* [see RB80, VIII.3 The spectral theorem]  $\square$

**Definition 10.3.2.3.** Let  $H$  be a Hilbert space.  $(X, \nu, U, g)$  is  $L^2$ –representation of an self-adjoint operator  $A$  iff  $U : H \rightarrow L^2(X, \nu)$  is a unitary mapping and  $g : X \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  is measurable, such that

$$\mathcal{D}(A) = \{\psi \in H : g \cdot U(\psi) \in L^2(X, \nu)\} \quad (10.3.2.10)$$

and

$$A\psi = U^{-1}(g \cdot U(\psi)) \text{ for any } \psi \in \mathcal{D}(A). \quad (10.3.2.11)$$

Theorem 10.3.2.1 shows that if we have  $L^2$ –representation of an self-adjoint operator, it is densely defined and we know what its spectral measure is. Theorem 10.3.2.2 shows that if we are in separable Hilbert space,  $L^2$ –representation exists for each densely defined self-adjoint operator.

## 10.4 Multidimensional Fourier Transform and Schwartz space

We will use multindexes as introduced e.g in [RB80, V.3] By  $C_0(\mathbb{R}^n)$  we denote a space of continuous complex valued functions which converge to 0 in infinity.

**Definition 10.4.0.1.**  $S_n$  will denote all functions  $f \in C^\infty(\mathbb{R}^n)$  such that

$$\sup_{x \in \mathbb{R}^n} |x^\beta (D^\alpha f)(x)| < \infty \text{ for all multi-indices } \alpha, \beta. \quad (10.4.0.1)$$

We call  $S_n$  Schwartz space.

**Theorem 10.4.0.2.** If  $f \in S_n$ , then  $D^\alpha f \in S_n$  for any multi-index  $\alpha$ .

*Proof.* This follows directly from the Definition 10.4.0.1.  $\square$

**Theorem 10.4.0.3.** *If  $f, g \in S_n$ , then  $f \cdot g \in S_n$ .*

*Proof.* We will show this by induction. It is trivial to note that

$$\sup x^\beta |f| |g| < \infty. \quad (10.4.0.2)$$

Assume that for any  $f, g \in S_n$  and each index  $\beta$  and index  $\alpha$  such that  $|\alpha| \leq m$ , we have

$$\sup |x^\beta D^\alpha (f \cdot g)| < \infty. \quad (10.4.0.3)$$

Now take any index  $i$ .

$$\sup |x^\beta D^{\alpha+i} (f \cdot g)| \leq \sup |x^\beta D^\alpha (D^i f \cdot g)| + \sup |x^\beta D^\alpha (f \cdot D^i g)| < \infty. \quad (10.4.0.4)$$

The last inequality above follows from Theorem 10.4.0.3.  $\square$

**Theorem 10.4.0.4.**  *$S_n$  is dense in  $L^p(\mathbb{R}^n)$  for any  $p \in [1, \infty)$ .*

*Proof.* [see Mik98, 3.2 Fourier Transform]  $\square$

**Definition 10.4.0.5.** *Let  $f \in L^1(\mathbb{R}^n)$ .*

$$\mathcal{F}(f)(x) := (2\pi)^{-\frac{n}{2}} \int_{\mathbb{R}^n} e^{-ix \cdot s} f(s) ds. \quad (10.4.0.5)$$

**Theorem 10.4.0.6.** *If  $f \in L^1(\mathbb{R}^n)$ , then  $\mathcal{F}(f) \in C_0(\mathbb{R}^n)$  and  $\|\mathcal{F}(f)\|_\infty \leq \|f\|_1$ .*

*Proof.* [see Rud91, II.7 Fourier Transforms]  $\square$

**Definition 10.4.0.7.** *Let  $f \in L^1(\mathbb{R})$ .*

$$\mathcal{F}^{-1}(f)(x) := \mathcal{F}(f)(-x). \quad (10.4.0.6)$$

**Theorem 10.4.0.8.** *If  $f \in L^1(\mathbb{R})$  and  $\mathcal{F}(f) \in L^1(\mathbb{R})$ , then*

$$f \underset{a.e.}{=} \mathcal{F}^{-1}(\mathcal{F}(f)) \in C_0(\mathbb{R}). \quad (10.4.0.7)$$

*Proof.* [see Rud91, II.7 Fourier Transforms]  $\square$

**Theorem 10.4.0.9.** *If  $f \in L^1(\mathbb{R}^k)$  then  $\mathcal{F}(\bar{f}) = \overline{\mathcal{F}^{-1}(f)}$*

*Proof.* Follows directly from definitions.  $\square$

**Theorem 10.4.0.10.** *If  $f, g \in S_n$ , then*

$$\int f \bar{g} = \int \mathcal{F}(f) \overline{\mathcal{F}(g)}. \quad (10.4.0.8)$$

*Also  $\|f\|_2 = \|\mathcal{F}(f)\|_2$ .*



*Proof.* [see Mik98, 3.2 Fourier Transform]  $\square$

**Definition 10.4.0.11.** We will extend  $\mathcal{F}$  to  $L^2(\mathbb{R}^n)$ . For any  $f \in L^2(\mathbb{R}^n)$

$$\mathcal{F}(f) := \lim_{m \rightarrow \infty} \mathcal{F}(f_m), \quad (10.4.0.9)$$

where  $S_n \ni f_m \rightarrow f \in L^2(\mathbb{R})$ .

Sometimes we will use  $\mathcal{F}_n$  if we need to keep track of  $\mathbb{R}^n$  dimension. Theorems 10.4.0.4 and 10.4.0.10 guarantee the existence of  $\lim_{m \rightarrow \infty} \mathcal{F}(f_m)$  for each  $f$  and its independence of choice of  $f_m$ .

**Theorem 10.4.0.12.**  $\mathcal{F}$  is a unitary mapping from  $L^2(\mathbb{R}^n)$  onto  $L^2(\mathbb{R}^n)$ . Moreover

$$\mathcal{F}(f)(x) = (2\pi)^{-\frac{n}{2}} \int_{\mathbb{R}^n} e^{-ix \cdot s} f(s) ds \text{ for } f \in L^1(\mathbb{R}^n) \cap L^2(\mathbb{R}^n). \quad (10.4.0.10)$$

*Proof.* [see Mik98, 3.2 Fourier Transform]  $\square$

**Definition 10.4.0.13.** Let  $\Omega$  be an nonempty open set in  $\mathbb{R}^n$ .  $g \in L^p(\Omega)$  iff  $g \in L^p(K)$  for each compact  $K \subset \Omega$ .

**Theorem 10.4.0.14.** Let  $\Omega$  be an nonempty open set in  $\mathbb{R}^n$ . Let  $u \in C^m(\Omega)$  and  $\phi \in C_0^m(\Omega)$  and let  $\alpha$  be a multi-index with  $|\alpha| \leq m$ . Then

$$\int_{\Omega} u D^{\alpha} \phi = (-1)^{|\alpha|} \int_{\Omega} (D^{\alpha} u) \phi. \quad (10.4.0.11)$$

*Proof.* For a very elegant proof of this theorem [see Mik98, 2.4].  $\square$

**Definition 10.4.0.15.**  $J_{\varepsilon}$  with  $\varepsilon > 0$  is said to be mollifier iff  $J_{\varepsilon} \geq 0$ ,  $J_{\varepsilon}(x) = 0$  for  $|x| \geq \varepsilon$  and  $\int_{\mathbb{R}^n} J_{\varepsilon} = 1$ .

For construction of mollifier see [Mik98, 3.1].

**Theorem 10.4.0.16.** Let  $\Omega$  be an nonempty subset of  $\mathbb{R}^n$ . Let  $p, q \in [0, \infty)$ ,  $u \in L_{loc}^p(\Omega)$ ,  $v \in L_{loc}^q(\Omega)$ . Let  $K \subset \Omega$  be a compact set. Let  $\alpha$  be a multi-index. If

$$(-1)^{|\alpha|} \int_{\Omega} u D^{\alpha} \phi = \int_{\Omega} v \phi \text{ for all } \phi \in C_0^{\infty}(\Omega) \quad (10.4.0.12)$$

and

$$u_{\varepsilon} = \int_{K+B(0,d)} J_{\varepsilon}(x-y) u(y) dy, \quad (10.4.0.13)$$

$$v_{\varepsilon} = \int_{K+B(0,d)} J_{\varepsilon}(x-y) v(y) dy \quad (10.4.0.14)$$

with such a  $d > 0$  that  $K + \text{Clo}(B(0, d)) \subset \Omega$ ,  $x \in \mathbb{R}^n$  and  $J_{\varepsilon}$  mollifier, then the following statements are true.

1.  $u_\varepsilon, v_\varepsilon \in C_0^\infty(\Omega)$  for every  $\varepsilon > 0$ .
2.  $(D^\alpha u_\varepsilon)(x) = v(x)$  for  $x \in K$  and  $0 < \varepsilon < d$ .
3.  $\lim_{\varepsilon \rightarrow 0} \int_K |u_\varepsilon - u|^p = \lim_{\varepsilon \rightarrow 0} \int_K |D^\alpha u_\varepsilon - v|^q = 0$ .
4. If  $u = 0$ , then  $v = 0$  in  $\Omega$ .

a.e.

*Proof.* [see Mik98, 3.4] □

**Definition 10.4.0.17.** Let  $\Omega$  be an nonempty subset of  $\mathbb{R}^n$ . Let  $u \in L_{loc}^1(\Omega)$  and  $\alpha$  be a multi-index. We say that  $u$  has the  $\alpha$ th weak derivative and  $D^\alpha u = v$  iff

$$(-1)^{|\alpha|} \int_{\Omega} u D^\alpha \phi = \int_{\Omega} v \phi \text{ for all } \phi \in C_0^\infty(\Omega). \quad (10.4.0.15)$$

Theorem 10.4.0.16 guarantees the corectness of the above definition.

**Theorem 10.4.0.18.** Let  $\Omega$  be an nonempty subset of  $\mathbb{R}^n$ . If  $u \in C^m(\Omega)$  and  $\alpha$  is an multi-index with  $|\alpha| \leq m$ , then

$$D^\alpha u = D^\alpha u. \quad (10.4.0.16)$$

a.e.

*Proof.* [see Mik98, 3.4] □

**Theorem 10.4.0.19.** Let  $\alpha$  be an multi-index and let  $f \in L^2(\mathbb{R}^n)$ . Then

1.  $x^\alpha \mathcal{F}(f)(x) \in L^2(\mathbb{R}^n)$  iff  $D^\alpha f \in L^2(\mathbb{R}^n)$ .
2. If  $D^\alpha f \in L^2(\mathbb{R}^n)$  then

$$\mathcal{F}(D^\alpha f)(x) = i^{|\alpha|} x^\alpha (\mathcal{F}(f))(x). \quad (10.4.0.17)$$

*Proof.* [see Mik98, 3.4] □

### 10.4.1 Some important Integrals

The following facts can be found e.g. in [Dud02]

**Fact 10.4.1.1.**

$$\int_{-\infty}^{+\infty} \frac{1}{\sigma\sqrt{2\pi}} e^{-\frac{1}{2}\left(\frac{x-\mu}{\sigma}\right)^2} dx = 1. \quad (10.4.1.1)$$

**Fact 10.4.1.2.**

$$\int_{-\infty}^{+\infty} \frac{1}{\sigma\sqrt{2\pi}} e^{ixy} e^{-\frac{1}{2}\left(\frac{x-\mu}{\sigma}\right)^2} dx = \exp\left(i\mu y - \frac{\sigma^2 y^2}{2}\right). \quad (10.4.1.2)$$

## 10.5 Theory of Distributions

Majority of theorems and definitions in this section are citations from [Rud91] and [Tre70].

In the context of topological vector spaces local base will always mean local base of open neighbourhoods of 0.

### 10.5.1 Measure Theory Preliminaries

**Theorem 10.5.1.1.** *Let  $(\Omega, \mathcal{M}, \mu)$  be a measurable space. If  $\int_E f d\mu = 0$  for any  $E \in \mathcal{M}$ , then  $f = 0$  a.e.*

*Proof.* [See Rud87, 1.39] □

**Lemma 10.5.1.2.** *Let  $(\Omega, \mathcal{M}, \mu)$  be a measurable space with  $\mu$  being  $\sigma$ -finite. If  $\int_E f d\mu = 0$  for any  $E \in \mathcal{M}$  such that  $\mu(E) < +\infty$ , then  $f = 0$  a.e.*

*Proof.* Since  $\mu$  is  $\sigma$ -finite, then we have  $\Omega = \bigcup_{n=1}^{\infty} E_n$  where  $E_n$  are pairwise disjoint and  $\mu(E_n) < +\infty$  for  $n = 1, 2, \dots$ . Take any  $A \in \mathcal{M}$ , we have

$$\int_A f d\mu = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \int_{A \cap E_n} f d\mu = 0. \quad (10.5.1.1)$$

Now we have thesis by Theorem 10.5.1.1. □

### 10.5.2 Topological Preliminaries

**Definition 10.5.2.1.** *Let  $V$  be a vector space over field  $K$ . A subset  $B \subset V$  is called **balanced** iff  $\lambda B \subset B$  for any  $\lambda \in K$  such that  $|\lambda| \leq 1$ .*

**Definition 10.5.2.2.** *Let  $V$  be a vector space over field  $K$ . A subset  $A \subset V$  is called **absorbing** iff for any  $x \in V$  there exists  $c_x > 0$  such that for all  $\lambda \in K$  such that  $|\lambda| \leq c_x$ , we have  $\lambda x \in A$ .*

**Corollary 10.5.2.3.** *Let  $V$  be a vector space. Let  $A \subset V$ . If  $0 \in \text{Int}A$ , then  $A$  is absorbing.*

**Definition 10.5.2.4.** *Let  $V$  be a vector space over field  $K \in \{\mathbb{R}, \mathbb{C}\}$ . A subset  $A \subset V$  is **convex** iff for any  $x, y \in A$ , we have  $\lambda x + (1 - \lambda)y \in A$  for any  $\lambda \in [0, 1]$ .*

**Theorem 10.5.2.5.** *Let  $V$  be a vector space and  $A$  be a subset of  $V$ . If  $A$  is convex, then for any  $\lambda_i \geq 0$  for  $i = 1, \dots, n$  such that  $\sum_{i=1}^n \lambda_i = 1$  and for any  $x_i \in A$  for  $i = 1, \dots, n$ , we have  $\sum_{i=1}^n \lambda_i x_i \in A$ .*

*Proof.* We will prove this by induction over  $n$ . For  $n = 1$  the thesis is obvious. Let's assume that thesis holds for  $n - 1$ . Take any  $\lambda_i \geq 0$  for  $i = 1, \dots, n$  such that  $\sum_{i=1}^n \lambda_i = 1$  and take any  $x_i \in A$  for  $i = 1, \dots, n$ . Let  $\lambda := \sum_{i=1}^{n-1} \lambda_i$ . Note that  $\lambda \in [0, 1]$ . By induction hypothesis  $\sum_{i=1}^{n-1} \lambda_i \lambda^{-1} x_i \in A$ . But since  $A$  is convex, we have

$$A \ni \lambda \left( \sum_{i=1}^{n-1} \lambda_i \lambda^{-1} x_i \right) + (1 - \lambda) x_n = \sum_{i=1}^{n-1} \lambda_i x_i + \lambda_n x_n = \sum_{i=1}^n \lambda_i x_i. \quad (10.5.2.1)$$

□

**Definition 10.5.2.6.** We say that  $X$  is a topological vector space iff  $X$  is equipped with topology in which addition and scalar multiplication are continuous.

We will abbreviate topological vector space as TVS. By  $L(X, Y)$  we will denote all continuous linear mappings between two TVS  $X, Y$ .

**Theorem 10.5.2.7.** If  $X$  is TVS, then  $X$  is Hausdorff iff  $\{x\}$  is closed for each  $x \in X$ .

*Proof.* [See [Rud91](#), 1.12]

□

**Definition 10.5.2.8.** Let  $X$  be a TVS. We will say that  $X$  is a **locally convex space** iff there exists a local base of convex and open sets.

**Definition 10.5.2.9.** Let  $X$  be a TVS. We say that set  $B \subset X$  is **bounded** iff for every open neighbourhood  $U$  of 0 there exists a scalar  $\lambda \geq 0$  such that  $B \subset \lambda U$ .

**Theorem 10.5.2.10.** Let  $X$  be TVS. Every convex open neighbourhood of 0 contains a convex and balanced open neighbourhood of 0.

*Proof.* [See [Rud91](#), 1.14]

□

**Corollary 10.5.2.11.** Let  $X$  be a locally convex space. Then  $X$  has a local base of convex and balanced open sets.

**Theorem 10.5.2.12.** If  $X$  is a Hausdorff TVS with countable base, then there exists a metric  $d$  in  $X$  such that

1.  $d$  is compatible with  $X$  topology,
2. the open balls centered at 0 are ballanced,

3.  $d$  is invariant: i.e.  $d(x, y) = d(x + z, y + z)$  for each  $x, y, z \in X$ .

Moreover, if  $X$  is locally convex, then  $d$  can be chosen so as to satisfy (1), (2) and (3) and also

4. Every open ball is convex.

*Proof.* [see Rud91, 1.24] □

**Definition 10.5.2.13.**  $X$  is called an  $F$ -space iff  $X$  is TVS, where topology is generated by a complete and invariant metric.

**Theorem 10.5.2.14. (The closed graph theorem)** Let  $X, Y$  be  $F$ -spaces. If  $A : X \rightarrow Y$  is a linear mapping such that  $\{(x, Ax) : x \in X \times Y\}$  is closed in  $X \times Y$ , then  $A$  is continuous.

*Proof.* [See Rud91, 2.15 The closed graph theorem] □

**Definition 10.5.2.15.**  $X$  is called a Fréchet space iff  $X$  is locally convex TVS, where topology is generated by a complete and invariant metric.

**Definition 10.5.2.16.** A seminorm on a vector space  $X$  is a function  $p : X \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  such that

1.  $p(x + y) \leq p(x) + p(y)$ ,
2.  $p(\lambda x) = |\lambda|p(x)$  for all  $x, y \in X$  and all scalars  $\lambda$ .

**Definition 10.5.2.17.** A family of seminorms  $\mathcal{P}$  on a vector space  $X$  is said to be separating if for each  $x \neq 0$  there exists  $p \in \mathcal{P}$  such that  $p(x) \neq 0$ .

**Theorem 10.5.2.18.** Let  $X$  be a vector space and  $\mathcal{P}$  be a separating family of seminorms. Let

$$V(p, n) = \{x \in X : p(x) < \frac{1}{n}\} \quad (10.5.2.2)$$

for any positive integer  $n$  and  $p \in \mathcal{P}$ . If  $\mathcal{B}$  is a collection of all finite intersections of the sets  $V(p, n)$ , then  $\mathcal{B}$  is convex balanced local base for a topology on  $X$ , which turns  $X$  into a locally convex Hausdorff TVS such that every  $p \in \mathcal{P}$  is continuous.

*Proof.* [see Rud91, 1.37] □

We will say that such a family of seminorms  $\mathcal{P}$  generates topology on  $X$ .

**Corollary 10.5.2.19.** *Let  $X$  be a vector space with topology generated by a countable family of separating seminorms  $\mathcal{P}$ , then  $x_n \rightarrow x$  iff  $p(x_n - x) \rightarrow 0$  for each  $p \in \mathcal{P}$ .*

**Theorem 10.5.2.20.** *Let  $X$  be Hausdorff TVS. For any  $A \subset X$  we define*

$$\mu_A(x) := \inf\{\lambda > 0 : x \in \lambda A\}. \quad (10.5.2.3)$$

1. *If  $p$  is a seminorm on  $X$ , then set  $B = \{x : p(x) < 1\}$  is convex, balanced, absorbing and  $p = \mu_B$ .*
2. *If  $A$  is convex absorbing and balanced, then  $\mu_A$  is a seminorm.*
3. *If  $A$  is bounded then for any  $x \in X$ ,  $\mu_A(x) = 0$  implies  $x = 0$ .*
4. *If  $X$  is a locally convex space and  $\mathcal{B}$  is a convex and balanced local base then  $\{\mu_V : V \in \mathcal{B}\}$  is a family of separating seminorms generating an original topology of  $X$ .*

*Proof.* For 1., 2. and 4. [See [Rud91](#), Seminorms and Local Convexity] We will prove 3. Take  $x \in X$  such that  $\mu_A(x) = 0$ . Let  $U$  be an arbitrary open neighbourhood of 0. Since  $A$  is bounded there exists  $\lambda \geq 0$  such that  $\lambda A \subset U$ . If  $\lambda = 0$ , then  $A = \{0\}$  and thesis is shown. Assume then that  $\lambda > 0$ . Since  $\mu_A(x) = 0$ ,  $x \in \lambda A$ . Thus  $x \in U$ . But since  $U$  was arbitrary open neighbourhood of 0 and  $X$  is Hausdorff, then  $x = 0$ .  $\square$

**Corollary 10.5.2.21.** *If  $X$  is a locally convex Hausdorff TVS, then there exists a family of separating seminorms which generates an original topology on  $X$ .*

*Proof.* This follows from Theorem [10.5.2.10](#) and Theorem [10.5.2.20](#).  $\square$

**Definition 10.5.2.22.** *Let  $X$  be a locally convex space. A family of continuous seminorms  $\mathcal{P}$  is called a **basis of continuous seminorms** iff for any continuous seminorm  $q$  on  $X$ , there exists a seminorm  $p \in \mathcal{P}$  and  $C > 0$  such that*

$$q(x) \leq Cp(x) \text{ for any } x \in X. \quad (10.5.2.4)$$

**Theorem 10.5.2.23.** *Let  $X$  be a locally convex space and  $\mathcal{P}$  a family of seminorms which generates topology on  $X$ . Let*

$$p_B(x) := \max\{p(x) : p \in B\} \quad (10.5.2.5)$$

*where  $B$  is a finite subset of  $\mathcal{P}$ . The family of all such seminorms  $p_B$  is a basis of continuous seminorms in  $X$ .*

*Proof.* [See [Tre70](#), Locally convex spaces. Seminorms.]  $\square$

**Theorem 10.5.2.24.** *If  $X$  is a locally convex space and  $\mathcal{P}$  is a basis of continuous seminorms, then the topology generated by  $\mathcal{P}$  coincides with the original topology of  $X$ .*

*Proof.* It is enough to show that given two basis of continuous seminorms  $\mathcal{P}_1$  and  $\mathcal{P}_2$  generates the same topologies on  $X$ . This is obvious considering that for any  $p_1 \in \mathcal{P}_1$  there exists  $p_2 \in \mathcal{P}_2$  and  $C > 0$  such that

$$p_1 \leq Cp_2, \quad (10.5.2.6)$$

and on the other hand for any  $q_2 \in \mathcal{P}_2$  there exists  $q_1 \in \mathcal{P}_1$  and  $K > 0$  such that

$$q_2 \leq Kq_1. \quad (10.5.2.7)$$

$\square$

**Definition 10.5.2.25.** *Let  $X$  be a vector space. By  $X^*$  we denote a space of all linear functionals.*

**Definition 10.5.2.26.** *Let  $X$  be a TVS. By  $X'$  we denote a space of all **continuous** linear functionals.*

Note that this convention is opposite to [\[Rud91\]](#).

**Definition 10.5.2.27.** *Let  $X$  be a TVS. A weak-\* topology on  $X'$  is the weakest topology for which all mappings  $X' \ni y \mapsto y(x)$  are continuous for any fixed  $x \in X$ .*

**Theorem 10.5.2.28.** *If  $X$  is a Hausdorff TVS, then  $X'$  with weak-\* topology is a locally convex Hausdorff TVS.*

*Proof.* [See [Rud91](#), 3.14]  $\square$

**Theorem 10.5.2.29.** *If  $X$  and  $Y$  are locally convex spaces, then a linear operator  $A : X \rightarrow Y$  is continuous iff for any continuous seminorm  $q$  in  $Y$ , there exists a continuous seminorm  $p$  in  $X$  such that*

$$q(Ax) \leq p(x) \text{ for any } x \in X. \quad (10.5.2.8)$$

*Proof.* [See [Tre70](#), Locally convex spaces. Seminorms.]  $\square$

**Fact 10.5.2.30.** *If  $X$  is a locally convex space, then for any  $u \in X'$ ,  $X \ni x \mapsto |u(x)|$  is a continuous seminorm.*

**Corollary 10.5.2.31.** *If  $X$  is a locally convex space and  $\mathcal{P}$  is a basis of continuous seminorms, then for each  $u \in X'$  there exists  $C > 0$  and  $p \in \mathcal{P}$  such that*

$$|u(x)| \leq Cp(x) \text{ for any } x \in X. \quad (10.5.2.9)$$

**Theorem 10.5.2.32.** *If  $X$  is a locally convex space and let  $\|\cdot\|$  be a continuous norm and let  $\mathcal{P}$  be a base of continuous seminorms in  $X$ . Then there exists a base of continuous seminorms which consists only of norms.*

*Proof.* Note that for any seminorm  $p \in \mathcal{P}$ ,  $p + \|\cdot\|$  is a norm. Take any continuous seminorm  $q$  in  $X$ . We have such  $p \in \mathcal{P}$  and  $C > 0$  that

$$q(x) \leq Cp(x) \leq C(p(x) + \|x\|). \quad (10.5.2.10)$$

Thus a family

$$\{p + \|\cdot\| : p \in \mathcal{P}\} \quad (10.5.2.11)$$

is a base of continuous seminorms on  $X$ .  $\square$

**Definition 10.5.2.33.** *Let  $X$  be a locally convex Hausdorff space and  $B$  be its bounded, convex and balanced subset. Let  $X_B$  be a linear subspace spanned by  $B$ . Let*

$$\mu_B(x) := \inf\{\lambda > 0 : x \in \lambda B\} \quad (10.5.2.12)$$

*We say that  $B$  is **infracomplete** iff  $X_B$  with norm  $\mu_B$  is a Banach space.*

**Theorem 10.5.2.34.** *Let  $X$  be a locally convex Hausdorff space and  $B$  be its bounded, convex and balanced subset. Let  $X_B$  be a linear subspace spanned by  $B$ . Then  $\mu_B$  is norm on  $X_B$ .*

*Proof.* We will first show that  $B$  is absorbing in  $X_B$ . Any  $x \in X_B$  is of the form  $x = \sum_{i=1}^n \lambda_i x_i$ . Where  $\lambda_i \neq 0$  and  $x_i \in B$  for  $i = 1, \dots, n$ . Let  $z_i := \frac{|\lambda_i|}{\lambda_i} x_i$ . Since  $B$  is balanced,  $z_i \in B$  for  $i = 1, \dots, n$ . Thus

$$x = \sum_{i=1}^n \lambda_i \frac{\overline{\lambda_i}}{|\lambda_i|} z_i = \sum_{i=1}^n |\lambda_i| z_i. \quad (10.5.2.13)$$

Let  $\lambda_0 := (\sum_{i=1}^n |\lambda_i|)^{-1}$ . Since  $B$  is convex, by Theorem 10.5.2.5, we have  $\lambda_0 x \in B$ . Take any  $\lambda \in \mathbb{C}$  such that  $|\lambda| < \lambda_0$ . Obviously  $|\frac{\lambda}{\lambda_0}| < 1$ . Since  $B$  is balanced,

$$B \ni \frac{\lambda}{\lambda_0} \lambda_0 x = \lambda x. \quad (10.5.2.14)$$

We showed that  $B$  is absorbing in  $X_B$ . Now, by Theorem 10.5.2.20  $\mu_B$  is a norm on  $X_B$ .  $\square$



**Definition 10.5.2.35.** Let  $X$  be a topological space and  $Y$  be a TVS. Let  $F$  be a set of functions from  $X$  to  $Y$ . We will say that the set  $F$  is **equicontinuous** at point  $x_0 \in X$  iff for any open  $V$  neighbourhood of  $0$ , we have an open  $U$  neighbourhood of  $x_0$  such that

$$f(x) - f(x_0) \in V \quad (10.5.2.15)$$

for any  $f \in F$  and any  $x \in U$ .

We will say that  $F$  is equicontinuous iff  $F$  is equicontinuous at each  $x \in X$ .

**Definition 10.5.2.36.** Let  $X, Y$  be two locally convex Hausdorff spaces and  $A \in L(X, Y)$ . We will say that  $A$  is **nuclear** iff there is an equicontinuous sequence  $\{f_k\}$  in  $X'$ , a sequence  $\{y_k\}$  contained in a convex balanced infracomplete bounded subset  $B$  of  $Y$  and a complex sequence  $\{\lambda_k\}$  with  $\sum_{k=1}^{\infty} |\lambda_k| < +\infty$  such that

$$Ax = \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \lambda_k f_k(x) y_k. \quad (10.5.2.16)$$

**Theorem 10.5.2.37.** Let  $H_1$  and  $H_2$  be Hilbert spaces and  $A \in L(H_1, H_2)$ .  $A$  is nuclear iff there is a sequence of orthonormal vectors  $\{e_k\}$  in  $H_1$ , a sequence of orthonormal vectors  $\{y_k\}$  in  $H_2$  and a complex sequence  $\{\lambda_k\}$  with  $\sum_{k=1}^{\infty} |\lambda_k| < +\infty$  such that

$$Ax = \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \lambda_k (x|e_k) y_k. \quad (10.5.2.17)$$

*Proof.* [See [Tre70](#), 48.7] □

### 10.5.3 Regular Distributions

Let  $C_0^\infty(\Omega)$  denotes all functions  $\phi \in C^\infty(\Omega)$  such that its support i.e.  $\text{supp}(\phi) = \text{Clo}(\{x \in \Omega : \phi(x) \neq 0\})$  is compact. We will use traditional notation  $\mathcal{D}(\Omega) := C_0^\infty(\Omega)$ .

We will construct certain topology on  $\mathcal{D}(\Omega)$ .

**Definition 10.5.3.1.** Let  $\Omega$  be an open subset of  $\mathbb{R}^n$  and let  $K \subset \Omega$  be compact.

$$\mathcal{D}_K(\Omega) := \{\phi \in \mathcal{D}(\Omega) : \text{supp}(\phi) \subset K\}. \quad (10.5.3.1)$$

Let's introduce norms

**Definition 10.5.3.2.**

$$\|\phi\|_N := \max\{|D^\alpha \phi(x)| : x \in \Omega, |\alpha| \leq N\} \quad (10.5.3.2)$$

for any  $\phi \in \mathcal{D}(\Omega)$  and  $N = 0, 1, \dots$ .

Recall that for multindex  $\alpha = (\alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_2)$ ,  $|\alpha| = \alpha_1 + \dots + \alpha_2$ .

**Definition 10.5.3.3.** Let  $\Omega$  be an open subset of  $\mathbb{R}^n$  and let  $K \subset \Omega$  be compact. We define a Hausdorff TVS  $(\mathcal{D}_K(\Omega), \tau_K)$ , where  $\tau_K$  is a topology generated by a family of norms  $\|\cdot\|_N$  for  $N = 0, 1, \dots$  like in Theorem 10.5.2.18.

**Corollary 10.5.3.4.** Let  $\Omega$  be an open subset of  $\mathbb{R}^n$  and let  $K \subset \Omega$  be compact.  $(\mathcal{D}_K(\Omega), \tau_K)$  is a Fréchet space.

*Proof.* [See Rud91, 1.46] □

**Definition 10.5.3.5.** Let  $\Omega$  be an open subset of  $\mathbb{R}^n$ . We define a topological space  $(\mathcal{D}(\Omega), \tau)$ , where  $\tau$  is a topology generated by a local base of all convex and balanced sets  $W \subset \mathcal{D}(\Omega)$ , such that  $W \cap K \in \tau_K$  for every compact  $K \subset \Omega$ .

**Theorem 10.5.3.6.** Let  $\Omega$  be an open subset of  $\mathbb{R}^n$ .  $(\mathcal{D}(\Omega), \tau)$  is a locally convex Hausdorff TVS.

*Proof.* [See Rud91, 6.4] □

**Definition 10.5.3.7.** Let  $\Omega$  be an open subset of  $\mathbb{R}^n$ . By  $\mathcal{D}'(\Omega)$  we denote a space of all linear functionals on  $\mathcal{D}(\Omega)$  which are continuous in  $\tau$ . Elements of  $\mathcal{D}'(\Omega)$  are called **distributions**.

**Theorem 10.5.3.8.** Let  $\Omega$  be an open subset of  $\mathbb{R}^n$ . If  $\Lambda$  is a linear functional on  $\mathcal{D}(\Omega)$  the following conditions are equivalent:

1.  $\Lambda \in \mathcal{D}'(\Omega)$
2. For every compact  $K \subset \Omega$  there exists a positive integer  $N$  and a positive constant  $C < +\infty$  such that

$$|\Lambda \phi| \leq C \|\phi\|_N \quad (10.5.3.3)$$

for every  $\phi \in \mathcal{D}_K(\Omega)$ .

*Proof.* [see Rud91, 6.8] □

**Definition 10.5.3.9.** Let  $\Omega$  be an open subset of  $\mathbb{R}^n$ . Let  $\Lambda \in \mathcal{D}'(\Omega)$ . The order of  $\Lambda$  is a minimal positive integer  $N$  for which for every compact  $K \subset \Omega$  there exists a positive constant  $C < +\infty$  such that

$$|\Lambda\phi| \leq C\|\phi\|_N \quad (10.5.3.4)$$

for every  $\phi \in \mathcal{D}_K(\Omega)$ . If such  $N$  doesn't exist, we say that  $\Lambda$  is of infinite order.

By  $L_{\text{loc}}(\Omega)$  we denote a space of all functions  $f$  for which  $\int_K |f| < +\infty$  for any compact  $K \subset \Omega$ .

**Theorem 10.5.3.10.** Let  $\Omega$  be an open subset of  $\mathbb{R}^n$ . If  $f \in L_{\text{loc}}(\Omega)$  and

$$\Lambda_f(\phi) := \int_{\Omega} f(x)\phi(x)dx \text{ for any } \phi \in \mathcal{D}(\Omega), \quad (10.5.3.5)$$

then  $\Lambda \in \mathcal{D}'(\Omega)$ .

*Proof.* [see [Rud91](#), 6.11] □

We usually identify distribution  $\Lambda_f$  with function  $f$  and we say that such distributions “are” functions [see [Rud91](#), 6.11].

**Theorem 10.5.3.11.** Let  $\Omega$  be an open subset of  $\mathbb{R}^n$ . If  $K \subset \Omega$  and  $K$  is compact, then there exists  $\phi \in C_0^\infty(\Omega)$  such that  $\phi(x) \in [0, 1]$  for all  $x \in \Omega$  and  $\phi(z) = 1$  for all  $z \in K$ .

*Proof.* [see [Mik98](#), Chapter 3. Sobolev Spaces. 3.1. Introduction] □

**Definition 10.5.3.12.** Let  $\Omega$  be an open subset of  $\mathbb{R}^n$ . We say that  $\Lambda \in \mathcal{D}'(\Omega)$  vanishes on an open  $\omega \subset \Omega$  iff we have  $\Lambda\phi = 0$  for every  $\phi \in \mathcal{D}(\Omega)$  such that  $\text{supp}(\phi) \subset \omega$ .

**Definition 10.5.3.13.** Let  $\Omega$  be an open subset of  $\mathbb{R}^n$ . Let  $\Lambda \in \mathcal{D}'(\Omega)$ . We define

$$\text{supp}(\Lambda) := \Omega \setminus \bigcup \{\omega \subset \Omega : \omega \text{ is open and } \Lambda \text{ vanishes on } \omega\}. \quad (10.5.3.6)$$

**Definition 10.5.3.14.** (Dirac delta) Let  $x \in \mathbb{R}^n$ . We define a functional  $\delta_x : \mathcal{D}(\mathbb{R}^n) \rightarrow \mathbb{C}$  as

$$\delta_x(\phi) := \phi(x). \quad (10.5.3.7)$$

$\delta_0$  is called Dirac delta.

**Theorem 10.5.3.15.** Let  $x \in \mathbb{R}^n$ , then  $\delta_x \in \mathcal{D}'(\Omega)$  and  $\delta_x$  is of order 0.

*Proof.* Take any compact  $K \subset \mathbb{R}^n$ . Take any  $\phi \in D_K(\mathbb{R}^n)$ . We have

$$|\delta_x(\phi)| = |\phi(x)| \leq \|\phi\|_0. \quad (10.5.3.8)$$

Thus by Theorem 10.5.3.8  $\delta_x \in \mathcal{D}'(\Omega)$  and by Definition 10.5.3.9  $\delta_x$  is of order 0.  $\square$

**Theorem 10.5.3.16.** *Let  $x \in \mathbb{R}^n$ , then  $\text{supp}(\delta_x) = \{x\}$ .*

*Proof.* It is enough to show that for any open  $\omega \subset \mathbb{R}^n$ , we have  $\delta_x$  vanishes on  $\omega$  iff  $x \notin \omega$ . Assume that  $\delta_x$  vanishes on  $\omega$ . If  $x \in \omega$  we can choose  $\phi \in \mathcal{D}(\mathbb{R}^n)$  such as  $\phi(x) \neq 0$  and  $\text{supp}(\phi) \subset \omega$ , but as  $\delta_x$  vanishes on  $\omega$ , we must have  $0 = \delta_x(\phi) = \phi(x)$ . Contradiction, thus  $x \notin \omega$ . Assume on the other hand that  $x \notin \omega$ . Take any  $\phi \in \mathcal{D}(\mathbb{R}^n)$  such that  $\text{supp}(\phi) \subset \omega$ , then obviously  $0 = \phi(x) = \delta_x(\phi)$ . Thus  $\delta_x$  vanishes on  $\omega$ .  $\square$

## 10.5.4 Tempered Distributions

**Definition 10.5.4.1.**

$$\|\phi\|_N^S := \sup_{|\alpha| \leq N} \sup_{x \in \mathbb{R}^n} (1 + |x|^2)^N |D^\alpha \phi(x)| \quad (10.5.4.1)$$

for any  $\phi \in S_n$ .

Note that condition 10.4.0.1 in the Definition 10.4.0.1 of  $S_n$  is equivalent with the requirement that  $\|\phi\|_N^S$  is finite for all  $N = 0, 1, \dots$

**Definition 10.5.4.2.** *We equip  $S_n$  in topology generated by a family of norms  $\|\phi\|_N^S$  for  $N = 0, 1, \dots$*

**Theorem 10.5.4.3.** *If  $p \geq 1$ , then the identity mapping  $i : S_n \rightarrow L^p(\mathbb{R}^n)$  is continuous.*

*Proof.* [See Geo15, Problem 1.30]  $\square$

**Theorem 10.5.4.4.** *The following statements are true:*

1.  $S_n$  is a Fréchet space.
2. The Fourier transform  $\mathcal{F} : S_n \rightarrow S_n$  is a continuous linear transformation.

*Proof.* [see Rud91, 7.4]  $\square$

**Theorem 10.5.4.5.** *The following statemts are true:*

1.  $\mathcal{D}(\mathbb{R}^n)$  is dense in  $S_n$ .
2. Identity mapping from  $\mathcal{D}(\mathbb{R}^n)$  to  $S_n$  is continuous.

*Proof.* [see Rud91, 7.10] □

Let  $S'_n$  be a space of all continuous linear functionals on  $S_n$ .

**Theorem 10.5.4.6.** *For any  $L \in S'_n$  there exists  $u_L \in \mathcal{D}'(\mathbb{R}^n)$  such that*

$$u_L = L \circ i \quad (10.5.4.2)$$

where  $i : \mathcal{D}(\mathbb{R}^n) \rightarrow S_n$  is an identity mapping.

*Proof.* [see Rud91, 7.11] □

**Definition 10.5.4.7.** *Any  $u_L$  from Theorem 10.5.4.6 is called tempered distribution.*

Note that  $L$  is a unique extension of  $u_L$  to  $S_n$ . We will sometimes call tempered distributions elements of  $S'_n$ .

**Theorem 10.5.4.8.** *There exists an unique continuous mapping  $\Lambda : S_n \rightarrow S'_n$  ( $S'_n$  with weak-\* topology) such that*

$$\Lambda_\phi(\psi) = \int_{\mathbb{R}^n} \phi(x)\psi(x)dx \quad (10.5.4.3)$$

for any  $\phi \in S_n$  and  $\psi \in S_n$ .

*Proof.* Let's assume equation (10.5.4.3) as definition of  $\Lambda$ . Note that  $|\Lambda_\phi(\psi)| \leq \|\phi\|_{L^2}\|\psi\|_{L^2}$  for any  $\phi, \psi \in S_n$ . By Theorem 10.5.4.3  $S_n$  is continuously embedded in  $L^2(\mathbb{R}^n)$ . Thus  $\Lambda_\phi \in S'_n$  for any  $\phi \in S_n$ . Now take any  $\phi_n \rightarrow \phi$  in  $S_n$ . We have  $\phi_n \rightarrow \phi$  in  $L^2$  and  $|\Lambda_{\phi_n}(\psi) - \Lambda_\phi(\psi)| \leq \|\phi_n - \phi\|_{L^2}\|\psi\|_{L^2}$ . Thus  $\Lambda_{\phi_n} \rightarrow \Lambda_\phi$  in  $S'_n$  with weak-\* topology. □

**Theorem 10.5.4.9.** *If  $u \in \mathcal{D}'(\mathbb{R}^n)$  and  $\text{supp}(u)$  is compact, then  $u$  is a tempered distribution.*

*Proof.* [see Rud91, 7.12] □

**Corollary 10.5.4.10.** *Let  $x \in \mathbb{R}^n$ .  $\delta_x$  is a tempered distribution and as extended to  $S_n$  it's still*

$$\delta_x(\phi) = \phi(x) \quad (10.5.4.4)$$

for every  $\phi \in S_n$ .

**Example 10.5.4.11.** Let  $\alpha \in \mathbb{R}^n$  and  $u_\alpha \in \mathcal{D}'(\mathbb{R}^n)$  be a distribution identified with the function  $\mathbb{R}^n \ni x \mapsto e^{-i\alpha \cdot x}$ . Then  $u_\alpha$  is a tempered distribution. In this sense  $e^{-i\alpha \cdot x} \in S'_n$ .

*Proof.* Let's define a linear functional  $\tilde{u}_\alpha$  on  $S_n$ .

$$\tilde{u}_\alpha(\phi) := (2\pi)^{\frac{n}{2}} \mathcal{F}(\phi)(\alpha) = \int_{\mathbb{R}^n} e^{-i\alpha \cdot x} \phi(x) dx. \quad (10.5.4.5)$$

for all  $\phi \in S_n$ .  $\tilde{u}_\alpha$  is well defined because Fourier transform exists for all  $\phi$  in  $S_n$ . Because  $\mathcal{F} : S_n \rightarrow S_n$  is continuous, for any  $\phi_m \rightarrow \phi$ ,  $\mathcal{F}(\phi_m) \rightarrow \mathcal{F}(\phi)$  uniformly. Thus  $\tilde{u}_\alpha(\phi_m) \rightarrow \tilde{u}_\alpha(\phi)$ . Hence  $\tilde{u}_\alpha \in S'_n$ . By definition  $\tilde{u}_\alpha$  is an extension of  $u_\alpha$ , thus  $u_\alpha$  is a tempered distribution.  $\square$

Now we will extend Fourier transform on  $S'_n$ .

**Definition 10.5.4.12.** Let  $u \in S'_n$ .

$$\mathcal{F}(u)(\phi) := u(\mathcal{F}(\phi)) \quad (10.5.4.6)$$

for all  $\phi \in S_n$ .

**Fact 10.5.4.13.** If  $u, v \in S_n$ , then

$$\int \mathcal{F}(u)v = \int u\mathcal{F}(v). \quad (10.5.4.7)$$

*Proof.* Follows from Theorem 10.4.0.10 and Theorem 10.4.0.9. Indeed,  $\int fg = \int f\bar{g} = \int \mathcal{F}(f)\overline{\mathcal{F}(\bar{g})} = \int \mathcal{F}(f)\mathcal{F}^{-1}(g)$ . Now substitute  $f = v$  and  $g = \mathcal{F}(u)$ .  $\square$

From the fact above, Definition 10.5.4.12 is consistent with Fourier transform of function in case  $u \in S'_n$  is a function, because for any  $\phi \in S_n$

$$u(\mathcal{F}(\phi)) = \int u\mathcal{F}(\phi) = \int \mathcal{F}(u)\phi. \quad (10.5.4.8)$$

**Theorem 10.5.4.14.** If  $\mathcal{F}$  is a Fourier transform defined in Definition 10.5.4.12,  $\mathcal{F} : S'_n \rightarrow S'_n$  is a linear mapping, continuous in weak-\* topology.

*Proof.* [see Rud91, 7.15]  $\square$

### 10.5.5 Schwartz Kernel Theorems

**Definition 10.5.5.1.** Let  $X, Y$  be any vector spaces of functions valued in  $\mathbb{K} \in \{\mathbb{R}, \mathbb{C}\}$ . Let  $U : X \times Y \rightarrow \mathbb{K}$ . We will define operation:

$$(U \bullet \phi)(\psi) := U(\phi \otimes \psi) \quad (10.5.5.1)$$

for any  $\phi \in X$  and any  $\psi \in Y$ .

The following two theorems are corollaries from [Tre70, 51. Examples of Nuclear Spaces. The Kernels Theorem]

**Theorem 10.5.5.2.** Let  $\Omega_1$  be an open subset of  $\mathbb{R}^{k_1}$  and  $\Omega_2$  be an open subset of  $\mathbb{R}^{k_2}$ . Let  $L : \mathcal{D}(\Omega_1) \rightarrow \mathcal{D}'(\Omega_2)$  be linear. The following two statements are equivalent.

1.  $L$  is continuous with  $\mathcal{D}'(\Omega_2)$  equiped with weak-\* topology.
2. There exists unique  $U \in \mathcal{D}'(\Omega_1 \times \Omega_2)$  such that

$$L\phi = U \bullet \phi. \quad (10.5.5.2)$$

**Theorem 10.5.5.3.** Let  $L : S_{k_1} \rightarrow S'_{k_2}$  be linear. The following two statements are equivalent.

1.  $L$  is continuous with  $S_{k_2}$  equiped with weak-\* topology.
2. There exists unique  $U \in S'_{k_1+k_2}$  such that

$$L\phi = U \bullet \phi. \quad (10.5.5.3)$$

### 10.5.6 Properties of $\delta_0$

**Example 10.5.6.1.** Let  $f_m : \mathbb{R}^n \rightarrow \mathbb{C}$  be a sequence of functions such that

$$f_m(\alpha) = (2\pi)^{-n} \int_{K_m} e^{-ix \cdot \alpha} dx, \quad (10.5.6.1)$$

where  $K_m$  is a sequence of compact sets such that  $K_m \nearrow \mathbb{R}^n$ . Then

$$\lim_{m \rightarrow \infty} f_m = \delta_0 \text{ in } \mathcal{D}'(\mathbb{R}^n) \text{ with weak-* topology.} \quad (10.5.6.2)$$

*Proof.* Let  $\Lambda_m \in \mathcal{D}'(\mathbb{R}^n)$  be a distribution corresponding to  $f_n$ . Note that

$$\int_K \int_{K_m} |e^{-ix \cdot \alpha}| dx d\alpha = \int_K dx \int_{K_m} d\alpha < +\infty, \quad (10.5.6.3)$$

for any compact  $K \subset \mathbb{R}^n$ . Thus by Theorem 10.2.0.10 (Fubini theorem),  $f_n \in L_{\text{loc}}(\mathbb{R}^n)$ .

Take any  $\phi \in \mathcal{D}(\mathbb{R}^n)$ . Note that

$$\Lambda_m(\phi) = (2\pi)^{-n} \int_{\mathbb{R}^n} \left( \int_{K_m} e^{-ix \cdot \alpha} dx \right) \phi(\alpha) d\alpha. \quad (10.5.6.4)$$

Since

$$\int_{\mathbb{R}^n} \left( \int_{K_m} |e^{-ix \cdot \alpha}| dx \right) \phi(\alpha) d\alpha = \int_{K_m} dx \int_{\mathbb{R}^n} \phi(\alpha) d\alpha < +\infty, \quad (10.5.6.5)$$

then again by Theorem 10.2.0.10 (Fubini theorem)

$$\Lambda_m(\phi) = (2\pi)^{-\frac{n}{2}} \int_{K_m} \mathcal{F}(\phi)(x) dx = (2\pi)^{-\frac{n}{2}} \int_{K_m} e^{ix \cdot 0} \mathcal{F}(\phi)(x) dx. \quad (10.5.6.6)$$

Hence

$$\lim_{m \rightarrow \infty} \Lambda_m(\phi) = \mathcal{F}^{-1}(\mathcal{F}(\phi))(0) = \phi(0). \quad (10.5.6.7)$$

Thus by Definition 10.5.3.14, we have thesis.  $\square$

**Lemma 10.5.6.2.** *If  $f_n \in C(\mathbb{R}^k)$  is a sequence of non-negative real functions (i.e.  $f_n \geq 0$ ) for which  $\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} f_n = \delta_0$  in  $\mathcal{D}'(\mathbb{R}^k)$  with weak-\* topology, then for each compact  $K$  such that  $0 \notin K$  we have*

$$\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \int_K f_n = 0, \quad (10.5.6.8)$$

*Proof.* Since  $\mathbb{R}^k$  is  $T_3$ , we have an open  $\Omega$  such that  $K \subset \Omega$  and  $0 \notin \Omega$ . By Theorem 10.5.3.11, we have  $\phi \in C_0^\infty(\mathbb{R}^k)$  such that  $0 \leq \phi \leq 1$ ,  $\text{supp}(\phi) \subset \Omega$  and  $\phi(x) = 1$  for all  $x \in K$ . Since  $f_n \geq 0$  and  $\phi \geq 0$  we have

$$0 \leq \int_K f_n = \int_K f_n \phi \leq \int_{\mathbb{R}^k} f_n \phi \rightarrow \phi(0) = 0. \quad (10.5.6.9)$$

$\square$

**Lemma 10.5.6.3.** *If  $f_n \in C(\mathbb{R}^k)$  is a sequence of non-negative real functions (i.e.  $f_n \geq 0$ ) for which  $\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} f_n = \delta_0$  in  $\mathcal{D}'(\mathbb{R}^k)$  with weak-\* topology, then for each open  $\Omega \subset \mathbb{R}^k$  such that  $0 \in \Omega$  we have*

$$\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \int_\Omega f_n = 1, \quad (10.5.6.10)$$



*Proof.* Choose an open and bounded  $U$  such that  $\text{Clo}(\Omega) \subset U$ . By Theorem 10.5.3.11 we have  $\phi \in C_0^\infty(\mathbb{R}^k)$  such that  $0 \leq \phi \leq 1$ ,  $\text{supp}(\phi) \subset U$  and  $\phi(x) = 1$  for all  $x \in \text{Clo}(\Omega)$ . Let  $A_n = \int_{\mathbb{R}^k} f_n \phi$ . Since  $\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} f_n = \delta_0$  in  $\mathcal{D}'(\mathbb{R}^k)$  with weak-\* topology,  $A_n \rightarrow \phi(0) = 1$ . Note that

$$A_n = \int_{\Omega} f_n + \int_{\text{Clo}(U) \setminus \Omega} f_n \phi. \quad (10.5.6.11)$$

Thus

$$A_n - \int_{\Omega} f_n = \int_{\text{Clo}(U) \setminus \Omega} f_n \phi \leq \int_{\text{Clo}(U) \setminus \Omega} f_n \rightarrow 0. \quad (10.5.6.12)$$

We have the convergence above by Lemma 10.5.6.2. Thus

$$\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \int_{\Omega} f_n = 1. \quad (10.5.6.13)$$

□

## 10.6 Holomorphic Functions

In this section we will follow approach from [Rud87]. Any proofs for theorems in this section, if not mentioned explicitly, can be found in [Rud87][10].

**Definition 10.6.0.1.**

$$D(a, r) = \{z \in \mathbb{C} : |z - a| < r\}, \quad (10.6.0.1)$$

$$\bar{D}(a, r) = \{z \in \mathbb{C} : |z - a| \leq r\}. \quad (10.6.0.2)$$

**Theorem 10.6.0.2.** For each sequence  $c_n \in \mathbb{C}$ , for  $R \in [0, +\infty]$  given by

$$R = \frac{1}{\limsup_{n \rightarrow \infty} |c_n|^{1/n}} \quad (10.6.0.3)$$

the power series

$$\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} c_n (z - a)^n \quad (10.6.0.4)$$

converges absolutely and uniformly in  $\bar{D}(a, r)$  for any  $r < R$  and diverges for any  $z \notin \bar{D}(a, R)$ .

*Proof.* For proof, see e.g. [Mau76][V.5].  $\square$

**Definition 10.6.0.3.** Let  $\Omega \subset \mathbb{C}$  and  $f : \Omega \rightarrow \mathbb{C}$ . We say that  $f$  is representable as power series in  $\Omega$  if and only if for each  $D(a, r) \subset \Omega$  there exists a sequence  $c_n \in \mathbb{C}$  such that

$$f(z) = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} c_n (z - a)^n \quad (10.6.0.5)$$

for each  $z \in D(a, r)$ .

**Definition 10.6.0.4 (Holomorphic function).** Let  $\Omega \subset \mathbb{C}$  and  $f : \Omega \rightarrow \mathbb{C}$ . We say that  $f$  is holomorphic in  $\Omega$  if and only if the limit

$$\lim_{\Omega \ni z \rightarrow z_0} \frac{f(z) - f(z_0)}{z - z_0} \quad (10.6.0.6)$$

exists for each  $z \in \Omega$ . A set of all holomorphic functions in  $\Omega$  will be denoted as  $H(\Omega)$ .

**Theorem 10.6.0.5.** If  $f$  is representable as power series in  $\Omega$ , then  $f \in H(\Omega)$  and a derivative  $f'$  is also representable as power series in  $\Omega$ . If

$$f(z) = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} c_n (z - a)^n \quad (10.6.0.7)$$

for  $z \in D(a, r)$ , then

$$f'(z) = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} n c_n (z - a)^{n-1} \quad (10.6.0.8)$$

for  $z \in D(a, r)$ .

We will slightly abuse notation treating  $\Gamma$  once as parametrised path (i.e. a continuous and piecewise  $C^1$  function  $\Gamma : [0, 1] \rightarrow \mathbb{C}$ ), other times as a set of points which belong to that path (i.e.  $\Gamma([0, 1])$ ). In majority of situations this does not lead to any serious disambiguity.

A parametrised path  $\Gamma(\theta) = a + re^{i\theta}$  is called a positively oriented circle. Note that in an usual convention of drawing axes, this means counterclockwise oriented.

**Theorem 10.6.0.6.** Let  $\Gamma$  be a closed path in  $\mathbb{C}$  and  $\Omega = \mathbb{C} \setminus \Gamma$  and

$$\text{Ind}_{\Gamma}(z) = \frac{1}{2\pi i} \int_{\Gamma} \frac{d\gamma}{\gamma - z} \text{ for } z \in \Omega. \quad (10.6.0.9)$$

Then  $\text{Ind}_{\Gamma}$  is an integer-valued function, constant on each connected component of  $\Omega$  and  $\text{Ind}_{\Gamma} = 0$  in unbounded connected component of  $\Omega$ .

**Theorem 10.6.0.7.** *If  $\Gamma(\theta) = a + re^{i\theta}$  (i.e.  $\Gamma$  is a positively oriented circle), then*

$$\text{Ind}_\Gamma(z) = \begin{cases} 1 & \text{for } |z - a| < r, \\ 0 & \text{for } |z - a| > r. \end{cases} \quad (10.6.0.10)$$

**Theorem 10.6.0.8.** *Let  $\Omega \subset \mathbb{C}$  be a convex open set and let  $\Gamma$  be a closed path in  $\Omega$ . If  $f \in H(\Omega)$  and  $z \in \Omega \setminus \Gamma$ , then*

$$f(z) \cdot \text{Ind}_\Gamma(z) = \frac{1}{2\pi i} \int_\Gamma \frac{f(\gamma)}{\gamma - z} d\gamma. \quad (10.6.0.11)$$

## 10.7 Tensor Product of Hilbert Spaces (first approach)

We will briefly summarize a construction of tensor product of Hilbert spaces from [KR83]. In this section, we are not very precise if Hilbert spaces are separable or not. This should be fixed in subsequent revisions and editions, but for now assume that all Hilbert spaces in this section are separable.

**Theorem 10.7.0.1.** *Let  $\{H_i\}_{i=1}^n$  be Hilbert spaces. Let  $l : \Pi_{i=1}^n H_i \rightarrow \mathbb{C}$  be a bounded multi-linear functional. then the sum (finite or infinite)*

$$\sum_{(y_1, \dots, y_n) \in Y_1 \times \dots \times Y_n} |l(y_1, \dots, y_n)|^2 \quad (10.7.0.1)$$

*doesn't depend on choice of orthonormal bases  $Y_1, \dots, Y_n$ , where  $Y_i$  is an orthonormal base of  $H_i$ .*

*Proof.* [see [KR83, 2.6 Constructions with Hilbert Spaces] □

In the context of the above theorem, we can correctly define

$$\|l\|_2 := \sum_{(y_1, \dots, y_n) \in Y_1 \times \dots \times Y_n} |l(y_1, \dots, y_n)|^2. \quad (10.7.0.2)$$

**Definition 10.7.0.2.** *A bounded multi-linear functional  $l : \Pi_{i=1}^n H_i \rightarrow \mathbb{C}$  is a Hilbert-Schmidt functional if the sum in (10.7.0.1) is finite.  $HS(\Pi_{i=1}^n H_i)$  is a space of all Hilbert-Schmidt functionals.*

**Theorem 10.7.0.3.** *Let  $\{H_i\}_{i=1}^n$  be Hilbert spaces.  $HS(\Pi_{i=1}^n H_i)$  is a Hilbert space with an inner product*

$$\langle l_1, l_2 \rangle := \sum_{(y_1, \dots, y_n) \in Y_1 \times \dots \times Y_n} l_1(y_1, \dots, y_n) \overline{l_2(y_1, \dots, y_n)}, \quad (10.7.0.3)$$

where  $Y_i$  is an orthonormal base of  $H_i$ . The sum in (10.7.0.3) is absolutely convergent and doesn't depend on choice of orthonormal bases  $Y_1, \dots, Y_n$ .

*Proof.* [see KR83, 2.6 Constructions with Hilbert Spaces] □

**Definition 10.7.0.4.** Let  $\{H_i\}_{i=1}^n$  be Hilbert spaces. Let  $H$  be a Hilbert space. A bounded multi-linear mapping  $L : \Pi_{i=1}^n H_i \rightarrow H$  is a weak Hilbert-Schmidt mapping if the following conditions hold.

1. For each  $u \in H$  a functional  $L_u$ , defined as

$$L_u(y_1, \dots, y_n) = \langle L(y_1, \dots, y_n), u \rangle, \quad (10.7.0.4)$$

is a Hilbert-Schmidt functional.

2. There exists  $c \geq 0$  such that  $\|L_u\|_2 \leq c\|u\|$  for each  $u \in H$ .

Moreover we define

$$\|L\|_2 := \inf\{c \geq 0 : \|L_u\|_2 \leq c\|u\| \text{ for each } u \in H\}. \quad (10.7.0.5)$$

**Theorem 10.7.0.5.** Let  $\{H_i\}_{i=1}^n$  be Hilbert spaces.

1. There exists a Hilbert space  $H$  and a weak Hilbert-Schmidt mapping  $p : \Pi_{i=1}^n H_i \rightarrow H$ , such that for any Hilbert space  $K$  and any weak Hilbert-Schmidt mapping  $L : \Pi_{i=1}^n H_i \rightarrow K$ , there exists  $T \in \mathcal{B}(H, K)$  such that

$$L = Tp. \quad (10.7.0.6)$$

2. If there exists  $p'$  and  $H'$  with properties attributed in 1. to  $p$  and  $H$ , there exists an unitary mapping  $U : H \rightarrow H'$  such that

$$p' = Up. \quad (10.7.0.7)$$

- 3.

$$\langle p(x_1, \dots, x_n), p(z_1, \dots, z_n) \rangle = \Pi_{i=1}^n \langle x_i, z_i \rangle \quad (10.7.0.8)$$

for any  $x_i, z_i \in H_i$  for  $i = 1, \dots, n$  and

$$\{p(y_1, \dots, y_n) : (y_1, \dots, y_n) \in Y_1 \times \dots \times Y_n\} \quad (10.7.0.9)$$

is an orthonormal basis of  $H$ , where  $Y_i$  is an orthonormal basis of  $H_i$  for  $i = 1, \dots, n$ .

*Proof.* [see KR83, 2.6 Constructions with Hilbert Spaces] □

**Definition 10.7.0.6.** *Being in the context of the above theorem, we define*

$$H_1 \hat{\otimes} \dots \hat{\otimes} H_n := H \quad (10.7.0.10)$$

and

$$x_1 \otimes \dots \otimes x_n := p(x_1, \dots, x_n). \quad (10.7.0.11)$$

We will write also  $\hat{\bigotimes}_{i=1}^n H_i$ .

**Theorem 10.7.0.7.** *Let  $\{H_i\}_{i=1}^n$  be Hilbert spaces.*

1.  $\hat{\bigotimes}_{i=1}^n H_i$  is a Hilbert space.

2. A mapping

$$\Pi_{i=1}^n H_i \ni (x_1, \dots, x_n) \mapsto x_1 \otimes \dots \otimes x_n \in \hat{\bigotimes}_{i=1}^n H_i \quad (10.7.0.12)$$

is multi-linear.

3.

$$\langle x_1 \otimes \dots \otimes x_n, z_1 \otimes \dots \otimes z_n \rangle = \prod_{i=1}^n \langle x_i, z_i \rangle \quad (10.7.0.13)$$

for any  $x_i, z_i \in H_i$  for  $i = 1, \dots, n$ .

4.

$$\{y_1 \otimes \dots \otimes y_n : (y_1, \dots, y_n) \in Y_1 \times \dots \times Y_n\} \quad (10.7.0.14)$$

is an orthonormal basis of  $\hat{\bigotimes}_{i=1}^n H_i$ , where  $Y_i$  is an orthonormal basis of  $H_i$  for  $i = 1, \dots, n$ .

There are many alternative ways of introducing tensor product of Hilbert Spaces (e.g [see [Wei80](#), 3.4 Tensor products of Hilbert spaces] – through algebraic tensor product and then completion), however they always lead to the Theorem 10.7.0.7. Let's reserve symbol  $\otimes$  for algebraic tensor product, while we will use  $\hat{\otimes}$  for completion. In this sense  $\bigotimes_{i=1}^n H_i$  is a dense subspace of  $\hat{\bigotimes}_{i=1}^n H_i$ .

**Definition 10.7.0.8.** *Let  $\{H_i\}_{i=1}^n$  be Hilbert spaces and let  $A_i$  with  $\mathcal{D}(A_i) \subset H_i$  be linear operators.*

$$\mathcal{D}(A_1 \otimes \dots \otimes A_n) := \mathcal{D}(A_1) \otimes \dots \otimes \mathcal{D}(A_n) \quad (10.7.0.15)$$

and

$$(A_1 \otimes \dots \otimes A_n) \left( \sum_{i=1}^m x_i^1 \otimes \dots \otimes x_i^n \right) := \sum_{i=1}^m A_1 x_i^1 \otimes \dots \otimes A_n x_i^n \quad (10.7.0.16)$$

for any integer  $m$  and any  $(x_i^1, \dots, x_i^n) \in \prod_{k=1}^n \mathcal{D}(A_k)$  for  $i = 1, \dots, m$ .

We can prove that the definition is correct by similar argument as in [see [Wei80](#), 8.5 Analytic vectors and tensor products of self-adjoint operators].

**Definition 10.7.0.9.** Let  $\{H_i\}_{i=1}^n$  be Hilbert spaces and let  $A_i$  with  $\mathcal{D}(A_i) \subset H_i$  be linear operators.

$$A_1 \hat{\otimes} \dots \hat{\otimes} A_n := \text{Clo}(A_1 \otimes \dots \otimes A_n). \quad (10.7.0.17)$$

$$A_1 \hat{\otimes} I \hat{\otimes} \dots \hat{\otimes} I + \dots + I \hat{\otimes} \dots \hat{\otimes} I \hat{\otimes} A_n := \text{Clo}(A_1 \otimes I \otimes \dots \otimes I + \dots + I \otimes \dots \otimes I \otimes A_n) \quad (10.7.0.18)$$

**Theorem 10.7.0.10.** Let  $\{H_i\}_{i=1}^n$  be Hilbert spaces and  $\{K_i\}_{i=1}^n$  be Hilbert spaces. Let  $A_i \in \mathcal{B}(H_i, K_i)$  for  $i = 1, \dots, n$ . Then there exists a unique  $A \in \mathcal{B}(\hat{\bigotimes}_{i=1}^n H_i, \hat{\bigotimes}_{i=1}^n K_i)$  such that

$$A(x_1 \otimes \dots \otimes x_n) = A_1 x_1 \otimes \dots \otimes A_n x_n \quad (10.7.0.19)$$

for all  $(x_1 \otimes \dots \otimes x_n) \in \Pi_{i=1}^n H_i$ . Moreover

$$\|A\| = \|A_1\| \cdot \dots \cdot \|A_n\|. \quad (10.7.0.20)$$

*Proof.* [see [KR83](#), 2.6 Constructions with Hilbert Spaces] □

**Theorem 10.7.0.11.** Let  $\{H_i\}_{i=1}^n$  be Hilbert spaces and  $\{K_i\}_{i=1}^n$  be Hilbert spaces. Let  $A_i, B_i \in \mathcal{B}(H_i, K_i)$  for  $i = 1, \dots, n$ . Then

$$A_1 \hat{\otimes} \dots \hat{\otimes} A_n \in \mathcal{B}(\hat{\bigotimes}_{i=1}^n H_i, \hat{\bigotimes}_{i=1}^n K_i), \quad (10.7.0.21)$$

$$\|A_1 \hat{\otimes} \dots \hat{\otimes} A_n\| = \|A_1\| \cdot \dots \cdot \|A_n\|. \quad (10.7.0.22)$$

$$(A_1 \hat{\otimes} \dots \hat{\otimes} A_n)(B_1 \hat{\otimes} \dots \hat{\otimes} B_n) = A_1 B_1 \hat{\otimes} \dots \hat{\otimes} A_n B_n. \quad (10.7.0.23)$$

**Theorem 10.7.0.12.** Let  $\{H_i\}_{i=1}^n$  be Hilbert spaces and  $\{K_i\}_{i=1}^n$  be Hilbert spaces. Let  $U_i \in \mathcal{B}(H_i, K_i)$  for  $i = 1, \dots, n$  be unitary mappings. Then

$$U_1 \hat{\otimes} \dots \hat{\otimes} U_n : \hat{\bigotimes}_{i=1}^n H_i \rightarrow \hat{\bigotimes}_{i=1}^n K_i \quad (10.7.0.24)$$

is also a unitary mapping.

*Proof.* Unitary mapping map orthonormal basis into orthonormal basis. Thus, by Theorem [10.7.0.7](#) we can show thesis. □

**Theorem 10.7.0.13.** *Let  $\{H_i\}_{i=1}^n$  be Hilbert spaces and  $A_i$  be self-adjoint with  $\mathcal{D}(A_i) \subset H_i$  for  $i = 1, \dots, n$ . Then  $A_1 \hat{\otimes} \dots \hat{\otimes} A_n$  is self-adjoint and*

$$A_1 \hat{\otimes} I \hat{\otimes} \dots \hat{\otimes} I + \dots + I \hat{\otimes} \dots \hat{\otimes} I \hat{\otimes} A_n. \quad (10.7.0.25)$$

*is self-adjoint.*

*Proof.* [see [Wei80](#), 8.5 Analytic vectors and tensor products of self-adjoint operators].  $\square$

The following theorem is a convenient instruction, what minimal domain we need examine if we want to establish equality between some self-adjoint operator and closed product of self-adjoint operators.

**Lemma 10.7.0.14.** *Let  $H$  be a Hilbert space and  $B$  be a self-adjoint operator. If  $A \subset B$  and  $\text{Clo}(A)$  is self-adjoint, then  $\text{Clo}(A) = B$ .*

*Proof.* Since  $B$  is self-adjoint,  $B$  is closed. So,  $\text{Clo}(A) \subset B$ . But  $\text{Clo}(A)$  is self-adjoint, hence it's maximal symmetric operator, thus  $\text{Clo}(A) = B$ .  $\square$

**Theorem 10.7.0.15.** *Let  $\{H_i\}_{i=1}^n$  be Hilbert spaces, and let  $A_i$  be self-adjoint with  $\mathcal{D}(A_i) \subset H_i$  for  $i = 1, \dots, n$  and let  $B$  be a self-adjoint operator on  $\hat{\otimes}_{i=1}^n H_i$ . If*

$$\mathcal{D}(A_1) \otimes \dots \otimes \mathcal{D}(A_n) \subset \mathcal{D}(B) \quad (10.7.0.26)$$

*and*

$$B(x_1 \otimes \dots \otimes x_n) = A_1 x_1 \otimes \dots \otimes A_n x_n \quad (10.7.0.27)$$

*for all  $(x_1, \dots, x_n) \in \Pi_{k=1}^n \mathcal{D}(A_k)$ , then*

$$B = A_1 \hat{\otimes} \dots \hat{\otimes} A_n. \quad (10.7.0.28)$$

*Proof.* Let  $A = A_1 \otimes \dots \otimes A_n$ . By linearity we get  $A \subset B$ . By Theorem [10.7.0.13](#),  $\text{Clo}(A)$  is self-adjoint. Now, by Lemma [10.7.0.14](#), we get  $\text{Clo}(A) = B$ .  $\square$

**Theorem 10.7.0.16.** *If  $(X_1, \mu_1)$  and  $(X_2, \mu_2)$  are measurable spaces, then*

$$L^2(X_1, \mu_1) \hat{\otimes} L^2(X_2, \mu_2) = L^2(X_1 \times X_2, \mu_1 \times \mu_2), \quad (10.7.0.29)$$

*where*

$$(\psi_1 \otimes \psi_2)(x_1, x_2) = \psi_1(x_1) \cdot \psi_2(x_2) \text{ for } \psi_i \in L^2(X_i, \mu_i) \text{ for } i = 1, 2. \quad (10.7.0.30)$$

*Proof.* [see [KR83](#), 2.6 Constructions with Hilbert Spaces]  $\square$

**Example 10.7.0.17.** Let  $\mathcal{F}_k$  be a  $k$ -dimensional Fourier transform extended to  $L^2(\mathbb{R}^k)$ .

$$\mathcal{F}_n \hat{\otimes} \mathcal{F}_m = \mathcal{F}_{n+m}. \quad (10.7.0.31)$$

*Proof.* Take any  $\psi_1 \in L^1(\mathbb{R}^n) \cap L^2(\mathbb{R}^n)$  and  $\psi_2 \in L^1(\mathbb{R}^m) \cap L^2(\mathbb{R}^m)$ .

$$\begin{aligned} (\mathcal{F}_n \hat{\otimes} \mathcal{F}_m)(\psi_1 \otimes \psi_2)(x_1, x_2) &= \mathcal{F}_n \psi_1(x_1) \otimes \mathcal{F}_m \psi_2(x_2) = \\ &= \left( (2\pi)^{-\frac{n}{2}} \int_{\mathbb{R}^n} \psi_1(s_1) \exp(-ix_1 \cdot s_1) ds_1 \right) \left( (2\pi)^{-\frac{m}{2}} \int_{\mathbb{R}^m} \psi_2(s_2) \exp(-ix_2 \cdot s_2) ds_2 \right) = \\ &= (2\pi)^{-\frac{n+m}{2}} \int_{\mathbb{R}^n} \int_{\mathbb{R}^m} \psi_1(s_1) \psi_2(s_2) \exp(-i(x_1 \cdot s_1 + x_2 \cdot s_2)) ds_1 ds_2 = \\ &= \mathcal{F}_{n+m}(\psi_1 \otimes \psi_2)(x_1, x_2). \end{aligned} \quad (10.7.0.32)$$

By continuity we have shown  $\mathcal{F}_n \hat{\otimes} \mathcal{F}_m(\psi_1 \otimes \psi_2) = \mathcal{F}_{n+m}(\psi_1 \otimes \psi_2)$  for any  $\psi_1 \in L^2(\mathbb{R}^n)$  and  $\psi_2 \in L^2(\mathbb{R}^m)$ . Now by Theorem 10.7.0.10, we have (10.7.0.31).  $\square$

In the theorem below we will use  $L^2$ -representations of self-adjoint operators as defined by Definition 10.3.2.3.

**Theorem 10.7.0.18.** Let  $H$  be a Hilbert space and  $A, B$  be self-adjoint densely defined operators on  $H$  and let  $(X_A, \nu_A, U_A, g_A)$  and  $(X_B, \nu_B, U_B, g_B)$  be respectively their  $L^2$ -representations, then

1.

$$(X_A \times X_B, \nu_A \times \nu_B, U_A \hat{\otimes} U_B, g_A + g_B)$$

is  $L^2$ -representation of  $A \hat{\otimes} I + I \hat{\otimes} B$ .

2.

$$(X_A \times X_B, \nu_A \times \nu_B, U_A \hat{\otimes} U_B, g_A \cdot g_B)$$

is  $L^2$ -representation of  $A \hat{\otimes} B$ .

*Proof.* By Theorem 10.3.2.1, it's easy to prove that

$$C\psi := (U_A \hat{\otimes} U_B)^{-1}((g_A + g_B) \cdot (U_A \hat{\otimes} U_B)(\psi)) \quad (10.7.0.33)$$

is densely defined and self-adjoint. Take any  $\psi_1 \in \mathcal{D}(A)$  and  $\psi_2 \in \mathcal{D}(B)$ . Note that

$$\begin{aligned} C(\psi_1 \otimes \psi_2) &= (U_A \hat{\otimes} U_B)^{-1}(g_A \cdot U_A(\psi_1) \cdot U_B(\psi_2) + U_A(\psi_1) \cdot g_B \cdot U_B(\psi_2)) = \\ &= (U_A \hat{\otimes} U_B)^{-1}((g_A \cdot U_A(\psi_1)) \otimes U_B(\psi_2) + U_A(\psi_1) \otimes (g_B \cdot U_B(\psi_2))) = \\ &= (U_A^{-1}(g_A \cdot U_A(\psi_1)) \otimes U_B^{-1}U_B(\psi_2) + U_A^{-1}U_A(\psi_1) \otimes U_B^{-1}(g_B \cdot U_B(\psi_2))) = \\ &= A\psi_1 \otimes \psi_2 + \psi_1 \otimes B\psi_2. \end{aligned} \quad (10.7.0.34)$$



By linearity we showed  $A \otimes I + I \otimes B \subset C$ . By Lemma [10.7.0.14](#), we have  $\text{Clo}(A \otimes I + I \otimes B) = C$ . Point 2 can be showed analogously.  $\square$



# Chapter 11

## Mathematical Methods

### 11.1 Vector Analysis in $\mathbb{R}^n$

#### 11.1.1 $\mathbb{R}^3$ Case

We will try to give quite precise but still a heuristic formulation of the Stokes's Theorem in  $\mathbb{R}^3$  case, which is a certain compromise between being realistic easy to comprehend and rigorous enough to be comfortably used in most physical applications. The serious mathematical treatment of Stokes theorem for differentiable manifolds can be found in e.g. [Spi95] or [War83]. However, in my opinion, it is propedeutically recommended to understand first the  $\mathbb{R}^3$  case in a heuristic way, as presented here, to be ready for more advanced and rigorous treatment of this topic in differentiable manifolds theory.

**Definition 11.1.1.1.** *We say that the piecewise smooth surface  $(S, \vec{n})$  is oriented when  $\vec{n} : S \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^3$  is a piecewise  $C^1$  continuous field of normed vectors perpendicular to  $S$  in each point.*

**Definition 11.1.1.2.** *We say that the piecewise smooth curve  $(\Gamma, \vec{l})$  is oriented when  $\vec{l} : \Gamma \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^3$  is a piecewise  $C^1$  field of normed vectors tangent to  $\Gamma$  in each point.*

**Definition 11.1.1.3.** *Let  $(S, \vec{n})$  be an oriented surface and let  $\Gamma \subset \partial S$  be a piecewise smooth closed oriented curve  $(\Gamma, \vec{l})$ . We say that these orientations are consistent if  $\vec{n} \times \vec{l}$  is directed towards  $S$  for any point of  $\Gamma$ .*

**Theorem 11.1.1.4. (Stokes's Theorem)** *Let  $(S, \vec{n})$  be a bounded, piecewise smooth, oriented surface in  $\mathbb{R}^3$ . Let  $(\partial S, \vec{l})$  be a piecewise  $C^1$  edge-boundary of  $S$  consisting of finitely many closed curves oriented consistently with  $S$ . Let*

$\Omega$  be an open set such that  $S \subset \Omega$ . Let  $ds$  symbolise an infinitesimal element of  $\partial S$  and  $dS$  an infinitesimal element of surface  $S$ . If  $\vec{F} \in C^1(\Omega, \mathbb{R}^3)$ , then

$$\oint_{\partial S} \vec{F} \cdot (ds)\vec{l} = \int_S (\nabla \times \vec{F}) \cdot (dS)\vec{n}. \quad (11.1.1.1)$$



Figure 11.1: Illustration for Stokes Theorem

*Proof.* [see Col12, 7.3 Stokes's and Gauss's Theorems] □

**Theorem 11.1.1.5. (Gauss's Theorem)** Let  $\Omega$  be an open connected subset of  $\mathbb{R}^3$ . Let  $(\partial\Omega, \vec{n})$  be a piecewise smooth directed closed surface, such that  $\vec{n}$  points outside  $\Omega$ . Let  $dV$  symbolise an infinitesimal element of volume  $\Omega$  and let  $dS$  symbolise an infinitesimal element of surface  $\partial\Omega$ . If  $\vec{F} \in C^1(\text{Clo}(\Omega), \mathbb{R}^3)$ , then

$$\oint_{\partial\Omega} \vec{F} \cdot (dS)\vec{n} = \int_{\Omega} \nabla \cdot \vec{F} dV. \quad (11.1.1.2)$$

*Proof.* [see Col12, 7.3 Stokes's and Gauss's Theorems] □

**Theorem 11.1.1.6.** *Let  $\Omega$  be an open subset of  $\mathbb{R}^n$  and let  $\mathbf{x}$  be a cartesian coordinates system in  $\mathbb{R}^n$ . Let  $\mathbf{y}$  be a new system of coordinates depending continuously differentiable on  $\mathbf{x}$  such that  $\det \frac{\partial \mathbf{y}}{\partial \mathbf{x}} \neq 0$  on  $\Omega$ . Then for any integrable function  $f$  on  $\Omega$ , we have*

$$\int_{\Omega} f d\mathbf{x} = \int_{\mathbf{y}(\Omega)} f \left| \frac{\partial \mathbf{x}}{\partial \mathbf{y}} \right| d\mathbf{y}, \quad (11.1.1.3)$$

where  $\left| \frac{\partial \mathbf{x}}{\partial \mathbf{y}} \right| = \left| \det \frac{\partial \mathbf{x}}{\partial \mathbf{y}} \right|$  and  $f$  under first integral depends on  $\mathbf{x}$  while  $f$  under second integral represents the same values but dependent on  $\mathbf{y}$ .

*Proof.* Detailed proof of this theorem can be found in [Spi95].  $\square$

Note that we use the same letter  $f$  to denote some abstract value, which once can be dependent on  $\mathbf{x}$  once on  $\mathbf{y}$ . Don't confuse it with strict mathematical notation of functions. The above notation is more useful for physics.

$\left| \frac{\partial \mathbf{x}}{\partial \mathbf{y}} \right|$  is

Let's analyse an important example of spherical coordinates:

$$\begin{cases} x = r \sin \theta \cos \phi, \\ y = r \sin \theta \sin \phi, \\ z = r \cos \theta. \end{cases} \quad (11.1.1.4)$$

Let's calculate Jacobian

$$\begin{vmatrix} \frac{\partial x}{\partial r} & \frac{\partial x}{\partial \theta} & \frac{\partial x}{\partial \phi} \\ \frac{\partial y}{\partial r} & \frac{\partial y}{\partial \theta} & \frac{\partial y}{\partial \phi} \\ \frac{\partial z}{\partial r} & \frac{\partial z}{\partial \theta} & \frac{\partial z}{\partial \phi} \end{vmatrix} = \begin{vmatrix} \sin \theta \cos \phi & r \cos \theta \cos \phi & -r \sin \theta \sin \phi \\ \sin \theta \sin \phi & r \cos \theta \sin \phi & r \sin \theta \cos \phi \\ \cos \theta & -r \sin \theta & 0 \end{vmatrix} =$$

$$r^2 \cos^2 \theta \cos^2 \phi \sin \theta + r^2 \sin^3 \theta \sin^2 \phi + r^2 \cos^2 \theta \sin^2 \phi \sin \theta + r^2 \sin^3 \theta \cos^2 \phi = r^2 (\sin \theta \sin^2 \phi (\sin^2 \theta + \cos^2 \theta) + \sin \theta \cos^2 \phi (\cos^2 \theta + \sin^2 \theta)) = r^2 \sin \theta.$$

Thus

$$\int_{-\infty}^{+\infty} \int_{-\infty}^{+\infty} \int_{-\infty}^{+\infty} f(x, y, z) dx dy dz = \int_0^{+\infty} dr \int_0^{2\pi} d\phi \int_0^{\pi} d\theta f(r, \phi, \theta) r^2 \sin \theta. \quad (11.1.1.5)$$

### 11.1.2 Introduction to Differential Forms on Manifolds Embedded in Real Coordinate Space

In this subsection we will consider only parametrised smooth manifolds with one map. This is an obvious simplification, but we will treat this only as a training before doing serious differentiable manifolds theory. This is a proper way taken after [Col12] with only slight modifications. We will first introduce a concept of differentiable  $k$ -form.

**Definition 11.1.2.1.** *A basis  $k$ -form in  $\mathbb{R}^n$*

$$dx_{i_1} \wedge \dots \wedge dx_{i_k}, \quad (11.1.2.1)$$

where  $i_1, \dots, i_k = 1, \dots, n$ , is a multi-linear function from  $\mathbb{R}^n$  to  $\mathbb{R}$  such that

$$dx_{i_1} \wedge \dots \wedge dx_{i_k}(\vec{a}_1, \dots, \vec{a}_k) := \det \begin{bmatrix} dx_{i_1}(\vec{a}_1) & \dots & dx_{i_1}(\vec{a}_k) \\ \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ dx_{i_k}(\vec{a}_1) & \dots & dx_{i_k}(\vec{a}_k) \end{bmatrix} \quad (11.1.2.2)$$

where for  $\vec{a} = [a_1, \dots, a_n]$ ,  $dx_j(\vec{a}) = a_j$ .

**Definition 11.1.2.2.** *Let  $U$  be an open subset of  $\mathbb{R}^n$ . A differentiable  $k$ -form on  $U$*

$$\omega(x) = \sum_{i_1, \dots, i_k} F_{i_1, \dots, i_k}(x) dx_{i_1} \wedge \dots \wedge dx_{i_k} \quad (11.1.2.3)$$

is a mapping from  $U$  to the space of multi-linear functions from  $\mathbb{R}^n$  to  $\mathbb{R}$ , where  $F_{i_1, \dots, i_k} \in C^1(U)$  and

$$\omega(x)(\vec{a}_1, \dots, \vec{a}_k) = \sum_{i_1, \dots, i_k} F_{i_1, \dots, i_k}(x) dx_{i_1} \wedge \dots \wedge dx_{i_k}(\vec{a}_1, \dots, \vec{a}_k). \quad (11.1.2.4)$$

A differentiable 0-form is each function from  $C^1(U, \mathbb{R})$ . For formal reasons we assume that basis 0-form is constant function = 1.

We treat  $\wedge$  as a natural operator on basis forms with assumed associativity. It follows from the definition of determinant that if any  $dx_i$  appears twice the basis form is equal to 0 and it changes sign when we swap two of its elements.

**Definition 11.1.2.3.** *Let  $\omega_1 = \sum_i f_i^1 \Omega_i^1$  be a differentiable  $k$ -form and  $\omega_2 = \sum_j f_j^2 \Omega_j^2$  be a differentiable  $l$ -form where  $\Omega_i^1$  are basis  $k$ -forms and  $\Omega_j^2$  are basis  $l$ -forms.*

$$\omega_1 \wedge \omega_2 := \sum_i \sum_j f_i^1 f_j^2 (\Omega_i^1 \wedge \Omega_j^2). \quad (11.1.2.5)$$

**Theorem 11.1.2.4.** *Let  $\omega, \omega_1, \omega_2$  be differentiable  $k$ -forms,  $\nu$  be differentiable  $l$ -form and  $\tau$  be a  $p$ -form. Let  $f$  be 0-form. Then*

1.  $(\omega_1 + \omega_2) \wedge \nu = \omega_1 \wedge \nu + \omega_2 \wedge \nu.$
2.  $\omega \wedge \nu = (-1)^{kl} \nu \wedge \omega.$
3.  $(\omega \wedge \nu) \wedge p = \omega \wedge (\nu \wedge p).$
4.  $(f\omega) \wedge \nu = f(\omega \wedge \nu) = \omega \wedge (f\nu).$

**Definition 11.1.2.5.** *Let  $\omega = \sum_j f_j \Omega_j$  be a differentiable  $k$ -form on  $U \subset \mathbb{R}^n$  where  $\Omega_i$  are basis  $k$ -forms.*

$$d\omega := \sum_j \sum_{i=1}^n \frac{\partial f_j}{\partial x_i} dx_i \wedge \Omega_j. \quad (11.1.2.6)$$

Now we will introduce a simplified concept of manifold.

**Definition 11.1.2.6.** *Let  $D \subset \mathbb{R}^k$  be a region consists of some open set  $U$  and any parts of its clousure.  $X$  is parametrised  $k$ -manifold if  $X : D \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^n$  and*

1.  $X|_U$  is 1-to-1 and  $C^1$  class.
2.  $\frac{\partial X}{\partial u_1}, \dots, \frac{\partial X}{\partial u_k}$  are linearly independent.

**Definition 11.1.2.7.** *Let  $X$  be a parametrised  $k$ -manifold.*

$$T_X^i := \frac{\partial X}{\partial u_i}. \quad (11.1.2.7)$$

We say that  $T_X^i$  is a tangent vector to  $i$ -th coordinate curve.

**Definition 11.1.2.8.** *Let  $X$  be parametrised  $k$ -manifold.  $k$ -form  $\Omega$  is called an orientation of  $X$ , iff*

$$\Omega(T_X^1, \dots, T_X^k) > 0. \quad (11.1.2.8)$$

at each point of  $X$ .

**Proposition 11.1.2.9.** *Let  $\vec{a}, \vec{b}, \vec{c} \in \mathbb{R}^3$ , then*

$$\det(\vec{a}, \vec{b}, \vec{c}) = \vec{a} \cdot (\vec{b} \times \vec{c}). \quad (11.1.2.9)$$

**Example 11.1.2.10.** Let  $X$  be a parametrised 2-manifold and

$$\vec{n} = \frac{T_X^1 \times T_X^2}{\|T_X^1 \times T_X^2\|}. \quad (11.1.2.10)$$

Note that  $(X, \vec{n})$  is an orientation of  $X$  in terms of Definition 11.1.1.1. Indeed  $\vec{n}$  is a unit vector perpendicular to the target space. The corresponding orientation in terms of Definition 11.1.2.8 is

$$\Omega(\vec{a}^1, \vec{a}^2) = \det(\vec{n}, \vec{a}^1, \vec{a}^2). \quad (11.1.2.11)$$

*Proof.* Note that  $\Omega(T_X^1, T_X^2) > 0$  because

$$\Omega(T_X^1, T_X^2) = \frac{1}{\|T_X^1 \times T_X^2\|} (T_X^1 \times T_X^2) \cdot (T_X^1 \times T_X^2) > 0. \quad (11.1.2.12)$$

□

**Definition 11.1.2.11.** Let  $X$  be a parametrised  $k$ -manifold and  $Y$  be a parametrised  $k-1$ -manifold such that  $Y$  is contained in a boundary of  $X$ . Let  $\Omega_X$  be an orientation of  $X$ . We say that orientation of  $Y$  is induced by orientation of  $X$  iff

$$\Omega_Y(\vec{a}^1, \dots, \vec{a}^{k-1}) := \Omega(\vec{v}, \vec{a}^1, \dots, \vec{a}^{k-1}) \quad (11.1.2.13)$$

is an orientation of  $Y$  where  $\vec{v}$  is a vector field on  $X$  such that  $\vec{v}$  is tangent to  $X$  (i.e. is a linear combination of  $T_X^1, \dots, T_X^k$ ), normal to  $Y$  (i.e. perpendicular to each  $T_Y^1, \dots, T_Y^{k-1}$ ) and  $-\vec{v}$  on  $Y$  points towards  $X$ .

**Proposition 11.1.2.12.** Induced orientation from Definition 11.1.2.11 coincides with consistent orientation from Definition 11.1.1.3

*Proof.* Let  $X$  be parametrised 2-manifold. Let

$$\vec{n} := \frac{T_X^1 \times T_X^2}{\|T_X^1 \times T_X^2\|}. \quad (11.1.2.14)$$

As it was previously noted,  $(X, \vec{n})$  is an orientation of  $X$  in terms of Definition 11.1.1.1. We have shown in Example 11.1.2.10 that  $\Omega_X(\vec{a}^1, \vec{a}^2) = \det(\vec{n}, \vec{a}^1, \vec{a}^2)$  is orientation of  $X$  in terms of Definition 11.1.2.8. Let  $Y$  be a parametrised 1-manifold (i.e. curve) such that  $Y$  is contained in a boundary of  $X$ . Let

$$\vec{l} := \frac{T_Y^1}{\|T_Y^1\|}. \quad (11.1.2.15)$$



Note that  $\vec{l}$  is a unit vector tangent to  $Y$  at each point. Thus  $(Y, \vec{l})$  is an orientation of  $Y$  in terms of Definition 11.1.1.2.

Let  $\vec{v}$  be some vector field on  $Y$  which is tangent to  $X$  and perpendicular to  $Y$  and  $-\vec{v}$  points towards  $X$ .

$$\Omega(\vec{a}) := \Omega_X(\vec{v}, \vec{a}) = \det(\vec{n}, \vec{v}, \vec{a}) = \vec{n} \cdot (\vec{v} \times \vec{a}) = \vec{v} \cdot (\vec{a} \times \vec{n}). \quad (11.1.2.16)$$

$\Omega$  is obviously a good candidate for orientation of  $Y$ . Now all we need to do is to check the sign of  $\Omega(\vec{l})$ .

$$\Omega(\vec{l}) = \vec{v} \cdot (\vec{l} \times \vec{n}) = -\vec{v} \cdot (\vec{n} \times \vec{l}). \quad (11.1.2.17)$$

Notice that because  $\vec{v}$  is tangent to  $X$  and perpendicular to  $Y$ , we have  $-\vec{v} \parallel \vec{n} \times \vec{l}$ . Thus,  $\Omega(\vec{l}) > 0$  if and only if  $\vec{n} \times \vec{l}$  points in the same direction as  $-\vec{v}$ , i.e. towards  $X$ . And this means that  $\Omega$  is an orientation of  $Y$  induced by  $X$  if and only if orientation  $(Y, \vec{l})$  is consistent with orientation  $(X, \vec{n})$  in terms of Definition 11.1.1.3.  $\square$

**Definition 11.1.2.13.** Let  $X : D \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^n$  be parametrised  $k$ -manifold. Let  $\omega$  be a  $C^1$   $k$ -form defined on an open set  $U$  such that  $X(D) \subset U$ .

$$\int_X \omega := \int_D \omega(T_X^1, \dots, T_X^k) du, \quad (11.1.2.18)$$

where  $du$  symbolise an infinitesimal volume element of  $D$ .

The central theorem in this section is Stokes's Theorem.

**Theorem 11.1.2.14. (Stokes's Theorem)** Let  $X : D \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^n$  be parametrised  $k$ -manifold. Let  $\partial X$  be  $k-1$ -manifold which image is equal to the boundary of  $X$ . Let  $\omega$  be a  $C^1$   $k$ -form defined on an open set  $U$  such that  $X(D) \subset U$ . If orientation of  $\partial X$  is induced by  $X$ , then

$$\int_X d\omega = \int_{\partial X} \omega. \quad (11.1.2.19)$$

**Lemma 11.1.2.15.** Let  $X : D \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^3$  be a parametrised 2-manifold. Let  $du$  be an infinitesimal element of  $D$ . Let  $dS = X(du)$  be a corresponding infinitesimal surface element of  $X$ . Then

$$dS = \|T_X^1 \times T_X^2\| du. \quad (11.1.2.20)$$

*Proof.* Let  $u = (u_1, u_2)$  and  $\Delta u = (\Delta u_1, \Delta u_2)$  with  $\Delta u_1, \Delta u_2$  being infinitesimals of the first order. Imagine an infinitesimal volume element  $du$  as

$[u_1, u_1 + \Delta u_1] \times [u_2, u_2 + \Delta u_2]$ . Let  $\theta = (\theta_1, \theta_2)$ . Neglecting second-order infinitesimals we have

$$X(u + \theta \cdot \Delta u) = X(u) + \begin{bmatrix} \frac{\partial X}{\partial u_1} & \frac{\partial X}{\partial u_2} \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} \theta_1 \Delta u_1 \\ \theta_2 \Delta u_2 \end{bmatrix} = X(u) + \theta_1 \Delta u_1 T_X^1 + \theta_2 \Delta u_2 T_X^2. \quad (11.1.2.21)$$

Note that

$$du = \mu([u_1, u_1 + \Delta u_1] \times [u_2, u_2 + \Delta u_2]) = \mu\{\theta \cdot \Delta u : \theta \in [0, 1]^2\}. \quad (11.1.2.22)$$

Thus

$$dS = X(du) = \mu\{\theta_1 \Delta u_1 T_X^1 + \theta_2 \Delta u_2 T_X^2 : \theta \in [0, 1]^2\}. \quad (11.1.2.23)$$

But this equal to the area of the parallelogram spanned by  $\Delta u_1 T_X^1$  and  $\Delta u_2 T_X^2$ , which is equal to  $\|T_X^1 \times T_X^2\| \Delta u_1 \Delta u_2 = \|T_X^1 \times T_X^2\| du$ .  $\square$

**Example 11.1.2.16.** Let  $X$  be a parametrised 2-manifold. Let  $\vec{n} = \frac{T_X^1 \times T_X^2}{\|T_X^1 \times T_X^2\|}$ .

Let  $F = [F^1, F^2, F^3] \in C^1(U, \mathbb{R}^3)$ , where  $X \subset U$ . Let

$$\omega = F^1 dx_2 \wedge dx_3 + F^2 dx_3 \wedge dx_1 + F^3 dx_1 \wedge dx_2. \quad (11.1.2.24)$$

Then

$$\int_X \omega = \int_X \begin{bmatrix} F^1 & F^2 & F^3 \end{bmatrix} \cdot \vec{n} dS. \quad (11.1.2.25)$$

*Proof.*

$$\begin{aligned} \omega(T_X^1, T_X^2) &= F^1 dx_2 \wedge dx_3(T_X^1, T_X^2) + \cdots = F^1 \begin{vmatrix} dx_2(T_X^1) & dx_2(T_X^2) \\ dx_3(T_X^1) & dx_3(T_X^2) \end{vmatrix} + \cdots = \\ &= \begin{bmatrix} F^1 & F^2 & F^3 \end{bmatrix} \cdot (T_X^1 \times T_X^2) = \begin{bmatrix} F^1 & F^2 & F^3 \end{bmatrix} \cdot \vec{n} \|T_X^1 \times T_X^2\| \end{aligned} \quad (11.1.2.26)$$

Thus by Lemma 11.1.2.15 we have

$$\int_X \omega = \int_D \begin{bmatrix} F^1 & F^2 & F^3 \end{bmatrix} \cdot \vec{n} \|T_X^1 \times T_X^2\| du = \int_X \begin{bmatrix} F^1 & F^2 & F^3 \end{bmatrix} \cdot \vec{n} dS. \quad (11.1.2.27)$$

$\square$

**Theorem 11.1.2.17. (Gauss's Theorem  $n$ -dimensional case)** Let  $\Omega$  be an open and connected subset of  $\mathbb{R}^n$ . Let  $\vec{n}$  be a vector field of unit vectors, normal to a piecewise smooth closed surface of  $\partial\Omega$ , such that  $\vec{n}$  points outside  $\Omega$ . Let  $dV$  symbolise an infinitesimal element of  $n$ -dimensional volume of  $\Omega$  and let  $dS$  symbolise an infinitesimal element of surface  $\partial\Omega$ . If  $\vec{F} \in C^1(\text{Clo}(\Omega), \mathbb{R}^n)$ , then

$$\oint_{\partial\Omega} \vec{F} \cdot (dS)\vec{n} = \int_{\Omega} \nabla \cdot \vec{F} dV. \quad (11.1.2.28)$$

*Proof.* Follows from Theorem 11.1.2.14 (Stokes's Theorem).  $\square$

## 11.2 Group Theory

### 11.2.1 Generators

In this subsection we will use Einstein summation convention. Let's assume we have certain continuous symmetry  $u_{(\varepsilon)}(x)$  of  $\mathbb{R}^n$  with a generator  $g$  (i.e.  $\left. \frac{du_{\varepsilon}}{d\varepsilon} \right|_{\varepsilon=0} = g$ ). This symmetry on domain induces a transformation of functions.

$$f \mapsto f \circ u_{(\varepsilon)} \quad (11.2.1.1)$$

We will show that the generator of this transformation (at least in a pointwise sense) is

$$f \mapsto \nabla f \cdot g. \quad (11.2.1.2)$$

We would like to calculate  $\left. \frac{d(f \circ u_{(\varepsilon)})}{d\varepsilon} \right|_{\varepsilon=0}$ .

$$\left. \frac{d(f \circ u_{(\varepsilon)})}{d\varepsilon} \right|_{\varepsilon=0} = \left. \frac{\partial f}{\partial x^i} \frac{du_{(\varepsilon)}^i}{d\varepsilon} \right|_{\varepsilon=0} = \nabla f \cdot g. \quad (11.2.1.3)$$

Although it is not shown here, it seems it could be changed into a rigorous theorem, that if we consider the space  $L^2(\mathbb{R}^n)$ , the convergence in derivative above is in  $L^2$  norm sense.

**Example 11.2.1.1.** Consider one dimensional case. Let  $u_{(\varepsilon)}(x) = x + \varepsilon$ . In this case generator of  $u_{(\varepsilon)}$  is just 1. Thus the generator of  $f \mapsto f \circ u_{(\varepsilon)}$  is  $\frac{d}{dx}$ .

**Example 11.2.1.2.** Rotation on plane. Let

$$u_{(\theta)}(x) = \begin{bmatrix} \cos \theta & -\sin \theta \\ \sin \theta & \cos \theta \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} x^1 \\ x^2 \end{bmatrix}. \quad (11.2.1.4)$$

The generator of  $f \mapsto f \circ u_{(\theta)}$  is

$$x^1 \frac{\partial}{\partial x^2} - x^2 \frac{\partial}{\partial x^1}. \quad (11.2.1.5)$$

*Proof.*

$$g(x) = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & -1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} x^1 \\ x^2 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} -x^2 \\ x^1 \end{bmatrix}, \quad (11.2.1.6)$$

thus

$$\nabla f(x) \cdot g(x) = \begin{bmatrix} \frac{\partial f}{\partial x^1} & \frac{\partial f}{\partial x^2} \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} -x^2 \\ x^1 \end{bmatrix} = x^1 \frac{\partial f}{\partial x^2} - x^2 \frac{\partial f}{\partial x^1}. \quad (11.2.1.7)$$

□

**Proposition 11.2.1.3.** *If  $u_{(\theta)}$  is a rotation about an axis specified by unit vector  $n$  with an angle  $\theta$  measured counterclockwise if seen from the tip of  $n$ , then*

$$\left. \frac{du_{(\theta)}(x)}{d\theta} \right|_{\theta=0} = n \times x. \quad (11.2.1.8)$$

*Proof.* Choose an orthonormal basis  $n, a, b$  (hint: they correspond to  $x, y, z$  respectively in standard setup) such that

$$a \times n = -b \text{ and } b \times n = a. \quad (11.2.1.9)$$

Then

$$\begin{aligned} u_{(\varepsilon)}(x) &= (u \cdot x)u + \\ &((a \cdot x) \cos \theta - (b \cdot x) \sin \theta)a + ((a \cdot x) \sin \theta + (b \cdot x) \cos \theta)b. \end{aligned} \quad (11.2.1.10)$$

Thus

$$\left. \frac{du_{(\theta)}(x)}{d\theta} \right|_{\theta=0} = -(b \cdot x)a + (a \cdot x)b. \quad (11.2.1.11)$$

We will show that

$$n \times x = -(b \cdot x)a + (a \cdot x)b. \quad (11.2.1.12)$$

It's obvious that

$$n \cdot (n \times x) = 0. \quad (11.2.1.13)$$

By Theorem 10.1 and (11.2.1.9), we have

$$a \cdot (n \times x) = x \cdot (a \times n) = -x \cdot b. \quad (11.2.1.14)$$

and

$$b \cdot (n \times x) = x \cdot (b \times n) = x \cdot a. \quad (11.2.1.15)$$

The 3 equations above are equivalent to (11.2.1.12), which completes the proof.  $\square$

**Example 11.2.1.4.** *Rotation in  $\mathbb{R}^3$ . Let  $u_{(\theta)}$  be a rotation about an axis specified by unit vector  $n$  with an angle  $\theta$  measured counterclockwise if seen from the tip of  $n$ . The generator of  $f \mapsto f \circ u_{(\theta)}$  is*

$$f \mapsto n \cdot (x \times \nabla f). \quad (11.2.1.16)$$

*Proof.* Note that by Theorem 10.1  $\nabla f \cdot (n \times x) = n \cdot (x \times \nabla f)$ .  $\square$

For the benefit of the reader, let's write explicitly generator from (11.2.1.16):

$$n \cdot \left( x^2 \frac{\partial}{\partial x^3} - x^3 \frac{\partial}{\partial x^2}, x^3 \frac{\partial}{\partial x^1} - x^1 \frac{\partial}{\partial x^3}, x^1 \frac{\partial}{\partial x^2} - x^2 \frac{\partial}{\partial x^1} \right). \quad (11.2.1.17)$$

## 11.3 Tensor Analysis

### 11.3.1 Vectors and dual vectors

Let  $V$  be a vector space and  $V^*$  be a dual space to the  $V$ . Let  $\{e_i\}$  be an arbitrary base of  $V$ .  $\{e^i\} \subset V^*$  is a dual base to  $\{e_i\}$  iff

$$\boxed{e^i(e_j) = \delta_j^i} \quad (11.3.1.1)$$

Let  $\{\hat{e}_i\}$  be another base of  $V$  and  $\{\hat{e}^i\}$  be its dual base. We have two transition matrices  $[X_j^i]$  and  $[X_j^{\hat{i}}]$  such as

$$\hat{e}_k = \sum_i X_k^i e_i, \quad (11.3.1.2)$$

$$\hat{e}^k = \sum_i X_i^{\hat{k}} e^i. \quad (11.3.1.3)$$

**Fact 11.3.1.1.**  $\sum_i X_i^l X_k^{\hat{i}} = \delta_k^l$ .

*Proof.*  $\delta_k^l = \hat{e}^l(\hat{e}_k) = (\sum_i X_i^{\hat{l}} e^i)(\sum_j X_k^j e_j) = \sum_i \sum_j X_i^{\hat{l}} X_k^j e^i(e_j)$   
 $= \sum_i \sum_j X_i^{\hat{l}} X_k^j \delta_j^i = \sum_i X_i^{\hat{l}} X_k^i.$  □

**Corollary 11.3.1.2.**

$$e_j = \sum_k X_j^{\hat{k}} \hat{e}_k,$$

$$e^j = \sum_k X_k^j \hat{e}^k.$$

**Corollary 11.3.1.3.** If  $\sum_j v^j e_j = \sum_j \hat{v}^j \hat{e}_j$  then  $\hat{v}^k = \sum_j X_j^{\hat{k}} v^j$ .

**Corollary 11.3.1.4.** If  $\sum_j v_j e^j = \sum_j \hat{v}_j \hat{e}^j$  then  $\hat{v}_k = \sum_j X_k^j v_j$ .

### 11.3.2 Tensors

**Definition 11.3.2.1.** A tensor of type  $\binom{m}{n}$  is a multilinear function  $T : (V^*)^m \times V^n \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ .

Let  $\mathcal{T}\binom{m}{n}$  be a space of all tensors of the type  $\binom{m}{n}$ . It is trivial to notice that  $\mathcal{T}\binom{m}{n}$  is a vector space.

Note that  $\mathcal{T}\binom{0}{1} = V^*$ . And as we can define for  $v \in V$  and  $w^* \in V^*$ ,  $v(w^*) := w^*(v)$ , we will identify  $V$  with  $\mathcal{T}\binom{1}{0}$ .

Notice that because of multilinearity tensor is uniquely defined by the set of numbers  $\{T_{\nu_1 \dots \nu_n}^{\mu_1 \dots \mu_m}\}$ , where

$$T_{\nu_1 \dots \nu_n}^{\mu_1 \dots \mu_m} = T(e^{\mu_1}, \dots, e^{\mu_m}; e_{\nu_1}, \dots, e_{\nu_n}). \quad (11.3.2.1)$$

It is now obvious that  $\dim \mathcal{T}_n^{(m)} = \dim(V)^{m+n}$ . Let

$$\hat{T}_{\beta_1 \dots \beta_n}^{\alpha_1 \dots \alpha_m} = T(\hat{e}^{\alpha_1}, \dots, \hat{e}^{\alpha_m}; \hat{e}_{\beta_1}, \dots, \hat{e}_{\beta_n}) \quad (11.3.2.2)$$

**Fact 11.3.2.2.**  $\hat{T}_{\beta_1 \dots \beta_n}^{\alpha_1 \dots \alpha_m} = \sum_{\mu_1, \dots, \mu_m; \nu_1, \dots, \nu_n} X_{\mu_1}^{\alpha_1} \dots X_{\mu_m}^{\alpha_m} X_{\beta_1}^{\nu_1} \dots X_{\beta_n}^{\nu_n} T_{\nu_1 \dots \nu_n}^{\mu_1 \dots \mu_m}.$

*Proof.*  $\hat{T}_{\beta_1 \dots \beta_n}^{\alpha_1 \dots \alpha_m} = T(\hat{e}^{\alpha_1}, \dots, \hat{e}^{\alpha_m}; \hat{e}_{\beta_1}, \dots, \hat{e}_{\beta_n})$   
 $= T(\sum_{\mu_1} X_{\mu_1}^{\alpha_1} e^{\mu_1}, \dots; \sum_{\nu_1} X_{\beta_1}^{\nu_1} e_{\nu_1}, \dots)$   
 $= \sum_{\mu_1, \dots, \mu_m; \nu_1, \dots, \nu_n} X_{\mu_1}^{\alpha_1} \dots X_{\mu_m}^{\alpha_m} X_{\beta_1}^{\nu_1} \dots X_{\beta_n}^{\nu_n} T(e^{\mu_1}, \dots, e^{\mu_m}; e_{\nu_1}, \dots, e_{\nu_n}). \quad \square$

Note that this is enough to define tensor product and contraction on base vectors.

**Definition 11.3.2.3.**  $(S \otimes T)(e^{\mu_1}, \dots, e^{\mu_m}, e^{\mu'_1}, \dots, e^{\mu'_{m'}}; e_{\nu_1}, \dots, e_{\nu_n}, e_{\nu'_1}, \dots, e_{\nu'_{n'}}) =$   
 $S(e^{\mu_1}, \dots, e^{\mu_m}; e_{\nu_1}, \dots, e_{\nu_n}) T(e^{\mu'_1}, \dots, e^{\mu'_{m'}}; e_{\nu'_1}, \dots, e_{\nu'_{n'}}).$

**Corollary 11.3.2.4.** *If  $T \in \mathcal{T}_n^{(m)}$ , then*

$$T = \sum_{\mu_1, \dots, \mu_m; \nu_1, \dots, \nu_n} T(e^{\mu_1}, \dots, e^{\mu_m}; e_{\nu_1}, \dots, e_{\nu_n}) e_{\mu_1} \otimes \dots \otimes e_{\mu_m} \otimes e^{\nu_1} \otimes \dots \otimes e^{\nu_n}. \quad (11.3.2.3)$$

Using coefficients from 11.3.2.1 we have:

$$T = \sum_{\mu_1, \dots, \mu_m; \nu_1, \dots, \nu_n} T_{\nu_1 \dots \nu_n}^{\mu_1 \dots \mu_m} e_{\mu_1} \otimes \dots \otimes e_{\mu_m} \otimes e^{\nu_1} \otimes \dots \otimes e^{\nu_n}. \quad (11.3.2.4)$$

**Remark 11.3.2.5.**  $e_i \otimes e^j = e^j \otimes e_i.$

**Definition 11.3.2.6.**  $C_j^{(i)} : \mathcal{T}_n^{(m)} \rightarrow \mathcal{T}_{n-1}^{(m-1)}$  such as

$$(C_j^{(i)} T)(e^{\mu_1}, \dots, e^{\mu_{m-1}}; e_{\nu_1}, \dots, e_{\nu_{n-1}}) = \sum_{\lambda} T(e^{\mu_1}, \dots, e^{\lambda}, \dots, e^{\mu_m}; e_{\nu_1}, \dots, e_{\lambda}, \dots, e_{\nu_n}).$$

It is easy to show that tensor product and contraction are base independent. We will use "base-less" tensor notation with Latin indices as introduced in [Wal84].

**Lemma 11.3.2.7.** *If a tensor  $T_{b_1 \dots b_n}^{a_1 \dots a_m}(v_c)$  depends linearly on  $v_c$ , then there exists a tensor  $S_{b_1 \dots b_n}^{ca_1 \dots a_m}$  such that  $T_{b_1 \dots b_n}^{a_1 \dots a_m}(v_c) = S_{b_1 \dots b_n}^{ca_1 \dots a_m} v_c.$*

*Proof.* Let  $T_{b_1 \dots b_n}^{a_1 \dots a_m}(v_c) = \sum_{\mu_1, \dots, \mu_m; \nu_1 \dots \nu_n} T_{\nu_1 \dots \nu_n}^{\mu_1 \dots \mu_m}(v_c) e_{\mu_1} \otimes \dots \otimes e_{\mu_m} \otimes e^{\nu_1} \otimes \dots \otimes e^{\nu_n}$ .  $T_{\nu_1 \dots \nu_n}^{\mu_1 \dots \mu_m}(v_c)$  depends linearly on  $v_c$  thus we can choose such coefficients  $S_{\nu_1 \dots \nu_n}^{\lambda \mu_1 \dots \mu_m}$  that  $T_{\nu_1 \dots \nu_n}^{\mu_1 \dots \mu_m}(v_c) = \sum_{\lambda} S_{\nu_1 \dots \nu_n}^{\lambda \mu_1 \dots \mu_m} v_{\lambda}$ .  $\square$

**Corollary 11.3.2.8.** *If a tensor  $T_{b_1 \dots b_n}^{a_1 \dots a_m}(v^c)$  depends linearly on  $v^c$ , then there exists a tensor  $S_{cb_1 \dots b_n}^{a_1 \dots a_m}$  such that  $T_{b_1 \dots b_n}^{a_1 \dots a_m}(v^c) = S_{cb_1 \dots b_n}^{a_1 \dots a_m} v^c$ .*

### 11.3.3 Manifolds

Let  $M$  be a manifold,  $p \in M$ . Let  $x = (x_1, \dots, x_l)$  be a coordinates system in  $M$ , then associated base of a tangent space  $V_p$  is

$$\boxed{e_i(f) = \frac{\partial}{\partial x^i}(f \circ x^{-1})} \quad (11.3.3.1)$$

Let  $\hat{x}$  be another coordinate system. Then  $\hat{e}_i(f) = \frac{\partial}{\partial \hat{x}^i}(f \circ \hat{x}^{-1})$ . With the application of chain rule, we get:

$$\hat{e}_k(f) = \frac{\partial}{\partial \hat{x}^k}(f \circ \hat{x}^{-1}) = \sum_i \frac{\partial x^i}{\partial \hat{x}^k} \frac{\partial}{\partial x^i}(f \circ x^{-1}) = \sum_i \frac{\partial x^i}{\partial \hat{x}^k} e_k(f). \quad (11.3.3.2)$$

Comparing with equation 11.3.1.2, we get transition matrix:

$$\boxed{X_k^i = \frac{\partial x^i}{\partial \hat{x}^k}} \quad (11.3.3.3)$$

and

$$\boxed{X_i^{\hat{k}} = \frac{\partial \hat{x}^k}{\partial x^i}} \quad (11.3.3.4)$$

Let  $\mathcal{T}_p \binom{m}{n}$  be a space of tensors associated with tangent space  $V_p$ . A tensor field on manifold  $M$  is a following mapping:

$$M \ni p \rightarrow T \in \mathcal{T}_p \binom{m}{n}. \quad (11.3.3.5)$$

Let  $T_{b_1 \dots b_n}^{a_1 \dots a_m}$  be a tensor field on manifold  $M$ . Assume that

$$T_{b_1 \dots b_n}^{a_1 \dots a_m} = \sum_{\mu_1, \dots, \mu_m; \nu_1 \dots \nu_n} T_{\nu_1 \dots \nu_n}^{\mu_1 \dots \mu_m} e_{\mu_1} \otimes \dots \otimes e_{\mu_m} \otimes e^{\nu_1} \otimes \dots \otimes e^{\nu_n}. \quad (11.3.3.6)$$

Then

$$\partial_c T_{b_1 \dots b_n}^{a_1 \dots a_m} = \sum_{\lambda, \mu_1, \dots, \mu_m; \nu_1, \dots, \nu_n} \frac{\partial T_{\nu_1 \dots \nu_n}^{\mu_1 \dots \mu_m}}{\partial x^\lambda} e^\lambda \otimes e_{\mu_1} \otimes \dots \otimes e_{\mu_m} \otimes e^{\nu_1} \otimes \dots \otimes e^{\nu_n}. \quad (11.3.3.7)$$

Note that  $\partial$  depends on coordinates system  $x$ .

**Fact 11.3.3.1.**  $\partial_c(TS) = (\partial_c T)S + T\partial_c S$ .

**Fact 11.3.3.2.**  $\partial_c(C \binom{i}{j} T) = C \binom{i}{j} (\partial_c T)$ .

In this formalism we treat scalar field as field of tensors of type  $\binom{0}{0}$ . We treat this scalar field as dependent on coordinates. In this formalism  $\partial_c f$  is just a gradient of  $f$ .

$$\partial_c f = \sum_{\mu} \frac{\partial f}{\partial x^\mu} e^\mu \quad (11.3.3.8)$$

Note that for  $v^a \in V_p$  formally

$$v^a(f) = v^a \partial_a f. \quad (11.3.3.9)$$

In case of a vector field it's just its matrix derivative.

$$\partial_c v^a = \sum_{\mu, \nu} \frac{\partial v^\mu}{\partial x^\nu} e^\nu \otimes e_\mu \quad (11.3.3.10)$$

### 11.3.4 Covariant derivative

**Definition 11.3.4.1.** Operator  $\nabla$  mapping smooth tensor field of type  $\binom{m}{n}$  into tensor field of type  $\binom{m}{n+1}$  is a covariant derivative iff the following conditions holds:

$$\nabla(\alpha S + \beta T) = \alpha \nabla T + \beta \nabla S, \quad (11.3.4.1)$$

$$\nabla(S \otimes T) = \nabla S \otimes T + S \otimes \nabla T, \quad (11.3.4.2)$$

$$\nabla(C \binom{i}{j} T) = C \binom{i}{j} (\nabla T), \quad (11.3.4.3)$$

$$\nabla f = \partial f \text{ for each smooth scalar field } f, \quad (11.3.4.4)$$

$$\nabla_a \nabla_b f = \nabla_b \nabla_a f \text{ for each smooth scalar field } f. \quad (11.3.4.5)$$



**Definition 11.3.4.2.** Let  $T_{\nu_1 \dots \nu_n}^{\mu_1 \dots \mu_m}$  be coefficients of a tensor field  $T$  in a coordinates system  $x$ , then coefficients of a tensor field  $\nabla T$  in a coordinates system  $x$  will be denoted as  $\nabla_\lambda T_{\nu_1 \dots \nu_n}^{\mu_1 \dots \mu_m}$ .

**Remark 11.3.4.3.** In established coordinate system  $x$ , derivative  $\partial$  is a special case of covariant derivative.

## 11.4 Introduction to Matrix Calculus

We will be using tensor calculus to prove swiftly equations which are written in matrix notation.

It doesn't really matter at this point to know what a tensor is in physics. For us all which matters is that they are variables indexed by bunch of lower or/and upper indices like that:

$$T_i, A_j^i, B_{klm}^{ij}, \text{etc.}$$

We will use Einstein summation convention. Meaning, we will omit sigma sign for the sum of a number of multiplications over index which is lower in one factor and upper in the other. Like this:

$$A_k^i B_j^k = \sum_{k=1}^n A_k^i B_j^k$$

or this (in case of summation over more than one index):

$$A_{pqj}^{lk} B_{mk}^{jr} = \sum_{k=1}^N \sum_{j=1}^n A_{pqj}^{lk} B_{mk}^{jr}.$$

So be careful, the left side of the above equations is easy to confuse with only one multiplication. You must check if the same index is not in the upper and the lower position at a time. If it is - this is not just one multiplication, it is a summation of all such multiplications over this index and other indices if they are also in upper and lower positions (assuming the number of such multiplications is known from context, or the precise value of this number is irrelevant.).

Contravariant vectors will be column vectors and we will denote them with upper index (i.e.  $x^i$ ), thus we will be operating in a scope of a numerator layout. We will call them vectors as long as not stated otherwise. Covariant vectors will be row vectors and we will denote them with lower index (i.e.  $x_i$ ).

The identity between matrix and tensor is established as follows for matrix  $A$  of dim  $n \times m$

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} A_1^1 & A_2^1 & A_3^1 & \dots & A_m^1 \\ A_1^2 & A_2^2 & A_3^2 & \dots & A_m^2 \\ \vdots & \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ A_1^n & A_2^n & A_3^n & \dots & A_m^n \end{bmatrix}. \quad (11.4.0.1)$$

It is easy to remember than in numerator layout gradient of a function  $f : \mathbb{R}^m \rightarrow R$ , i. e.  $\frac{\partial f}{\partial x^j}$  is a row vector.

More generally if  $f$  is a  $n$  dimensional function of  $m$  dimensional vector  $x$ , in numerator layout we have

$$\frac{\partial f}{\partial x} = \begin{bmatrix} \frac{\partial f^1}{\partial x^1} & \frac{\partial f^1}{\partial x^2} & \frac{\partial f^1}{\partial x^3} & \dots & \frac{\partial f^1}{\partial x^m} \\ \frac{\partial f^2}{\partial x^1} & \frac{\partial f^2}{\partial x^2} & \frac{\partial f^2}{\partial x^3} & \dots & \frac{\partial f^2}{\partial x^m} \\ \vdots & \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ \frac{\partial f^n}{\partial x^1} & \frac{\partial f^n}{\partial x^2} & \frac{\partial f^n}{\partial x^3} & \dots & \frac{\partial f^n}{\partial x^m} \end{bmatrix}. \quad (11.4.0.2)$$

As a side note we add that in denominator layout the above matrix would be transposed. But we will be not using denominator layout in this document.

For convenience we will use Kronecker deltas as follows

$$\delta_{ij} = \delta_j^i = \begin{cases} 1 & \text{for } i = j, \\ 0 & \text{for } i \neq j. \end{cases} \quad (11.4.0.3)$$

We will now define the transposition of a tensor as a generalization of matrix transposition.

**Definition 11.4.0.1.** *Let  $A$  be a tensor.*

$$(A^T)^{q_1 \dots q_m}_{p_1 \dots p_n} = A^{p_1 \dots p_n}_{q_1 \dots q_m}. \quad (11.4.0.4)$$

*Note that:*

$$(A^T)^{q_1 \dots q_m}_{p_1 \dots p_n} = \delta_{i_1 p_1} \dots \delta_{i_n p_n} \delta^{j_1 q_1} \dots \delta^{j_m q_m} A^{i_1 \dots i_n}_{j_1 \dots j_m}. \quad (11.4.0.5)$$

And in particular:

$$(A^T)_k^l = \delta_{ik} \delta^{jl} A_j^i, \quad (11.4.0.6)$$

and

$$(x^T)_j = \delta_{ij} x^i \quad (11.4.0.7)$$

Now we are going to see how matrix multiplication looks like when using tensors (mind Einstein summation convention!)

**Theorem 11.4.0.2.** *If  $A, B$  are matrices, then*

$$(AB)_j^i = A_k^i B_j^k. \quad (11.4.0.8)$$

And how the dot product looks like when using tensors (mind Einstein summation convention - but this is really last time I am reminding this.)

**Theorem 11.4.0.3.** *If  $x, y$  are vectors, then*

$$x^T y = \delta_{ij} x^i y^j. \quad (11.4.0.9)$$

Here are some basic facts about matrix and vector transposition that we will be heavily exploiting:

$$(AB)^T = B^T A^T, \quad (11.4.0.10)$$

$$(Ax)^T = x^T A^T, \quad (11.4.0.11)$$

$$(A + B)^T = A^T + B^T, \quad (11.4.0.12)$$

$$(x + y)^T = x^T + y^T, \quad (11.4.0.13)$$

where  $A, B$  are matrices and  $x, y$  are vectors.

As an example, we will prove  $(AB)^T = B^T A^T$ .

$$(B^T A^T)_j^i = (B^T)_k^i (A^T)_j^k = B_i^k A_k^j = A_k^j B_i^k = (AB)_i^j = ((AB)^T)_j^i. \quad (11.4.0.14)$$

As we will be dealing with different kind of derivatives, might be matrix over vector, vector over vector, vector over matrix etc. It is good to give one definition of derivative tensor over tensor. However, while you are relatively safe on the ground of our applications, I am not giving you any authorization to use this definition in the physical context without deeper understanding what tensor is in physics.

**Definition 11.4.0.4.** *Let  $U$  be a tensor function of a tensor  $X$ , then*

$$\left( \frac{\partial U}{\partial X} \right)_{j_1 \dots j_m q_1 \dots q_l}^{i_1 \dots i_n p_1 \dots p_k} = \frac{\partial U_{j_1 \dots j_m}^{i_1 \dots i_n}}{\partial X_{p_1 \dots p_k}^{q_1 \dots q_l}}. \quad (11.4.0.15)$$

With the definition above we can at least understand the following concepts:

$$\frac{\partial u}{\partial x}, \frac{\partial u^T v}{\partial x}, \frac{\partial U}{\partial x}, \text{etc.}$$

where  $u, v$  are vector functions of vector  $x$  and  $U$  is a matrix function of vector  $x$ ,  
as well as,

$$\frac{\partial u}{\partial X}, \frac{\partial U}{\partial X}, \text{etc.}$$

, where  $u$  is a vector function of a matrix  $X$  and  $U$  is a matrix function of a matrix  $X$ .

Now we will prove a few usefull equations, which we will be using later.

**Theorem 11.4.0.5.** *If  $x$  is a vector, then*

$$\frac{\partial x^T}{\partial x} = \delta_{ij}, \quad (11.4.0.16)$$

$$\frac{\partial x}{\partial x} = \delta_j^i = I. \quad (11.4.0.17)$$

**Theorem 11.4.0.6.** *If  $A$  is a constant matrix and  $u$  is a vector function of vector  $x$ .*

$$\frac{\partial Au}{\partial x} = A \frac{\partial u}{\partial x}. \quad (11.4.0.18)$$

*Proof.*

$$\frac{\partial A_j^i u^j}{\partial x^k} = \frac{\partial A_j^i}{\partial x^k} u^j + A_j^i \frac{\partial u^j}{\partial x^k} = 0 + A_j^i \frac{\partial u^j}{\partial x^k} = A \frac{\partial u}{\partial x}. \quad (11.4.0.19)$$

□

**Corollary 11.4.0.7.** *If  $A$  is a constant matrix, then*

$$\frac{\partial Ax}{\partial x} = A. \quad (11.4.0.20)$$

**Theorem 11.4.0.8.** *If  $u, v$  are vector functions of vector  $x$ , then*

$$\frac{\partial u^T v}{\partial x} = u^T \frac{\partial v}{\partial x} + v^T \frac{\partial u}{\partial x}. \quad (11.4.0.21)$$

We will use  $[\cdot]_j^i$  as a formal operator, which acts on a matrix and returns an element from  $i$ -th row and  $j$ -th column.

*Proof.*

$$\frac{\partial u^T v}{\partial x} = \frac{\partial \delta_{ij} u^i v^j}{\partial x^k} = \delta_{ij} u^i \frac{\partial v^j}{\partial x^k} + \delta_{ij} v^j \frac{\partial u^i}{\partial x^k} = u^T \frac{\partial v}{\partial x} + v^T \frac{\partial u}{\partial x}. \quad (11.4.0.22)$$

□

**Theorem 11.4.0.9.** *Let  $A$  be a matrix of size  $N \times M$  partitioned in matrices  $A_j^i$  (of size  $n_i \times m_j$ ) in the following way*

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} A_1^1 & \dots & A_q^1 \\ \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ A_1^p & \dots & A_q^p \end{bmatrix} \quad (11.4.0.23)$$

where  $N = \sum_{i=1}^p n_i$  and  $M = \sum_{j=1}^q m_j$ ,

and let  $B$  be a matrix of size  $M \times L$  partitioned in matrices  $B_k^j$  (of size  $m_j \times l_k$ ) in the following way

$$B = \begin{bmatrix} B_1^1 & \dots & B_r^1 \\ \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ B_1^q & \dots & B_r^q \end{bmatrix}, \quad (11.4.0.24)$$

where  $L = \sum_{k=1}^r l_k$   
then

$$AB = \begin{bmatrix} \sum_{u=1}^q A_u^1 B_1^u & \dots & \sum_{u=1}^q A_u^1 B_r^u \\ \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ \sum_{u=1}^q A_u^p B_1^u & \dots & \sum_{u=1}^q A_u^p B_r^u \end{bmatrix}, \quad (11.4.0.25)$$

where sum and multiplications in expressions  $\sum_{u=1}^q A_u^i B_k^u$  are operations on matrices, hence these expressions denotes also matrices of size  $n_i \times l_k$  as partitions of a matrix  $AB$  (of size  $N \times L$ ).

*Proof.* Note that in this context  $[A]_j^i$  is as element of matrix  $A$  which is something very different from  $A_j^i$  which is just one of matrices into which  $A$  is partitioned.

Let us denote by  $C$  a matrix of size  $N \times L$  partitioned in the matrices  $C_k^i = \sum_{u=1}^q A_u^i B_k^u$  of size  $n_i \times l_k$  in the following way

$$C = \begin{bmatrix} C_1^1 & \dots & C_r^1 \\ \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ C_1^p & \dots & C_r^p \end{bmatrix}. \quad (11.4.0.26)$$

We will show that  $AB = C$ .

Take arbitrary indecies  $e = 1, 2, \dots, N$  and  $f = 1, 2, \dots, L$ . Note that we have

$$[AB]_f^e = \sum_{h=1}^M [A]_h^e [B]_f^h \quad (11.4.0.27)$$

Note that we can express index  $e$  as  $e = \sum_{i=1}^{d-1} n_i + s$  where  $d = 1, \dots, p$  and  $s = 1, \dots, n_d$ , we can express index  $f$  as  $f = \sum_{k=1}^{g-1} l_k + t$  where  $g = 1, \dots, r$  and  $t = 1, \dots, l_g$  and finally, we can express index  $h$  as  $h = \sum_{j=1}^{u-1} m_j + v$  where  $u = 1, \dots, q$  and  $v = 1, \dots, m_u$ .

With the above substitutions, we have

$$\begin{aligned} [AB]_f^e &= \sum_{h=1}^M [A]_h^e [B]_f^h = \sum_{u=1}^q \sum_{v=1}^{m_u} [A]_{u,v}^d [B]_{g,t}^u \\ &= \sum_{u=1}^q \left( \sum_{v=1}^{m_u} [A]_{u,v}^d [B]_{g,t}^u \right) = \sum_{u=1}^q [A]_{u,t}^d [B]_{g,t}^u = \left[ \sum_{u=1}^q A_u^d B_g^u \right]_t^s = [C]_{g,t}^d = [C]_f^e. \end{aligned}$$

□

For tensor  $g_{\mu\nu}$  we will represent it as matrix in a following way  $[g]_\nu^\mu = g_{\nu\sigma} \delta^{\mu\sigma}$ . In this context we will treat  $[g]$  as matrix representation of  $g_{\mu\nu}$ . Don't confuse this with lowering and raising indices.

**Theorem 11.4.0.10.** *If  $g_{\mu\nu} \Lambda_\sigma^\mu \Lambda_\rho^\nu = g'_{\sigma\rho}$  then*

$$\Lambda^T [g] \Lambda = [g']. \quad (11.4.0.28)$$

*Proof.* By assumption we have

$$g_{\mu\nu} \Lambda_\sigma^\mu \Lambda_\rho^\nu \delta^{\rho\eta} = g'_{\sigma\rho} \delta^{\rho\eta} \quad (11.4.0.29)$$

and thus by expanding  $g_{\mu\nu}$  with identity.

$$g_{\mu\gamma} \delta^{\gamma\zeta} \delta_{\zeta\nu} \Lambda_\sigma^\mu \Lambda_\rho^\nu \delta^{\rho\eta} = g'_{\sigma\rho} \delta^{\rho\eta}. \quad (11.4.0.30)$$

Thus

$$[\Lambda^T]_\zeta^\eta [g]_\mu^\zeta \Lambda_\sigma^\mu = [g']_\sigma^\eta. \quad (11.4.0.31)$$

□

### 11.4.1 Determinant

Let's denote by  $S_n$  a set of all permutations of  $[1, n] \cap \mathbb{N}$ . Note that  $|S_n| = n!$ .

**Definition 11.4.1.1.** Let  $\sigma \in S_n$ .

$$\text{dis}(\sigma) = |\{(i, j) : i < j \text{ and } \sigma(j) < \sigma(i)\}|, \quad (11.4.1.1)$$

$$(-1)^\sigma = \text{sgn}(\sigma) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} (-1)^{\text{dis}(\sigma)}. \quad (11.4.1.2)$$

A pair  $i < j$  in permutation for which  $\sigma(j) < \sigma(i)$  will be called disorder and number  $\text{dis}(\sigma)$  is number of disorders for  $\sigma$ .

**Definition 11.4.1.2.** For  $i, j = 1, \dots, n$ , we define a permutation  $[i \leftrightarrow j] \in S_n$

$$[i \leftrightarrow j](k) = \begin{cases} i & \text{for } k = j, \\ j & \text{for } k = i, \\ k & \text{for } k \notin \{i, j\}. \end{cases} \quad (11.4.1.3)$$

**Definition 11.4.1.3.** Let  $A$  be a matrix of size  $n \times n$

$$\det A = \sum_{\sigma \in S_n} (-1)^\sigma \prod_{i=1}^n [A]_{\sigma(i)}^i. \quad (11.4.1.4)$$

Let's define operation on column of matrices.

**Definition 11.4.1.4.** Let  $A$  be a matrix of size  $n \times n$

$$[[w^i]_j \rightarrow A]_q^p = \begin{cases} w^p & \text{for } q = j, \\ [A]_j^i & \text{otherwise.} \end{cases} \quad (11.4.1.5)$$

In simple words  $[w^i]_j \rightarrow A$  replaces a column  $j$  with a column vector  $w^i$ .

From Definition 11.4.1.3 immediately follows:

**Theorem 11.4.1.5.** If  $A$  is a matrix of size  $n \times n$ , then

$$\det([\alpha A_j^i + w^i]_j \rightarrow A) = \alpha \det(A) + \det([w^i]_j \rightarrow A). \quad (11.4.1.6)$$

*Proof.* Let  $E = ([\alpha A_j^i + w^i]_j \rightarrow A)$ . Consider

$$\det E = \sum_{\sigma \in S_n} (-1)^\sigma \prod_{i=1}^n [E]_{\sigma(i)}^i. \quad (11.4.1.7)$$

We can rearrange terms of multiplication sorting by lower index and get

$$\begin{aligned}
 \det E &= \sum_{\sigma \in S_n} (-1)^\sigma \prod_{i=1}^n [E]_i^{\sigma^{-1}(i)} \\
 &= \sum_{\sigma \in S_n} (-1)^\sigma \prod_{i=1}^{j-1} [A]_i^{\sigma^{-1}(i)} (\alpha A_j^{\sigma^{-1}(i)} + w^{\sigma^{-1}(i)}) \prod_{i=j+1}^n [A]_i^{\sigma^{-1}(i)} \\
 &= \alpha \det(A) + \det([w^i]_j \rightarrow A).
 \end{aligned}$$

□

**Theorem 11.4.1.6.** *If  $A$  is a matrix of size  $n \times n$  and  $j < k \leq n$  such that  $[A]_j^i = [A]_k^i$  for  $i = 1, \dots, n$ , then*

$$\det A = 0. \quad (11.4.1.8)$$

*Proof.* Let  $S_n^* = \{\sigma \in S_n : \sigma^{-1}(j) < \sigma^{-1}(k)\}$ . Note that  $S_n = S_n^* \dot{\cup} ([j \leftrightarrow k]S_n^*)$ . Then note

$$\begin{aligned}
 \det A &= \sum_{\sigma \in S_n^*} (-1)^\sigma \prod_{i=1}^n [A]_{\sigma(i)}^i + \sum_{\sigma \in [j \leftrightarrow k]S_n^*} (-1)^{[j \leftrightarrow k]\sigma} \prod_{i=1}^n [A]_{[j \leftrightarrow k]\sigma(i)}^i \\
 &= \sum_{\sigma \in S_n^*} (-1)^\sigma \prod_{i=1}^n [A]_{\sigma(i)}^i - \sum_{\sigma \in S_n^*} (-1)^\sigma \prod_{i=1}^n [A]_{\sigma(i)}^i = 0.
 \end{aligned} \quad (11.4.1.9)$$

□

**Lemma 11.4.1.7.** *For any sequence of integers  $a_1, \dots, a_n$  parity of the number*

$$\delta_1 a_1 + \dots + \delta_n a_n \quad (11.4.1.10)$$

*doesn't depend on a choice of factors  $\delta_1, \dots, \delta_n \in \{-1, 1\}$ .*

*Proof.* Note that

$$2 \left| \delta_i a_i - a_i \right|$$



And since

$$2 \left| \sum_{i=1}^n (\delta_i a_i - a_i), \right. \quad (11.4.1.11)$$

we have

$$2 \left| \sum_{i=1}^n \delta_i a_i - \sum_{i=1}^n a_i. \right. \quad (11.4.1.12)$$

□

**Theorem 11.4.1.8.** *For any  $\sigma_1, \sigma_2 \in S_n$ , we have*

$$\text{sgn}(\sigma_1 \sigma_2) = \text{sgn}(\sigma_1) \text{sgn}(\sigma_2). \quad (11.4.1.13)$$

*Proof.* Let's consider two sets of pairs

$$A^- = \{(i, j) : i < j \text{ and } \sigma_2(j) < \sigma_2(i)\}$$

and

$$A^+ = \{(i, j) : i < j \text{ and } \sigma_2(i) < \sigma_2(j)\}.$$

Note that

$$\left| \{(i, j) \in A^- : \sigma_1(\sigma_2(j)) < \sigma_1(\sigma_2(i))\} \right| = |A^-| - k_1$$

and

$$\left| \{(i, j) \in A^+ : \sigma_1(\sigma_2(j)) < \sigma_1(\sigma_2(i))\} \right| = k_2$$

where  $k_1 + k_2$  is a total number of disorders for  $\sigma_1$ . Thus the total number of disorders for  $\sigma_1 \sigma_2$  is  $|A^-| - k_1 + k_2$ . Note that

$$\begin{aligned} \text{sgn}(\sigma_1 \sigma_2) &= (-1)^{|A^-| - k_1 + k_2} = (-1)^{|A^-| + k_1 + k_2} \\ &= (-1)^{|A^-|} (-1)^{k_1 + k_2} = \text{sgn}(\sigma_1) \text{sgn}(\sigma_2), \end{aligned}$$

where equality  $(-1)^{|A^-| - k_1 + k_2} = (-1)^{|A^-| + k_1 + k_2}$  holds because of Lemma 11.4.1.7. □

*As an easy corollary we will formulate the following.*

**Theorem 11.4.1.9.** *For any  $\sigma \in S_n$ , we have*

$$\text{sgn}(\sigma) = \text{sgn}(\sigma^{-1}). \quad (11.4.1.14)$$

Sometimes it is convenient to consider a permutation  $\sigma \in S_n$  as  $\sigma : \mathbb{N} \setminus \{0\} \xrightarrow{1-1} \mathbb{N} \setminus \{0\}$  with  $\sigma(k) = k$  for  $k > n$ .

In that interpretation, for any  $\sigma : \mathbb{N} \setminus \{0\} \xrightarrow{1-1} \mathbb{N} \setminus \{0\}$  we will define  $\text{ord}(\sigma) = \max\{k : \sigma(k) \neq k\}$  with  $\text{ord}(I) = 0$  where  $I$  is identity. In this context we consider all  $\sigma : \mathbb{N} \setminus \{0\} \xrightarrow{1-1} \mathbb{N} \setminus \{0\}$  for which  $\text{ord}(\sigma) < +\infty$  as permutations.

With this interpretation in mind let's define  $S_{k,n}$  as set of all permutations  $\sigma$  for which  $\sigma(i) = i$  for  $i < k$  and  $s(i) = i$  for  $i > n$ .

**Theorem 11.4.1.10.** *If  $\text{ord}(\sigma) < +\infty$  then there exists an integer  $m > 0$  and integers  $i_k \neq j_k$  for  $k = 1, \dots, m$  such that*

$$\sigma = [i_1 \leftrightarrow j_1] \dots [i_m \leftrightarrow j_m] \quad (11.4.1.15)$$

*Proof.* We will prove this by induction over  $\text{ord}(\sigma)$ . The thesis is true for  $\text{ord}(\sigma) = 0$ , because  $I = [1 \leftrightarrow 2][1 \leftrightarrow 2]$ . Assume that thesis holds for  $\text{ord}(\sigma) \leq n - 1$ . Take any  $\sigma$  for which  $\text{ord}(\sigma) = n$ . Note that  $\text{ord}(\sigma[n \leftrightarrow \sigma^{-1}(n)]) \leq n - 1$ , thus by induction  $\sigma[n \leftrightarrow \sigma^{-1}(n)] = [i_1 \leftrightarrow j_1] \dots [i_m \leftrightarrow j_m]$  and

$$\sigma = \sigma[n \leftrightarrow \sigma^{-1}(n)][n \leftrightarrow \sigma^{-1}(n)] = [i_1 \leftrightarrow j_1] \dots [i_m \leftrightarrow j_m][n \leftrightarrow \sigma^{-1}(n)]. \quad (11.4.1.16)$$

□

**Theorem 11.4.1.11.** *If  $\text{ord}(\sigma) < +\infty$  and there exists an integer  $m > 0$  and integers  $i_k \neq j_k$  for  $k = 1, \dots, m$  such that*

$$\sigma = [i_1 \leftrightarrow j_1] \dots [i_m \leftrightarrow j_m], \quad (11.4.1.17)$$

*then*

$$(-1)^m = \text{sgn}(\sigma). \quad (11.4.1.18)$$

*Proof.* It is enough to note that  $\text{sgn}([i \leftrightarrow j]) = -1$ . □

**Theorem 11.4.1.12.** *If  $A$  is a matrix of size  $n \times n$ , then  $\det A = \det A^T$ .*

*Proof.* Consider

$$\det A = \sum_{\sigma \in S_n} (-1)^\sigma \prod_{i=1}^n [A]_{\sigma(i)}^i. \quad (11.4.1.19)$$

We can rearrange terms of multiplication sorting by lower index and get

$$\det A = \sum_{\sigma \in S_n} (-1)^\sigma \prod_{i=1}^n [A]_i^{\sigma^{-1}(i)} = \sum_{\sigma \in S_n} (-1)^{\sigma^{-1}} \prod_{i=1}^n [A^T]_{\sigma^{-1}(i)}^i = \det A^T. \quad (11.4.1.20)$$

□

**Definition 11.4.1.13.** Let  $A$  be a matrix of size  $n \times n$ . Let matrix  $A_{\downarrow j}^{\downarrow i}$  be a matrix  $A$  with  $i$ -th row and  $j$ -th column removed.

We have

$$\det A = \sum_{j=1}^n (-1)^{i+j} [A]_j^i \det A_{\downarrow j}^{\downarrow i} = \sum_{i=1}^n (-1)^{i+j} [A]_j^i \det A_{\downarrow j}^{\downarrow i}. \quad (11.4.1.21)$$

**Theorem 11.4.1.14.** Let  $A$  be a matrix of size  $n \times n$  and let  $B$  be a matrix of  $m \times m$  and  $C$  be a matrix of size  $n \times m$ , then

$$\det \begin{bmatrix} A & 0 \\ C & B \end{bmatrix} = \det A \det B. \quad (11.4.1.22)$$

*Proof.* Let

$$E = \det \begin{bmatrix} A & 0 \\ C & B \end{bmatrix}.$$

Consider

$$\det E = \sum_{\sigma \in S_{n+m}} (-1)^\sigma \prod_{i=1}^{n+m} [E]_{\sigma(i)}^i. \quad (11.4.1.23)$$

Take any  $\sigma$  such that  $\sigma(i) \leq n$  and  $i > n$  for some index  $i$  (i.e.  $(i, \sigma(i))$  is in  $C$  area). Since  $\sigma$  is 1-1 and "onto", for some  $k \leq n$  we must have  $\sigma(k) > n$  (i.e.  $(k, \sigma(k))$  is in  $0$  area), but that means that  $[E]_{\sigma(k)}^k = 0$ .

On the other hand if we take any  $\sigma$  such that  $\sigma(i) > n$  and  $i \leq n$  for some index  $i$ , then immediately  $[E]_{\sigma(i)}^i = 0$ .

Therefore only perturbations  $\sigma$  for which  $\sigma(i) \leq n$  for all  $i \leq n$  and  $\sigma(i) > n$  for all  $i > n$  can have non-zero contribution to  $\det E$ . Note that such a perturbation is a composition of perturbations  $\sigma = \sigma_1 \sigma_2$  where  $\sigma_1 \in S_n$  and  $\sigma_2 \in S_{n+1, n+m}$ .

Thus

$$\begin{aligned} \det E &= \sum_{\sigma_1 \in S_n} \sum_{\sigma_2 \in S_{n+1, n+m}} (-1)^{\sigma_1 \sigma_2} \prod_{i=1}^{n+m} [E]_{\sigma_1 \sigma_2(i)}^i \\ &= \sum_{\sigma_1 \in S_n} \sum_{\sigma_2 \in S_{n+1, n+m}} (-1)^{\sigma_1} (-1)^{\sigma_2} \prod_{i=1}^n [E]_{\sigma_1(i)}^i \prod_{i=n+1}^{n+m} [E]_{\sigma_2(i)}^i \\ &= \left( \sum_{\sigma_1 \in S_n} (-1)^{\sigma_1} \prod_{i=1}^n [E]_{\sigma_1(i)}^i \right) \left( \sum_{\sigma_2 \in S_{n+1, n+m}} (-1)^{\sigma_2} \prod_{i=n+1}^{n+m} [E]_{\sigma_2(i)}^i \right) \\ &= \det A \det B. \end{aligned}$$

□

The idea of the proof of the theorem below comes from [hd]

**Theorem 11.4.1.15.** *If  $\eta = \text{diag}(a_1, \dots, a_n)$  where  $a_i \neq 0$  for  $i = 1, \dots, n$  and  $A$  is a matrix of size  $n \times n$  such that  $A^T \eta A = \eta$ , then for the partition*

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} B & C \\ D & E \end{bmatrix}, \quad (11.4.1.24)$$

where  $B$  and  $E$  are square matrices, we have  $\det B = \det E$ .

*Proof.* Let's assume that

$$\eta = \begin{bmatrix} \eta_1 & 0 \\ 0 & \eta_2 \end{bmatrix}, \quad (11.4.1.25)$$

where  $\eta_1$  and  $\eta_2$  are required diagonal matrices.

Let's calculate

$$\begin{aligned} \eta &= A^T \eta A = \begin{bmatrix} B^T & D^T \\ C^T & E^T \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} \eta_1 & 0 \\ 0 & \eta_2 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} B & C \\ D & E \end{bmatrix} \\ &= \begin{bmatrix} B^T \eta_1 & D^T \eta_2 \\ C^T \eta_1 & E^T \eta_2 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} B & C \\ D & E \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} B^T \eta_1 B + D^T \eta_2 D & B^T \eta_1 C + D^T \eta_2 E \\ C^T \eta_1 B + E^T \eta_2 D & C^T \eta_1 C + E^T \eta_2 E \end{bmatrix}. \end{aligned}$$

Then from the above, we have  $B^T \eta_1 B + D^T \eta_2 D = \eta_1$  and  $B^T \eta_1 C + D^T \eta_2 E = 0$ . Therefore the following holds

$$\begin{bmatrix} B^T \eta_1 & D^T \eta_2 \\ 0 & I \end{bmatrix} A = \begin{bmatrix} \eta_1 & 0 \\ D & E \end{bmatrix} \quad (11.4.1.26)$$

By Theorem 11.4.1.14, we have  $\det(B^T \eta_1) = \det(\eta_1) \det(E)$  and thus  $\det B = \det E$ . □

**Theorem 11.4.1.16.** *If  $\eta = \text{diag}(\delta_1, \dots, \delta_n)$  and  $\eta' = \text{diag}(\delta'_1, \dots, \delta'_n)$  where  $\delta_i, \delta'_i \in \{-1, 1\}$  for  $i = 1, \dots, n$  and  $A$  is a matrix of size  $n \times n$  such that  $A^T \eta A = \eta'$ , then for the partition*

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} B & C \\ D & E \end{bmatrix}, \quad (11.4.1.27)$$

where  $B$  and  $E$  are square matrices, we have  $|\det B| = |\det E|$ .

*Proof.* Let's assume that

$$\eta = \begin{bmatrix} \eta_1 & 0 \\ 0 & \eta_2 \end{bmatrix}, \quad (11.4.1.28)$$

and

$$\eta' = \begin{bmatrix} \eta'_1 & 0 \\ 0 & \eta'_2 \end{bmatrix}, \quad (11.4.1.29)$$

where  $\eta_1$  and  $\eta_2$  are required diagonal matrices.

Let's calculate

$$\begin{aligned} \eta' &= A^T \eta A = \begin{bmatrix} B^T & D^T \\ C^T & E^T \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} \eta_1 & 0 \\ 0 & \eta_2 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} B & C \\ D & E \end{bmatrix} \\ &= \begin{bmatrix} B^T \eta_1 & D^T \eta_2 \\ C^T \eta_1 & E^T \eta_2 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} B & C \\ D & E \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} B^T \eta_1 B + D^T \eta_2 D & B^T \eta_1 C + D^T \eta_2 E \\ C^T \eta_1 B + E^T \eta_2 D & C^T \eta_1 C + E^T \eta_2 E \end{bmatrix}. \end{aligned}$$

Then from the above, we have  $B^T \eta_1 B + D^T \eta_2 D = \eta'_1$  and  $B^T \eta_1 C + D^T \eta_2 E = 0$ . Therefore the following holds

$$\begin{bmatrix} B^T \eta_1 & D^T \eta_2 \\ 0 & I \end{bmatrix} A = \begin{bmatrix} \eta'_1 & 0 \\ D & E \end{bmatrix} \quad (11.4.1.30)$$

By Theorem 11.4.1.14, we have  $\det(B^T \eta_1) = \det(\eta'_1) \det(E)$  and thus  $|\det B| = |\det E|$ .  $\square$

We will give a nice geometrical interpretation of the above theorem. We will use  $|\cdot|_S$  to denote volume relative to subspace  $S$  and  $P_S$  to denote an orthogonal projection onto a subspace  $S$ .

**Theorem 11.4.1.17.** *Let  $X$  be a real vector space where  $\dim X = n$  with a metric tensor  $g$ . Let  $e_1, \dots, e_n$  be orthonormal basis of  $X$  and let  $\hat{e}_1, \dots, \hat{e}_n$  be an orthonormal basis of  $X$ . Let  $\hat{V} = \text{span}\{\hat{e}_1, \dots, \hat{e}_k\}$  and  $V = \text{span}\{e_1, \dots, e_k\}$  for some  $k \in \{1, \dots, n-1\}$ . For  $A \subset \hat{V}$  and  $B \subset \hat{V}^\perp$ , we have*

$$\frac{|A|_{\hat{V}}}{|P_V(A)|_V} = \frac{|B|_{\hat{V}^\perp}}{|P_{V^\perp}(B)|_{V^\perp}}. \quad (11.4.1.31)$$

*Proof.* Let's write transition matrix from basis  $e$  to basis  $\hat{e}$ .

$$\hat{e}_\mu = E_\mu^\nu e_\nu. \quad (11.4.1.32)$$

Note that

$$P_V(\hat{e}_\mu) = \sum_{\nu=1}^k E_{\hat{\mu}}^\nu e_\nu \quad (11.4.1.33)$$

and

$$P_{V^\perp}(\hat{e}_\mu) = \sum_{\nu=k+1}^n E_{\hat{\mu}}^\nu e_\nu. \quad (11.4.1.34)$$

Let's divide matrix  $E$  into 4 partitions as follows:

$$\begin{bmatrix} E_1^1 & \dots & E_{\hat{k}}^1 & E_{\hat{k}+1}^1 & \dots & E_{\hat{n}}^1 \\ \vdots & \ddots & \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ E_1^k & \dots & E_{\hat{k}}^k & E_{\hat{k}+1}^k & \dots & E_{\hat{n}}^k \\ \vdots & \ddots & \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ E_1^n & \dots & E_{\hat{k}}^n & E_{\hat{k}+1}^n & \dots & E_{\hat{n}}^n \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} E_{11} & E_{12} \\ E_{21} & E_{22} \end{bmatrix}, \quad (11.4.1.35)$$

where size of  $E_{11}$  is  $k \times k$  and size of  $E_{22}$  is  $(n - k) \times (n - k)$ .

Note that  $|(P_V(\hat{e}_1), \dots, P_V(\hat{e}_k))| = |\det E_{11}|$  and  $|(P_{V^\perp}(\hat{e}_{k+1}), \dots, P_{V^\perp}(\hat{e}_n))| = |\det E_{22}|$ .

But according to the laws of tensor transformation we have  $\hat{g}_{\mu\nu} = g_{\rho\sigma} E_{\hat{\mu}}^\rho E_{\hat{\nu}}^\sigma$  (in this particular case you can use also Theorem 10.1.2.17) and by Theorem 11.4.0.10, we have  $E^T[g]E = [\hat{g}]$ . Thus by Theorem 11.4.1.16, we have  $|\det E_{11}| = |\det E_{22}|$ . Hence, thesis holds.  $\square$

## 11.5 Review of Statistical Learning Methods

### 11.5.1 Linear Regression

Assume that we have our data in a  $n \times m$  matrix  $X$ , where our data vectors are in rows and columns represent features (note that to deal with an intercept we might require that the initial column is set to 1.) Assume that we have also some column vector  $y$  with corresponding "results" for all row vectors from  $X$ . Our goal is to find linear coefficients to predict results from the data. Formally, we are looking for a column vector  $\beta$ , which minimizes the quadratic error (residual sum of squares):

$$\text{RSS}(\beta) = \sum_{i=1}^n (y^i - \sum_{j=1}^m X_j^i \beta^j)^2. \quad (11.5.1.1)$$

(We abandon Einstein summation convention here at our convenience). The above might be put very nicely using a matrix algebra.

$$\text{RSS}(\beta) = (y - X\beta)^T (y - X\beta). \quad (11.5.1.2)$$

Given that our data  $X$  and result vector  $y$  are already established, RSS is in fact a scalar value function from the vector  $\beta$ . Our goal is to find a minimum of this function.

Let's start with the auxiliary definition of positive-defined matrix.

**Definition 11.5.1.1.** *Let  $A$  be a  $m \times m$  matrix. Matrix  $A$  is positive-defined if  $x^T(Ax) > 0$  for all non-zero vectors  $x$ .*

Now we are ready to formulate in a very elegant way a local minimum theorem.

**Theorem 11.5.1.2.** *Let  $f : \mathbb{R}^m \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  be a scalar function of a vector  $x$  with its first and second derivative continuous. If  $\frac{\partial f}{\partial x} = 0$  at vector  $x_0$  and a matrix  $\frac{\partial}{\partial x}(\frac{\partial f}{\partial x})^T$  is positive-defined at  $x_0$ , then  $f$  has its local minimum at vector  $x_0$ .*

We will need also necessary condition for an extremum of  $f$ .

**Theorem 11.5.1.3.** *Let  $f : \mathbb{R}^m \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  be a scalar function of a vector  $x$  with its first derivative continuous. If  $x_0$  is an extremum of the function  $f$ , then  $\frac{\partial f}{\partial x} = 0$ .*

Note that we use  $\frac{\partial}{\partial x}(\frac{\partial f}{\partial x})^T$  to be consistent with matrix calculus.

By our tensor definition of derivative (in a numerator layout)

$$\frac{\partial f}{\partial x} = \frac{\partial f}{\partial x^i} = [\frac{\partial f}{\partial x^1}, \dots, \frac{\partial f}{\partial x^m}].$$

Thus  $\frac{\partial^2 f}{\partial x^2} = \frac{\partial}{\partial x} \frac{\partial f}{\partial x} = \frac{\partial^2 f}{\partial x^i \partial x^j}$  is in our formalism a tensor, but not a matrix. It has exactly the same coefficients as Hessian, but formally it is a tensor with two lower indices. Hessian matrix is equal exactly to  $\frac{\partial}{\partial x}(\frac{\partial f}{\partial x})^T$  in our formalism. This careful distinction will be needed later when we do our matrix calculus to minimize RSS function.

Let's now calculate  $\frac{\partial \text{RSS}}{\partial \beta}$ . By Theorem 11.4.0.7 and Corollary 11.4.0.8, we have:

$$\frac{\partial \text{RSS}}{\partial \beta} = -2(y - X\beta)^T X. \quad (11.5.1.3)$$

and

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial \beta} \left( \frac{\partial \text{RSS}}{\partial \beta} \right)^T = -2 \frac{\partial}{\partial \beta} (X^T (y - X\beta)) = 2X^T X. \quad (11.5.1.4)$$

Last equality is granted by Theorem 11.4.0.19.

For simplicity, we need to assume that matrix  $X$  has a full column rank. This means that features are not linearly depended, which is a pretty valid assumption in majority of real application.

We will show that  $X^T X$  is positive-defined. Take any non-zero  $m$ -dimensional vector  $x$ .

$$x^T X^T X x = (Xx)^T Xx = \|Xx\|^2 > 0. \quad (11.5.1.5)$$

The last inequality is granted by the fact that when  $X$  has full column rank and  $x$  is non-zero,  $Xx$  is also non-zero (otherwise columns would have been linearly dependent).

Thus  $\frac{\partial}{\partial \beta} \left( \frac{\partial \text{RSS}}{\partial \beta} \right)^T = 2X^T X$  is positive-defined everywhere.

It's enough now to find a solution of the equation  $\frac{\partial \text{RSS}}{\partial \beta} = 0$ , i.e.

$$(y - X\beta)^T X = 0. \quad (11.5.1.6)$$

Which is the same as

$$X^T (y - X\beta) = 0, \quad (11.5.1.7)$$

$$X^T y = X^T X \beta, \quad (11.5.1.8)$$

Since  $X^T X$  is positive-defined it's also invertible, therefore

$$\beta = (X^T X)^{-1} X^T y. \quad (11.5.1.9)$$

Since the solution is unique and  $\frac{\partial}{\partial \beta} \left( \frac{\partial \text{RSS}}{\partial \beta} \right)^T$  is positive-defined, by Theorem 11.5.1.2 and Theorem 11.5.1.3, we have found the only one local minimum that RSS has, thus the global minimum.

Note that with the linear regression we are in this lucky unique position, that we can analytically find a global minimum of quadratic error function, which means we are able to find literally the best ever coefficients  $\beta$ . With many other estimators, we will be quite happy when we find a few local minimums and choose merely the minimum of them.



### 11.5.2 Ridge Regression

Now when we are equipped in our tool-set for calculating minimum of the error function, we might want to alter slightly the error function. In cases when we have strongly correlated features in the data, it sometimes happens that some big coefficients might be chosen for them, which nearly cancel themselves in an average but unfortunately produce great variance. To avoid such situation we are adding penalties for too big coefficients.

This could be achieved by the following error function:

$$\text{RSS}(\beta) = (y - X\beta)^T(y - X\beta) + \lambda\beta^T\beta, \quad (11.5.2.1)$$

where  $\lambda > 0$  is a hyper-parameter. By the calculation from the previous sub-section and Theorem 11.4.0.8, we are getting

$$\frac{\partial \text{RSS}}{\partial \beta} = -2(y - X\beta)^T X + 2\lambda\beta^T. \quad (11.5.2.2)$$

and with

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial \beta} \left( \frac{\partial \text{RSS}}{\partial \beta} \right)^T = 2(X^T X + \lambda I). \quad (11.5.2.3)$$

It is easy to show that the above matrix is positive-defined.  $x^T(X^T X + \lambda I)x = (Xx)^T(Xx) + \lambda x^T x > 0$  for any non-zero vector  $x$ .

Note that this time, we don't need additional assumption that  $X$  has a full column rank.  $X^T X + \lambda I$  is positive-defined even if  $X$  has no full rank because of  $\lambda x^T x$  part which is always strictly greater than 0 for each non-zero vector  $x$ .

Now all we need to do is to solve  $\frac{\partial \text{RSS}}{\partial \beta} = 0$  equation.

$$-(y - X\beta)^T X + \lambda\beta^T = 0, \quad (11.5.2.4)$$

$$-X^T(y - X\beta) + \lambda\beta = 0, \quad (11.5.2.5)$$

$$(X^T X + \lambda I)\beta = X^T y \quad (11.5.2.6)$$

$$\beta = (X^T X + \lambda I)^{-1} X^T y. \quad (11.5.2.7)$$

Thus the above  $\beta$  for analogous reasons as in case of ordinary linear regression is a global minimum of the error function RSS. And this time  $X^T X + \lambda I$  is reversible for an arbitrary data matrix  $X$  (because it's positive-defined).

As a side note it's worth to notice that adding and epsilon penalty for the size of coefficients removes mathematical problem of dealings with  $X$  when its columns are linearly dependent - and that was in fact a reason why Ridge Regression was introduced in a first place.

# Chapter 12

## Physical Diary

Because not all material that I go through is ready in my head for the form of a nice logically written section in my notes, I decided to start writing this diary to summarise some pieces of information that I am gaining together with bibliography of the subject, to be able to return to this later.

### 12.1 Leeds, Saturday, 13 October 2018

I am trying to formulate my version of Quantum Mechanics postulates. I am not sure yet, if they are equivalent to generally accepted (e.g. [Hal13]). I am also not sure if they are original, they resemble a bit those from Feynman lectures. Let me first write them here and I will investigate it later. Anyway, the working name for these set of postulates is Leeds Version of Quantum Postulates, because I started to work on them in Leeds and this is only for my internal nomenclature purposes.

All  $L^2$  spaces in this subsection are spaces of complex valued functions.

**Definition 12.1.0.1.** *We will say that a (probabilistic) measurable space  $(X, \mathfrak{M}, \mu)$  is a description of a physical system. We will say that  $x \in X$  is a simple description of a state of physical system.*

**Definition 12.1.0.2.** *Descriptions  $(X_1, \mu_1)$  and  $(X_2, \mu_2)$  are equivalent iff there exists an unitary mapping*

$$U : L^2(X_1, \mu_1) \rightarrow L^2(X_2, \mu_2). \quad (12.1.0.1)$$

**Definition 12.1.0.3.** *Let  $(X, \mu)$  be a description of physical system. An observable is any measurable function  $g : X \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ .*

**Definition 12.1.0.4.** Let  $(X, \mu)$  be a description of physical system. Any  $\psi \in L^2(X, \mu)$  is called description of physical state or superposition of simple descriptions.

**Definition 12.1.0.5.** We will say that  $(X, \mu, K, E)$   $K : \mathbb{R} \rightarrow X^X$  is simple dynamical system iff

1.  $(X, \mu)$  is a description of physical system.
2.  $E : X \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  is a measurable function
- 3.

$$K(t+s)x = K(t)K(s)x \quad (12.1.0.2)$$

for each  $t, s \in \mathbb{R}$  and

- 4.

$$E(K(t)x) = \text{const.} \quad (12.1.0.3)$$

**Axiom 12.1.0.6.** Time evolution  $U$  of description  $\psi$  under a simple dynamical system  $(X, \mu, K, E)$  is given by

$$(U(t)\psi)(x) = \exp(-itE(x))\psi(x). \quad (12.1.0.4)$$

## 12.2 Leeds, Saturday, 20 October 2018

### 12.2.1 Phase Space Interpretation

I was thinking about quantum postulates that give more natural reasons for finding hamiltonian in Schrödinger equation. That's why I started to write (unsuccessfull for now) Section 12.1. My idea is to be more inspired by quasi-distributions of momentum and position in a phase space. It turned out, as very often in such cases, that all of that is already done. We will use Poisson brackets in phase space.

$$\{f, g\} = \sum_i \frac{\partial f}{\partial x_i} \frac{\partial g}{\partial p_i} - \frac{\partial g}{\partial x_i} \frac{\partial f}{\partial p_i}. \quad (12.2.1.1)$$

In classical phase space,  $(x, p)$  are goverened by Hamilton equations

$$\frac{\partial H}{\partial x} = -\dot{p}, \quad (12.2.1.2)$$

$$\frac{\partial H}{\partial p} = \dot{x}. \quad (12.2.1.3)$$

If we assume that probability density  $f_t(x, p)$  is conserved in time, the Liouville's equation holds

$$\frac{\partial f_t}{\partial t} = -\{f_t, H\}. \quad (12.2.1.4)$$

And by that way the time evolution of probability density is described (See 2.5.2). Then I started to think about Wigner quasi-probability distribution. Which is supposed to be the only candidate for joint distribution (such joint distribution usually doesn't exist) of momentum and position in state  $\psi$ . In one dimensional case:

$$W(x, p) = \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_{-\infty}^{+\infty} e^{isp} \psi(x + \frac{s}{2}) \bar{\psi}(x - \frac{s}{2}) ds. \quad (12.2.1.5)$$

The problem with the above function is that it's not everywhere positive. Mentioned in [Sup61] and [see BP02, 2.1.4 Joint probabilities in quantum mechanics], more details in [see Lou90, 3.4 Characteristic functions; The Wigner Distribution Function].

It turned out that time evolution of Wigner function in phase space is a well researched topic. In case of one dimensional particle in potential field  $V$ , which means  $H = \frac{p^2}{2m} + V$ . The evolution of  $W_t(x, p)$  takes form:

$$\frac{\partial W_t}{\partial t} = -\left(\frac{p}{m}\right) \frac{\partial W_t}{\partial x} + \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \left(\frac{i}{2}\right)^{2n} \frac{1}{(2n+1)!} \cdot \frac{\partial^{2n+1} V}{\partial x^{2n+1}} \cdot \frac{\partial^{2n+1} W_t}{\partial p^{2n+1}}. \quad (12.2.1.6)$$

Note that for any  $V$  for which  $\frac{\partial^3 V}{\partial x^3} = 0$ , we have

$$\frac{\partial W_t}{\partial t} = -\{W_t, H\}. \quad (12.2.1.7)$$

Which holds for 2 important cases: 1. Free particle 2. Harmonic Oscillator. The above is described in [see KN91, 3.2 Time Dependence of the Wigner Function]. If we define Moyal bracket

$$\{\{f, g\}\} = \frac{2}{\hbar} f(x, p) \sin\left(\frac{\hbar}{2}(\overleftarrow{\partial}_x \overrightarrow{\partial}_p - \overleftarrow{\partial}_p \overrightarrow{\partial}_x)\right) g(x, p). \quad (12.2.1.8)$$

The general equation (Moyal's evolution equation) for a time evolution has a form:

$$\frac{\partial W_t}{\partial t} = -\{\{W_t, H\}\}. \quad (12.2.1.9)$$

[Moy49, see].

### 12.2.2 Spin

I have found quite interesting book to read as an introduction to spin: [\[Von75\]](#).

## 12.3 Thursday, 1 November 2018

### 12.3.1 Formal derivation of Euler–Lagrange equation

Today I wanted to examine derivation of Euler-Lagrange equation for classical mechanics before I derive the Euler-Lagrange equation for classical field in the Special Relativity context. We want to characterise  $u : [a, b] \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^n$  which is stationary for the functional

$$u \mapsto \int_a^b L(t, u, \dot{u}) dt. \quad (12.3.1.1)$$

where  $L : \mathbb{R} \times \mathbb{R}^n \times \mathbb{R}^n \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  is "nice enough" (we don't consider now in details assumptions about  $L$ ). This means we look for  $u$  for which

$$\delta \int_a^b L(t, u, \dot{u}) dt = 0, \quad (12.3.1.2)$$

for variations  $\delta u$  vanishing at  $a$  and  $b$ . We assume that  $L$  is nice enough that we can move  $\delta$  under integral. Note that

$$0 = \delta \int_a^b L(t, u, \dot{u}) dt = \int_a^b \delta L(t, u, \dot{u}) dt = \int_a^b \delta u \frac{\partial L}{\partial u} + \delta \dot{u} \frac{\partial L}{\partial \dot{u}} dt. \quad (12.3.1.3)$$

On the other hand,

$$\frac{d}{dt} \left( \delta u \frac{\partial L}{\partial \dot{u}} \right) = \delta \dot{u} \frac{\partial L}{\partial \dot{u}} + \delta u \frac{d}{dt} \frac{\partial L}{\partial \dot{u}}. \quad (12.3.1.4)$$

Since  $\delta u$  vanishes at  $a$  and  $b$ , we get:

$$0 = \int_a^b \delta \dot{u} \frac{\partial L}{\partial \dot{u}} dt + \int_a^b \delta u \frac{d}{dt} \frac{\partial L}{\partial \dot{u}} dt. \quad (12.3.1.5)$$

which means that

$$\int_a^b \delta \dot{u} \frac{\partial L}{\partial \dot{u}} dt = - \int_a^b \delta u \frac{d}{dt} \frac{\partial L}{\partial \dot{u}} dt. \quad (12.3.1.6)$$

Now, by (12.3.1.3) and (12.3.1.6) we have

$$0 = \int_a^b \delta u \left( \frac{\partial L}{\partial u} - \frac{d}{dt} \frac{\partial L}{\partial \dot{u}} \right) dt. \quad (12.3.1.7)$$

Since  $\delta u$  is arbitrary, we got Euler–Lagrange equation:

$$\boxed{\frac{\partial L}{\partial u} - \frac{d}{dt} \frac{\partial L}{\partial \dot{u}} = 0} \quad (12.3.1.8)$$

I have found derivation of the Euler–Lagrange equations for classic field theory (Special Relativity) in [see DT12, 8.5.2 The Hamilton Principle of Stationary Action]. The equation for a field  $\phi^\alpha$  is as follows:

$$\frac{\partial \mathcal{L}}{\partial \phi^\alpha} - \partial_\mu \left( \frac{\partial \mathcal{L}}{\partial (\partial_\mu \phi^\alpha)} \right) = 0. \quad (12.3.1.9)$$

In this context  $\mathcal{L} = \mathcal{L}(\phi^\alpha, \partial_\mu \phi^\alpha, x^\mu)$ . The proof requires first to understand spacetime version of Gauss’s Theorem (because of special metric tensor it’s not simply Theorem 11.1.2.17 for  $\mathbb{R}^n$  case).

## 12.4 Saturday, 3 November 2018

### 12.4.1 Spacetime version of Gauss’s Theorem

In this section we will use Einstein summation convention. Based on [see Wal84, Appendix B] we can formulate the following:

**Theorem 12.4.1.1.** *Let  $M$  be a  $n$ -dimensional compact manifold with some metric tensor  $g_{\mu\nu}$ . Integrals below are over volume element induced by  $g$ . Let  $\partial M$  be a  $(n-1)$ -dimensional manifold, which is a boundary of  $M$ . Let  $n^\mu$  be a continuous vector field of unit normal vectors which are "pointing outward" if  $n^\mu$  is spacelike ( $g_{\mu\nu} n^\mu n^\nu < 0$ ) and "pointing inward" if  $n^\mu$  is timelike ( $g_{\mu\nu} n^\mu n^\nu > 0$ ). If  $v^\mu$  is  $C^1$  vector field on  $M$ , then*

$$\int_M \nabla_\mu v^\mu = \int_{\partial M} n_\mu v^\mu. \quad (12.4.1.1)$$



Figure 12.1: Normal vectors to the oriented surface in spacetime. Blue arrows indicate spacelike vectors. Black arrows indicate timelike vectors.

### 12.4.2 Euler–Lagrange equation for Classic Field Theory

Now we are ready to derive an equation (12.3.1.9) in the context of special relativity. For a vector field  $\phi^\alpha$ , let's define an action functional as

$$S(M, \phi^\alpha) := \int_M \mathcal{L}(\phi^\alpha, \partial_\mu \phi^\alpha, x^\mu) d^4x. \quad (12.4.2.1)$$

We want to find a characteristic of a field  $\phi^\alpha$ , for which for any variation  $\delta\phi^\alpha$  which vanishes at  $\partial M$ , we have

$$\delta S = 0. \quad (12.4.2.2)$$

We assume that  $\mathcal{L}$  is "nice enough" that we can go with  $\delta$  under the integral. Thus we have:

$$0 = \int_M \frac{\partial \mathcal{L}}{\partial \phi^\alpha} \delta \phi^\alpha + \frac{\partial \mathcal{L}}{\partial (\partial_\mu \phi^\alpha)} \delta \partial_\mu \phi^\alpha. \quad (12.4.2.3)$$



Note that

$$\partial_\mu \left( \delta\phi^\alpha \frac{\partial \mathcal{L}}{\partial(\partial_\mu \phi^\alpha)} \right) = (\partial_\mu \delta\phi^\alpha) \frac{\partial \mathcal{L}}{\partial(\partial_\mu \phi^\alpha)} + \delta\phi^\alpha \partial_\mu \frac{\partial \mathcal{L}}{\partial(\partial_\mu \phi^\alpha)}. \quad (12.4.2.4)$$

Since  $\delta\phi^\alpha$  which vanishes at  $\partial M$ , by Theorem 12.4.1.1, we have

$$\int_M \partial_\mu \left( \delta\phi^\alpha \frac{\partial \mathcal{L}}{\partial(\partial_\mu \phi^\alpha)} \right) = \int_{\partial M} n_\mu \delta\phi^\alpha \frac{\partial \mathcal{L}}{\partial(\partial_\mu \phi^\alpha)} = 0. \quad (12.4.2.5)$$

Thus by (12.4.2.4), we have

$$\int_M (\partial_\mu \delta\phi^\alpha) \frac{\partial \mathcal{L}}{\partial(\partial_\mu \phi^\alpha)} = - \int_M \delta\phi^\alpha \partial_\mu \frac{\partial \mathcal{L}}{\partial(\partial_\mu \phi^\alpha)}. \quad (12.4.2.6)$$

Since  $\partial_\mu \delta\phi^\alpha = \delta\partial_\mu \phi^\alpha$  and by (12.4.2.3) and (12.4.2.6), we get

$$0 = \int_M \left( \frac{\partial \mathcal{L}}{\partial \phi^\alpha} - \partial_\mu \frac{\partial \mathcal{L}}{\partial(\partial_\mu \phi^\alpha)} \right) \delta\phi^\alpha. \quad (12.4.2.7)$$

Now, since  $\delta\phi^\alpha$  is arbitrary, we get

$$\boxed{\frac{\partial \mathcal{L}}{\partial \phi^\alpha} - \partial_\mu \frac{\partial \mathcal{L}}{\partial(\partial_\mu \phi^\alpha)} = 0} \quad (12.4.2.8)$$

## 12.5 Saturday, 10 November 2018

Today, I am investigating various variational principles in special relativity classic field theory following [She13, 17 The Classical Theory of Fields]

### 12.5.1 Classical Field Theory – Free particle with no field

Let  $x^\mu$  will be a curve which connects points in a spacetime  $a$  and  $b$ . Assume that  $b$  is "accessible" from  $a$  and that we can parametrize the curve by proper time  $\tau$ . Define an action along the curve as

$$S = -m \int_a^b d\tau. \quad (12.5.1.1)$$

We are going to show that the above action is extremised by straight line in a spacetime. We will consider an arbitrary variation  $\delta x^\mu$  which vanishes at  $a$  and  $b$ .

$$\delta S = -m\delta \int_a^b d\tau = m\delta \int_a^b \sqrt{g_{\mu\nu} dx^\mu dx^\nu}. \quad (12.5.1.2)$$

Note that

$$\delta F(f \cdot g) = F(f \cdot g) - F(f \cdot g + \delta(f \cdot g)) = (\delta f \cdot g + f \cdot \delta g) \dot{F}(f \cdot g). \quad (12.5.1.3)$$

Thus

$$\begin{aligned} \delta S &= -\frac{1}{2}m \int_a^b \frac{1}{\sqrt{g_{\mu\nu}dx^\mu dx^\nu}} g_{\mu\nu} (\delta dx^\mu dx^\nu + dx^\mu \delta dx^\nu) \\ &= -m \int_a^b \frac{dx_\mu}{d\tau} \delta dx^\mu = -m \int_a^b u_\mu \delta dx^\mu = -m \int_a^b u_\mu d\delta x^\mu. \end{aligned} \quad (12.5.1.4)$$

Note that

$$d(u_\mu \delta x^\mu) = du_\mu \delta x^\mu + u_\mu d\delta x^\mu. \quad (12.5.1.5)$$

Since  $\delta x^\mu$  vanishes at  $a$  and  $b$ , we have

$$\int_a^b du_\mu \delta x^\mu = - \int_a^b u_\mu d\delta x^\mu. \quad (12.5.1.6)$$

And thus

$$\delta S = m \int_a^b du_\mu \delta x^\mu = m \int_a^b \frac{du_\mu}{d\tau} \delta x^\mu d\tau. \quad (12.5.1.7)$$

Since we require  $\delta S = 0$  for arbitrary  $\delta x^\mu$ , we have

$$\boxed{\frac{du_\mu}{d\tau} = 0} \quad (12.5.1.8)$$

## 12.5.2 Classical Field Theory – Particle in a field with a vector potential

Assume now that we have a vector potential  $A_\mu$ . We are now in the same context as in 12.5.1. The only difference is that we need to update action by the field-interacts-with-particle component. Let's define the action as

$$S = \int_a^b -md\tau + qA_\mu dx^\mu. \quad (12.5.2.1)$$

By what was shown to get (12.5.1.7) we have

$$\delta S = \int_a^b mdu_\mu \delta x^\mu + q(\delta A_\mu dx^\mu + A_\mu \delta dx^\mu). \quad (12.5.2.2)$$

Note that

$$d(A_\mu \delta x^\mu) = dA_\mu \delta x^\mu + A_\mu d\delta x^\mu. \quad (12.5.2.3)$$

Since  $\delta x^\mu$  vanishes in  $a$  and  $b$ .

$$\int_a^b A_\mu d\delta A_\mu = - \int_a^b dA_\mu \delta x^\mu. \quad (12.5.2.4)$$

Going back to 12.5.2.2, we get

$$\delta S = \int_a^b m du_\mu \delta x^\mu + q(\delta A_\mu dx^\mu - dA_\mu \delta x^\mu). \quad (12.5.2.5)$$

Let's calculate  $\delta A_\mu$  and  $dA_\mu$ .

$$\delta A_\mu = \frac{\partial A_\mu}{\partial x^\nu} \delta x^\nu \quad (12.5.2.6)$$

and

$$dA_\mu = \frac{\partial A_\mu}{\partial x^\nu} dx^\nu. \quad (12.5.2.7)$$

Substitute the above in 12.5.2.5

$$\delta S = \int_a^b m du_\mu \delta x^\mu + q\left(\frac{\partial A_\mu}{\partial x^\nu} \delta x^\nu dx^\mu - \frac{\partial A_\mu}{\partial x^\nu} dx^\nu \delta x^\mu\right). \quad (12.5.2.8)$$

As summations in each part of the above equation is independent, we can exchange indecies in the 2nd part, i. e.

$$\delta S = \int_a^b m du_\mu \delta x^\mu + q\left(\frac{\partial A_\nu}{\partial x^\mu} \delta x^\mu dx^\nu - \frac{\partial A_\mu}{\partial x^\nu} dx^\nu \delta x^\mu\right). \quad (12.5.2.9)$$

Now

$$\delta S = \int_a^b \left( m \frac{du_\mu}{d\tau} + q(\partial_\mu A_\nu - \partial_\nu A_\mu) u^\nu \right) \delta x^\mu d\tau. \quad (12.5.2.10)$$

Since  $\delta x^\mu$  is arbitrary and we require  $\delta S = 0$ , we get

$$\boxed{m \frac{du_\mu}{d\tau} = q(\partial_\nu A_\mu - \partial_\mu A_\nu) u^\nu} \quad (12.5.2.11)$$

Which is an equation of motion of a particle with charge  $q$  and mass  $m$  in a field with a vector potential  $A_\mu$ . Let

$$F_{\nu\mu} := \partial_\nu A_\mu - \partial_\mu A_\nu. \quad (12.5.2.12)$$

Note that from definition  $F$  is antisymmetric, i.e.  $F_{\mu\mu} = 0$  and  $F_{\nu\mu} = -F_{\mu\nu}$ . The equation (12.5.2.11) has now a form

$$m \frac{du_\mu}{d\tau} = q F_{\nu\mu} u^\nu. \quad (12.5.2.13)$$

Let's consider a particle  $t \mapsto (\phi^0(t) := t, \phi^1(t), \phi^2(t), \phi^3(t))$  in a certain frame of reference  $x^\mu$ . Define

$$w^\mu := \frac{d\phi^\mu}{dt}. \quad (12.5.2.14)$$

Note that  $\vec{\omega} := (\omega^1, \omega^2, \omega^3)$  is an ordinary 3-dimensional velocity of the particle in the frame of reference  $x^\mu$ . Now assuming that covariant 4-velocity of the particle is  $u_\mu$  and recalling that  $\frac{d\tau}{dt} = u_0^{-1}$ , we may write an equation (12.5.2.13) is a form

$$m \frac{du_\mu}{dt} = q F_{\nu\mu} u^\nu u_0^{-1} = q F_{\nu\mu} \omega^\nu. \quad (12.5.2.15)$$

Which translates into

$$\frac{dp_1}{dt} = q F_{01} + q(\omega^2 F_{21} - \omega^3 F_{13}). \quad (12.5.2.16)$$

$$\frac{dp_2}{dt} = q F_{02} + q(\omega^3 F_{32} - \omega^1 F_{21}). \quad (12.5.2.17)$$

$$\frac{dp_3}{dt} = q F_{03} + q(\omega^1 F_{13} - \omega^2 F_{32}). \quad (12.5.2.18)$$

Now, if we put

$$\vec{E} := (F_{01}, F_{02}, F_{03}) \quad (12.5.2.19)$$

and

$$\vec{B} := (F_{32}, F_{13}, F_{21}). \quad (12.5.2.20)$$

we get

$$\frac{d\vec{p}}{dt} = q\vec{E} + q\vec{\omega} \times \vec{B}. \quad (12.5.2.21)$$

As a reference

$$F_{\nu\mu} = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & E_1 & E_2 & E_3 \\ -E_1 & 0 & -B_3 & B_2 \\ -E_2 & B_3 & 0 & -B_1 \\ -E_3 & -B_2 & B_1 & 0 \end{bmatrix}. \quad (12.5.2.22)$$

## 12.6 Saturday, 17 November 2018

### 12.6.1 The Millikan Oil Drop Experiment

Studied *The Millikan Oil Drop Experiment* from [MJ03] and wrote a bit of python code for it

Listing 12.1: How to calculate elementary charge from experiment data

```
import numpy as np

mu = 1.849e-5
d = 7.63e-4
rho = 1.184
sigma = 883
rho_prim = rho - sigma
g = 9.802 #New York Value
b = 6.17e-6
P = 76.01
V = 500
s = 4.71e-3

def _mu(a0, mu0=mu, P=P):
    return mu0 * ((1 + b/(a0*P))**-1)

def _a0(B, mu=mu):
    return ((9*B*mu*d)/(2*rho_prim*g))**0.5

def _e(A, a, mu):
    return (6*s*np.pi*a*mu*d*A)/V

B1 = [-27.9, -29.6, -28.2, -29.3, -29.4]

a = list(map(lambda B: _a0(1/B, _mu(_a0(1/B))), B1))
better_a = np.array(a).mean()
better_mu = _mu(better_a, mu)
```

## 12.7 Saturday, 8 December 2018

### 12.7.1 Classical picture for studying Einstein-de Haas effect.

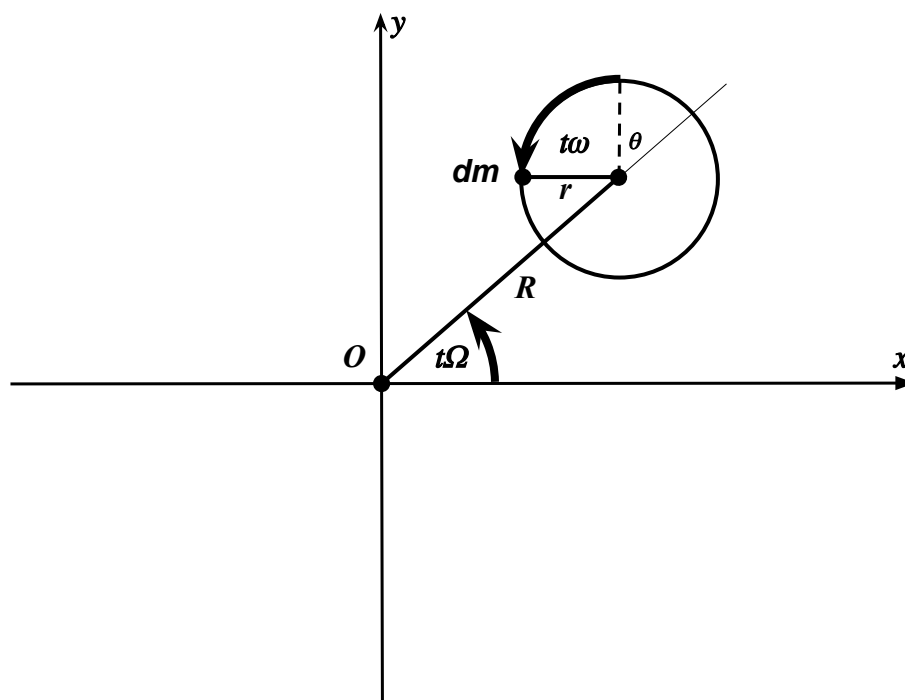


Figure 12.2: A circular hoop rotating around its center, which itself rotates around the central point  $O$ .

Our goal will be to calculate an angular momentum  $\vec{L}$  (relative to the central point  $O$ ) of a system consisting of a circular hoop rotating around its center, which itself also rotates around the central point  $O$ .

Assume that the circular hoop (lying in a plane  $xy$ ) has a mass  $m$  and radius  $r$ , it's rotating around its center (axis of rotation perpendicular to the plane  $xy$ ), which is fixed at one end of an arm of length  $R$  (lying in the plane  $xy$ ) which again rotates with angular velocity  $\Omega$  around its other end  $O$  in a plane of the hoop. Moreover assume that circular hoop rotates with an angular velocity  $\omega$  relative to the arm. The situation is symbolically pictured on Figure 12.2).

Assume that at the moment  $t = 0$  the center of the hoop was in the point  $(R, 0)$ . Consider an infinitesimal element of the hoop  $dm$  which at the

moment  $t = 0$  was at an angle  $\theta$  to the extension of the arm (marked on Figure 12.2). We may assume that  $dm = \rho d\theta$  where  $\rho$  is a constant angular density of the hoop. Let  $\vec{q}_\theta(t)$  denote position of the infinitesimal element of the hoop in time  $t$ .

$$\vec{q}_\theta(t) = (R\cos(t\Omega) + r\cos(t\omega + \theta + t\Omega), R\sin(t\Omega) + r\sin(t\omega + \theta + t\Omega), 0) \quad (12.7.1.1)$$

The angular momentum  $d\vec{L}$  of the infinitesimal element of the hoop is equal to:

$$d\vec{L} = \vec{q}_\theta \times dm\dot{\vec{q}}_\theta. \quad (12.7.1.2)$$

After simplifications done by Mathematica 11.3 ([mat]).

$$\alpha[t\_]:= \Omega * t$$

$$\beta[t\_]:= \omega * t$$

$$\theta[t\_]:= \alpha[t] - \beta[t]$$

$$x[\theta\_-, t\_]:= \{R * \text{Cos}[\alpha[t]] + r * \text{Cos}[\alpha[t] + \beta[t] + \theta],$$

$$R * \text{Sin}[\alpha[t]] + r * \text{Sin}[\alpha[t] + \beta[t] + \theta], 0\}$$

$$\text{xdot}[\theta\_-, t\_]:= D[x[\theta, t], t]$$

$$\text{TrigReduce}[x[\theta, t] \times \text{xdot}[\theta, t]]$$

$$\{0, 0, r^2\omega + r^2\Omega + R^2\Omega + rR\omega\cos[\theta + t\omega] + 2rR\Omega\cos[\theta + t\omega]\}$$

$$d\vec{L} = \rho d\theta (0, 0, r^2(\omega + \Omega) + R^2\Omega + (rR\omega + 2rR\Omega)\cos(\theta + t\omega)). \quad (12.7.1.3)$$

Now

$$\vec{L} = \int_0^{2\pi} d\vec{L} = (0, 0, mr^2(\omega + \Omega) + mR^2\Omega). \quad (12.7.1.4)$$

Let  $\omega'$  be an angular velocity of the hoop relative to the plane  $xy$ , then  $\omega' = \omega + \Omega$ . Assume that  $\vec{L} = (L_x, L_y, L_z)$ . Thus  $L_x = L_y = 0$  and

$$L_z = mr^2\omega' + mR^2\Omega. \quad (12.7.1.5)$$

Assume now that we have a crystal structure in a shape of a cylindrical bar located perpendicularly to the plane  $xy$  with its height parallel to  $z$  - axis. The bar rotates with an angular velocity  $\Omega$  around its symmetry axis which lies along  $z$  - axis. Assume that the crystal structure has  $N$  nodes indexed

from 1 to  $N$ , where  $\Delta m$  is a mass of each node. Assume that each node is a small hoop (lying in the plane parallel to  $xy$  plane) of some small radius  $r$ , rotating around its center with an angular velocity  $\omega'_i$  (relative to plane  $xy$ ) in a plane parallel to  $xy$  plane (axis of rotation goes through the center of the hoop and is perpendicular to the plane  $xy$ ). From this point  $\vec{L} = (L_x, L_y, L_z)$  will denote a total angular momentum of the crystal structure (relative to  $z$  - axis). Let  $\vec{L}_i = (0, 0, \Delta m r^2 \omega'_i)$  be an “intristic” angular momentum of  $i$  - th node (as if ignoring the movement of its center due to the rotation of the bar). Let  $R_i$  be a distance of  $i$  - th node from the bar’s rotation axis.

By (12.7.1.5) we have that total angular momentum of the bar is

$$L_z = \sum_{i=1}^N (L_i)_z + \sum_{i=1}^N \Delta m R_i^2 \Omega = \sum_{i=1}^N (L_i)_z + \Omega \sum_{i=1}^N \Delta m R_i^2. \quad (12.7.1.6)$$

Thus

$$\vec{L} = \sum_{i=1}^N \vec{L}_i + \Omega \vec{I}, \quad (12.7.1.7)$$

where  $\vec{I}$  is a moment of inertia of the solid cylinder of the shape of our cylindrical bar and exactly the same mass.

## 12.8 Thursday, 20 December 2018

### 12.8.1 Lifetime of excited states in Hydrogen

Reviewing Schrödinger model of hydrogen atom, I was also considering theoretical ways to calculate lifetimes of excited states. I have found an interesting paper [VN82] from 1982 which summarises theoretical and experimental results up to date. It is a valuable source of references. Also key word here is: Fermi’s golden rule.

## 12.9 Sunday, 27 January 2019

### 12.9.1 Momentum conservation in the quantum two-body problem

In this subsection, we will work with Planck units. Consider Schrödinger equation of two particles, where interaction depends only on the distance between them.

$$i \frac{\partial \psi}{\partial t} = H \psi, \quad (12.9.1.1)$$



where

$$H\psi = \frac{P_x^2}{2m_x}\psi + \frac{P_y^2}{2m_y}\psi + V(x-y)\psi. \quad (12.9.1.2)$$

and where  $\psi$  depends on  $(t, x, y)$  and  $x = (x_1, x_2, x_3), y = (y_1, y_2, y_3)$ .

$$P_x^2 := P_{x,1}^2 + P_{x,2}^2 + P_{x,3}^2, \quad (12.9.1.3)$$

where

$$P_{x,i} := -i\frac{\partial}{\partial x_i}, \quad (12.9.1.4)$$

and

$$P_y^2 := P_{y,1}^2 + P_{y,2}^2 + P_{y,3}^2, \quad (12.9.1.5)$$

where

$$P_{y,i} := -i\frac{\partial}{\partial y_i}. \quad (12.9.1.6)$$

We are going to prove that

$$[P_{x,i} + P_{y,i}, H] = 0. \quad (12.9.1.7)$$

Let's calculate

$$\begin{aligned} (P_{x,i} + P_{y,i})(V(x-y)\psi) &= \\ &= -i\dot{V}(x-y)\psi + V(x-y)P_{x,i}\psi + (-i)(-\dot{V}(x-y))\psi + V(x-y)P_{y,i}\psi \\ &= V(x-y)(P_{x,i} + P_{y,i})\psi. \end{aligned} \quad (12.9.1.8)$$

On the other hand it's obvious that

$$[P_{x,i} + P_{y,i}, \frac{P_x^2}{2m_x} + \frac{P_y^2}{2m_y}] = 0. \quad (12.9.1.9)$$

Thus by (12.9.1.8) and (12.9.1.9), we have (12.9.1.7).

Found an interesting paper on two-body problem in quantum mechanics [MH08].

## 12.10 Saturday, 23 February 2019

### 12.10.1 Reduced mass in Quantum Mechanics

In this subsection we will continue to work with Hamiltonian introduced in 12.9.1.2 and with annotations introduced in Subsection 12.9.1. Let's introduce new system of coordinates

$$\begin{cases} R := \frac{m_x}{m_x + m_y}x + \frac{m_y}{m_x + m_y}y, \\ r := x - y. \end{cases} \quad (12.10.1.1)$$

We can now express  $\psi$  in  $t, r, R$ .  $R$  is a position of mass centre and  $r$  is a vector between two positions  $x, y$ . Check that

$$\begin{cases} x = R + \frac{m_y}{m_x + m_y}r, \\ y = R - \frac{m_x}{m_x + m_y}r, \end{cases} \quad (12.10.1.2)$$

Define operators

$$P_{r,i} := -i \frac{\partial}{\partial r_i}. \quad (12.10.1.3)$$

and

$$P_{R,i} := -i \frac{\partial}{\partial R_i}. \quad (12.10.1.4)$$

Note that

$$\frac{\partial \psi}{\partial r_i} = \frac{\partial \psi}{\partial x} \frac{\partial x}{\partial r_i} + \frac{\partial \psi}{\partial y} \frac{\partial y}{\partial r_i} = \frac{m_y}{m_x + m_y} \frac{\partial \psi}{\partial x_i} - \frac{m_x}{m_x + m_y} \frac{\partial \psi}{\partial y_i}. \quad (12.10.1.5)$$

Thus

$$P_{r,i} = \frac{m_y}{m_x + m_y} P_{x,i} - \frac{m_x}{m_x + m_y} P_{y,i}. \quad (12.10.1.6)$$

On the other hand

$$P_{R,i} = P_{x,i} + P_{y,i}. \quad (12.10.1.7)$$

Let

$$M = m_x + m_y, \quad (12.10.1.8)$$

which is total mass of the system and

$$\mu = \frac{m_x m_y}{m_x + m_y}, \quad (12.10.1.9)$$

which is reduced mass. Next, note that

$$\frac{P_{r,i}^2}{2\mu} = \frac{m_y}{2m_x(m_x + m_y)} P_{x,i}^2 - \frac{1}{m_x + m_y} P_{x,i} P_{y,i} + \frac{m_x}{2m_y(m_x + m_y)} P_{y,i}^2. \quad (12.10.1.10)$$

On the other hand

$$\frac{P_{R,i}^2}{2M} = \frac{1}{2(m_x + m_y)} (P_{x,i}^2 + 2P_{x,i} P_{y,i} + P_{y,i}^2). \quad (12.10.1.11)$$

Note that

$$\frac{m_y}{2m_x(m_x + m_y)} + \frac{1}{2(m_x + m_y)} = \frac{1}{2m_x}, \quad (12.10.1.12)$$

and

$$\frac{m_x}{2m_x(m_x + m_y)} + \frac{1}{2(m_x + m_y)} = \frac{1}{2m_y}. \quad (12.10.1.13)$$

Thus, eventually we get

$$\frac{P_{r,i}^2}{2\mu} + \frac{P_{R,i}^2}{2M} = \frac{P_x^2}{2m_x} + \frac{P_y^2}{2m_y}. \quad (12.10.1.14)$$

Thus if we introduce two hamiltonians:

$$H_r \psi = \frac{P_{r,i}^2}{2\mu} \psi + V(r) \psi, \quad (12.10.1.15)$$

and

$$H_R \psi = \frac{P_{R,i}^2}{2M} \psi, \quad (12.10.1.16)$$

we will get

$$H = H_r + H_R. \quad (12.10.1.17)$$

It is crucial to note at this point that if we look at  $\psi$  as dependent on  $t, r, R$ ,  $H_r$  acts separately on coordinate  $r$  and  $H_R$  acts separately on coordinate  $R$  and that  $P_{r,i}$  and  $P_{R,i}$  are respectively momentum operators.

Thus we might find solution of stationary equation  $H\psi = E\psi$  by  $\psi(r, R) = \phi_1(r)\phi_2(R)$ , where  $H_r\phi_1 = E_r\phi_1$  and  $H_R\phi_2 = E_R\phi_2$ .

## 12.11 Thursday, 16 May 2019

### 12.11.1 The electromagnetic field as an infinite system of harmonic oscillators

The idea of continuum limit of harmonic oscillators is mentioned in [LB18, 5.3]. It is described in details in [see DT12, 6 Quantization of the Electromagnetic Field].

Non-relativistic probability current in Quantum Mechanics, mentioned in [LB18, 6.2 Probability currents and densities] is introduced e.g. in [Des10, 3.6 Probability conservation].

## 12.12 Sunday, 26 May 2019

### 12.12.1 Derivation of the Schrödinger equation from the Ehrenfest theorems

Through wikipedia's entry on Ehrenfest theorem [see e.g. Des10, 3.7], I have found a paper [BCL<sup>+</sup>12] in which authors shows how to derive Schrödinger equation from the thesis of Ehrenfest theorem. The key point is the use of canonical comutation between momentum and position operators. It is showed as well that if the operators commute, we get Koopman–von Neumann classical mechanics. Recently they managed to generalise their result to Dirac Equation in [CGCARB19].

### 12.12.2 Ehrenfest theorem

Assume that  $\psi(t)$  is a solution of Schrödinger equation

$$i\hbar \frac{d\psi}{dt}(t) = H\psi(t). \quad (12.12.2.1)$$

Consider observable  $A$  which is composed of momentum and position operators.

$$i\hbar \frac{d}{dt}(\psi(t), A\psi(t)) = (i\hbar \frac{d\psi}{dt}(t), A\psi(t)) - (\psi(t), i\hbar \frac{d}{dt}A\psi(t)) \quad (12.12.2.2)$$

As  $A$  is composed of momentum and position operators, it is clear that it comutes with  $\frac{d}{dt}$ , thus we may continue the equation 12.12.2.2 as follows:

$$\begin{aligned}
 (i\hbar \frac{d\psi}{dt}(t), A\psi(t)) - (\psi(t), Ai\hbar \frac{d}{dt}\psi(t)) &= \\
 (H\psi(t), A\psi(t)) - (\psi(t), AH\psi(t)) &= \\
 (\psi(t), HA\psi(t)) - (\psi(t), AH\psi(t)) &= \\
 (\psi(t), (HA - AH)\psi(t)) = (\psi(t), [H, A]\psi(t)). &
 \end{aligned}
 \tag{12.12.2.3}$$

In bra-ket notation:

$$i\hbar \frac{d}{dt} \langle \psi(t) | A | \psi(t) \rangle = \langle \psi(t) | [A, H] | \psi(t) \rangle. \tag{12.12.2.4}$$

Assume that we have hamiltonian

$$H = \sum_{i=0}^3 \frac{P_i^2}{2m} + V(Q_1, Q_2, Q_3). \tag{12.12.2.5}$$

Note that

$$[Q_i, H] = \frac{1}{2m} [P_i^2, Q_i] = \frac{i\hbar P_i}{m}. \tag{12.12.2.6}$$

Thus by 12.12.2.4

$$\frac{d}{dt} \langle \psi(t) | Q_i | \psi(t) \rangle = \frac{1}{m} \langle \psi(t) | P_i | \psi(t) \rangle. \tag{12.12.2.7}$$

Note that

$$[P_i, H] = [P_i, V] = -i\hbar \frac{\partial V}{\partial x_i}. \tag{12.12.2.8}$$

Thus by 12.12.2.4

$$\frac{d}{dt} \langle \psi(t) | P_i | \psi(t) \rangle = \langle \psi(t) | -\frac{\partial V}{\partial x_i} | \psi(t) \rangle. \tag{12.12.2.9}$$

## 12.13 Monday, 27 May 2019

### 12.13.1 Hamiltonian of electromagnetic field

The hamiltonian is itroduced without proof in [Des10, 6.2]. The deriviation can be found in [Gre01, Examples 9.1 and 9.2].

## 12.14 Tuesday, 28 May 2019

### 12.14.1 Interaction with the orbital angular momentum

In [Des10, 6.5], we need to assume  $\vec{B} = \text{const}$ , to have  $A = \frac{1}{2}(\vec{B} \times \vec{r})$  and  $\nabla \times A = B$ .

## 12.15 Tuesday, 2 July 2019

### 12.15.1 Dirac Delta Function in the Context of Fourier Transform in Physical Texts

We will calculate Fourier Transform (as defined in Definition 10.4.0.5) of 1 understood as distribution.

$$\begin{aligned}\mathcal{F}(1)(\phi) &= 1(\mathcal{F}(\phi)) = \int_{\mathbb{R}^n} \mathcal{F}(\phi) \cdot 1 = \int_{\mathbb{R}^n} \mathcal{F}(\phi) \cdot e^{ix \cdot 0} dx = \\ &= (2\pi)^{\frac{n}{2}} \mathcal{F}^{-1}(\mathcal{F}(\phi))(0) = (2\pi)^{\frac{n}{2}} \phi(0).\end{aligned}\tag{12.15.1.1}$$

Thus from the definition of Dirac delta-function understood as distribution

$$\boxed{\mathcal{F}(1) = (2\pi)^{\frac{n}{2}} \delta_0.}\tag{12.15.1.2}$$

Equivalently

$$\delta_0 = (2\pi)^{-\frac{n}{2}} \mathcal{F}(1).\tag{12.15.1.3}$$

Let's calculate now Fourier Transform of Dirac delta:

$$\begin{aligned}\mathcal{F}(\delta_0)(\phi) &= \delta_0(\mathcal{F}(\phi)) = \mathcal{F}(\phi)(0) = \int_{\mathbb{R}^n} \phi(x) e^{-ix \cdot 0} dx = \\ &= (2\pi)^{-\frac{n}{2}} \int_{\mathbb{R}^n} \phi(x) \cdot 1 dx = (2\pi)^{-\frac{n}{2}} 1(\phi).\end{aligned}\tag{12.15.1.4}$$

Thus

$$\boxed{\mathcal{F}(\delta_0) = (2\pi)^{-\frac{n}{2}} \cdot 1.}\tag{12.15.1.5}$$

If we apply inverse Fourier transform to the equation (12.15.1.5), we obtain

$$\delta_0 = (2\pi)^{-\frac{n}{2}} \mathcal{F}^{-1}(1). \quad (12.15.1.6)$$

From equations (12.15.1.2) and (12.15.1.6) it is apparent that

$$\mathcal{F}(1) = \mathcal{F}^{-1}(1) \quad (12.15.1.7)$$

and

$$\mathcal{F}(\delta_0) = \mathcal{F}^{-1}(\delta_0), \quad (12.15.1.8)$$

which is intuitive as both distributions are symmetric. In physics texts (e.g. [Tho16]), equations such as the equation (12.15.1.6) are usually written as

$$\delta(k) = (2\pi)^{-n} \int_{\mathbb{R}^n} e^{ikx} dx, \quad (12.15.1.9)$$

despite the fact that the integral  $\int_{\mathbb{R}^n} e^{ikx} dx$  doesn't exist in classical measure theory sense. If one knows distribution theory, it is easy to understand that the meaning of this is symbolic and has certain algebraic sense, however not experienced reader might encounter great difficulties, when one sees such an intergral for the first time without necessary commentary.

For distribution theory see e.g. [Rud91, Distributions and Fourier Transforms] or [Mik98, 3.3 Distributions].

## 12.16 Saturday, 3 August 2019

### 12.16.1 Futher investigation in mathematical rigor in Dirac notation

My problem is that physists use equations like

$$\langle \psi_\alpha | \psi_\beta \rangle = \delta(\alpha - \beta), \quad (12.16.1.1)$$

even where  $\int \psi_\alpha^* \psi_\beta$  isn't defined properly. As I understand, this requires to see at least the mapping  $\alpha \mapsto \langle \psi_\alpha | \psi_\beta \rangle$  not as a function but distribution. Thus definition of  $\langle \psi_\alpha | \psi_\beta \rangle$  can't be any longer  $\int \psi_\alpha^* \psi_\beta$  in terms of integral over complex functions.

As I understand the proper mathematical rigor is achived through rigged Hilbert spaces. The nice summary of mathematics basis for Dirac formalism is here [GG03] also a good strating point is [dlM05].

I tried to make a shortcut, because in lucky case we can easily understand  $\alpha \mapsto \langle \psi_\alpha | \psi_\beta \rangle$  as distribution for  $\psi_\alpha(x) = e^{-i\alpha x}$  as Fourier transform extended on the space of tempered distribution, I was thinking about the following generalisation:

**Theorem 12.16.1.1.** *Let  $\{u_\alpha\}_{\alpha \in \mathbb{R}^n} \subset S'_n$ . If a transformation  $\mathcal{T}_u$  defined as*

$$(\mathcal{T}_u(\phi))(\alpha) = u_\alpha(\phi) \text{ for } \phi \in S_n \text{ and } \alpha \in \mathbb{R}^n \quad (12.16.1.2)$$

*is a continuous mapping  $\mathcal{T}_u : S_n \rightarrow S_n$ , then the transformation  $\hat{\mathcal{T}}_u$  defined as*

$$\hat{\mathcal{T}}_u(v)(\phi) = v(\mathcal{T}_u(\phi)) \text{ for } v \in S'_n \text{ and } \phi \in S_n, \quad (12.16.1.3)$$

*is a continuous mapping  $\hat{\mathcal{T}}_u : S'_n \rightarrow S'_n$  in  $S'_n$  with weak\* topology.*

*Proof.* This version or very similiar should be proved. Not done yet.  $\square$

However, even if above theorem is true, it doesn't solve the main issue because opposite to the special case of Fourier transform, transformation  $\hat{\mathcal{T}}_u$  in general case is not an extension of  $\mathcal{T}_u$  in sense of  $S_n \subset S'_n$  (when we consider functions from  $S_n$  as distributions).

Now I will try to study if I can't achive something similiar using integral in space of measurable functions into the space of distributions. But most likely this aproach will be not successul as Schwartz showed that multiplication of distributions is not associative ([see [Mau80](#), XIX. Theory of Distributions 7. Operations of distributions])

## 12.16.2 Plan for rigorous theory which includes Dirac notation

We will need a notion of integral of distribution  $u \in \mathcal{D}'(\mathbb{R}^n)$

$$\int_A u d\mu \quad (12.16.2.1)$$

defined as some kind of limit  $\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} u(\psi_n)$  where  $D(\mathbb{R}^n) \ni \psi_n \rightarrow 1_A$  in certain sense. With this kind of definition we will have

$$\int_{\mathbb{R}^n} \delta_z dx = 1, \quad (12.16.2.2)$$

for any  $z \in \mathbb{R}^n$ , where  $\delta_z$  is Dirac delta in point  $z$ . We will also need to define the integral of functions with values in the space of distributions. Something like that:

**Definition 12.16.2.1.** *Let  $\Omega$  be an open subset of  $\mathbb{R}^k$  and let  $\mu$  be any Borel measure on  $\Omega$  and let  $A$  be any borel set. Let  $u : A \rightarrow \mathcal{D}'(\mathbb{R}^k)$  be a function*



for which a function  $A \ni \alpha \mapsto u_\alpha(\psi)$  is measurable for any  $\phi \in \mathcal{D}(\Omega)$ . We will call such  $u$  measurable. We define that

$$\int_A u_\alpha d\mu(\alpha) := v \quad (12.16.2.3)$$

iff  $v \in \mathcal{D}'(\Omega)$  and

$$v(\phi) = \int_A u_\alpha(\phi) d\mu(\alpha) \text{ for any } \phi \in \mathcal{D}(\Omega). \quad (12.16.2.4)$$

We say that the integral from (12.16.2.3) exists if there exists such a  $v$ .

Note that with this setup for any measurable function  $f : A \rightarrow \mathbb{C}$  the integral  $\int_A f(\alpha) u_\alpha d\mu(\alpha)$  has sense, as we treat  $f(\alpha)$  as scalar value by which we multiply distribution  $u_\alpha$ .

When in our considerations we treat distributions  $\mathcal{D}'(\Omega)$  as vectors, the equivalent of matrix are distributions  $\mathcal{D}'(\Omega \times \Omega)$ . In that sense we might want to concatenate values of  $u : \Omega \rightarrow \mathcal{D}'(\Omega)$  into matrix  $U \in \mathcal{D}'(\Omega \times \Omega)$ . In order to do that we introduce operation  $(\cdot)_{\alpha \in \Omega}$ .

**Definition 12.16.2.2. (*Generalised matrix*)** Let  $\Omega$  be an open subset of  $\mathbb{R}^k$  and  $u : \Omega \rightarrow \mathcal{D}'(\Omega)$  be Borel measurable. We define

$$(u_\alpha)_{\alpha \in \Omega} := U \quad (12.16.2.5)$$

iff  $U \in \mathcal{D}'(\Omega \times \Omega)$  and

$$U(\phi) = \int_\Omega u_\alpha(\phi(\alpha, \cdot)) d\alpha, \quad (12.16.2.6)$$

for any  $\phi \in \mathcal{D}(\Omega \times \Omega)$ . We say that  $(u_\alpha)_{\alpha \in \Omega}$  exists if there is such  $U$ .

For any function  $f : A \times B \rightarrow C$  defined on the product of sets, we can define transposition as  $f^T : B \times A \rightarrow C$  such that  $f^T(b, a) = f(a, b)$  for any  $a \in A$  and  $b \in B$ . Note that for any  $\phi \in \mathcal{D}(\Omega \times \Omega)$ , we have  $\phi^T \in \mathcal{D}(\Omega \times \Omega)$ .

**Definition 12.16.2.3. (*Generalised transposition*)** Let  $\Omega$  be an open subset of  $\mathbb{R}^k$  and let  $U \in \mathcal{D}'(\Omega \times \Omega)$ . We define a transposition of  $U$  as  $U^T \in \mathcal{D}'(\Omega \times \Omega)$  such that

$$U^T(\phi) := U(\phi^T) \text{ for any } \phi \in \mathcal{D}(\Omega \times \Omega). \quad (12.16.2.7)$$

In this terms for any measurable  $\Omega \ni \alpha \mapsto u_\alpha \in \mathcal{D}'(\Omega)$  and  $\psi \in C^\infty(\Omega)$  we can define Dirac bra-ket understood as a distribution with domain indicated by argument  $\alpha$

$$\langle \psi | u_\alpha \rangle := \int_\Omega \psi(\beta)^* u^\beta d\alpha. \quad (12.16.2.8)$$

where  $\Omega \ni \beta \mapsto u^\beta \in \mathcal{D}'(\Omega)$  is a measurable function such that  $(u^\beta)_{\beta \in \Omega} = ((u_\alpha)_{\alpha \in \Omega})^T$ , provided that the integral exists. Next we can extend this as

$$\langle v | u_\alpha \rangle := \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \langle \psi_n | u_\alpha \rangle, \quad (12.16.2.9)$$

if the above limit (understood in  $\mathcal{D}'(\Omega)$  with weak-\* topology) exists and is the same for any  $\mathcal{D}(\Omega)\psi_n \rightarrow v$  in  $\mathcal{D}'(\Omega)$  with weak-\* topology.

Note that if  $\alpha \rightarrow \langle v | u_\alpha \rangle$  happen to be a function, each complex value  $\langle v | u_\alpha \rangle$  has sense for any  $\alpha$ . Thus this definition defines Dirac bra-kets as scalars whenever they have sense as scalars. It is possible that for this all to work additional condition that  $u_\alpha$  is in certain sense orthogonal basis might be required.

There is a chance this construction will evolve into generalised vector spaces with vectors generalised to measures with notation  $\int_A f(\alpha) u_\alpha d\mu(\alpha)$  which unifies finite and infinite dimension vector spaces.

When we will write  $\langle v | u_\alpha \rangle$  in the context of distribution, it will always mean distribution with the domain indicated by the index in bra.

**Remark 12.16.2.4.** *If we are in the context of tempered distributions, we need to replace  $\mathcal{D}(\Omega)$  by  $S_k$ ,  $\mathcal{D}'(\Omega)$  by  $S'_k$ ,  $\mathcal{D}(\Omega \times \Omega)$  by  $S_{2k}$  and  $\mathcal{D}'(\Omega \times \Omega)$  by  $S'_{2k}$  in the above definitions.*

## 12.17 Sunday, 18 August 2019

### 12.17.1 Rigorous Dirac Formulation

We will continue considerations that we began in subsection 12.16.2. We will use dirac delta  $\delta_\alpha$  as defined in Definition 10.5.3.14. We will also define

**Definition 12.17.1.1.** *Let  $\alpha \in \mathbb{R}^k$ . Let's define  $e_\alpha : \mathbb{R}^k \rightarrow \mathbb{C}$  as*

$$e_\alpha(x) = (2\pi)^{-\frac{k}{2}} e^{-i\alpha \cdot x}. \quad (12.17.1.1)$$

*By Example 10.5.4.11 we can treat  $e_\alpha$  as an element of  $S'_k$ .*

**Fact 12.17.1.2.** *Let  $\alpha \in \mathbb{R}^k$ , then  $\mathcal{F}(\delta_\alpha) = e_\alpha$ .*

*Proof.*

$$\mathcal{F}(\delta_\alpha)(\phi) = \delta_\alpha(\mathcal{F}(\phi)) = \mathcal{F}(\phi)(\alpha) = \int e_\alpha \phi = e_\alpha(\phi) \quad (12.17.1.2)$$

for any  $\phi \in S_n$ .  $\square$

**Fact 12.17.1.3.** Let  $\alpha \in \mathbb{R}^k$ , then  $\mathcal{F}(e_\alpha) = \delta_{-\alpha}$ .

*Proof.*

$$\mathcal{F}(e_\alpha)(\phi) = e_\alpha(\mathcal{F}(\phi)) = \int e_\alpha \mathcal{F}(\phi) = \phi(-\alpha) = \delta_{-\alpha}(\phi) \quad (12.17.1.3)$$

for any  $\phi \in S_n$ .  $\square$

**Proposition 12.17.1.4.**  $(\delta_\alpha)_{\alpha \in \mathbb{R}^k} = ((\delta_\alpha)_{\alpha \in \mathbb{R}^k})^T$ .

*Proof.* Let  $U = (\delta_\alpha)_{\alpha \in \mathbb{R}^k}$ . Note that by Definition 12.19.1.1  $U(\phi) = \int \phi(\alpha, \alpha) d\alpha$ . Thus  $U^T = U$ .  $\square$

**Proposition 12.17.1.5.**  $(e_\alpha)_{\alpha \in \mathbb{R}^k} = ((e_\alpha)_{\alpha \in \mathbb{R}^k})^T$ .

*Proof.* Let  $U = (e_\alpha)_{\alpha \in \mathbb{R}^k}$ . By Definition 12.19.1.1

$$U(\phi) = (2\pi)^{-\frac{k}{2}} \int \int e^{-i\alpha \cdot \beta} \phi(\alpha, \beta) d\alpha d\beta. \quad (12.17.1.4)$$

Thus  $U^T = U$ .  $\square$

**Definition 12.17.1.6.** Let  $\Omega$  be an open subset of  $\mathbb{R}^k$ . Define  $(.)^* : D'(\Omega) \rightarrow D'(\Omega)$  as

$$u^*(\phi) := (u(\phi^*))^*, \quad (12.17.1.5)$$

where  $u \in D'(\Omega)$  and  $\phi \in D(\Omega)$ .

**Corollary 12.17.1.7.**  $(.)^* : D'(\Omega) \rightarrow D'(\Omega)$  is continuous in  $\mathcal{D}'(\Omega)$  with weak-\* topology.

**Corollary 12.17.1.8.**  $\delta_\alpha^* = \delta_\alpha$  for any  $\alpha \in \mathbb{R}^k$ .

**Corollary 12.17.1.9.**  $e_\alpha^* = e_{-\alpha}$  for any  $\alpha \in \mathbb{R}^k$ .

**Theorem 12.17.1.10.** If  $u \in \mathcal{D}'(\mathbb{R}^k)$ , then

$$\langle u | \delta_\alpha \rangle = u^*. \quad (12.17.1.6)$$

*Proof.* Take any  $D(\mathbb{R}^k) \ni f_n \rightarrow u$  in  $\mathcal{D}'(\mathbb{R}^k)$  with weak-\* topology. We should have

$$\langle f_n | \delta_\alpha \rangle = \int f_n^*(\alpha) \delta_\alpha d\alpha. \quad (12.17.1.7)$$

Take any  $\phi \in \mathcal{D}'(\mathbb{R}^k)$ .

$$\int f_n^*(\alpha) \delta_\alpha(\phi) d\alpha = \int f_n^*(\alpha) \phi(\alpha) d\alpha \rightarrow u^*(\phi). \quad (12.17.1.8)$$

Thus  $\langle f_n | \delta_\alpha \rangle = f_n^* \rightarrow u^*$ .  $\square$

The above proof could be easily modified to give the following:

**Theorem 12.17.1.11.** *(In the context of tempered distributions) If  $u \in S'_n$ , then*

$$\langle u | \delta_\alpha \rangle = u^*. \quad (12.17.1.9)$$

**Corollary 12.17.1.12.**  $\langle \delta_\beta | \delta_\alpha \rangle = \delta_\beta$ .

Which is in our convention exactly equivalent to what physicists mean by  $\langle \delta_\beta | \delta_\alpha \rangle = \delta(\alpha - \beta)$ .

**Theorem 12.17.1.13.** *(In the context of tempered distributions) If  $u \in S'_k$ , then*

$$\langle u | e_\alpha \rangle = \mathcal{F}^{-1}(u)^*. \quad (12.17.1.10)$$

*Proof.* Take any  $S_k \ni f_n \rightarrow u$  in  $\mathcal{D}'(\mathbb{R}^k)$  with weak-\* topology. We should have

$$\langle f_n | e_\alpha \rangle = \int f_n^*(\alpha) e_\alpha d\alpha. \quad (12.17.1.11)$$

Take any  $\phi \in S'_k$ .

$$\int f_n^*(\alpha) e_\alpha(\phi) d\alpha = \int f_n^*(\alpha) \mathcal{F}(\phi)(\alpha) d\alpha = (\mathcal{F}^{-1}(f_n))^*(\phi) \rightarrow (\mathcal{F}^{-1}(u))^*(\phi). \quad (12.17.1.12)$$

Thus  $\langle f_n | e_\alpha \rangle = (\mathcal{F}^{-1}(f_n))^* \rightarrow (\mathcal{F}^{-1}(u))^*$ .  $\square$

**Corollary 12.17.1.14.**  $\langle e_\beta | e_\alpha \rangle = \delta_\beta$ .

*Proof.*  $\langle e_\beta | e_\alpha \rangle = \mathcal{F}^{-1}(e_\beta)^* = \delta_\beta^* = \delta_\beta$ .  $\square$

This is in our convention, again exactly equivalent to what physicists mean by  $\langle e_\beta | e_\alpha \rangle = \delta(\alpha - \beta)$ .

## 12.18 Monday, 19 August 2019

### 12.18.1 Rigorous Dirac Formulation - Matrix as Distribution

In Definition 12.19.1.1 we built an analogy between matrix and distribution. Let's now define matrix-vector multiplication.

**Fact 12.18.1.1.** *If  $\phi \in S_{k_1}$  and  $\psi \in S_{k_2}$ , then*

$$\|\phi \otimes \psi\|_N^S \leq \|\phi\|_N^S \|\psi\|_N^S \quad (12.18.1.1)$$

*Proof.* We will split each multindex  $\alpha$  into  $\alpha = \alpha_1, \alpha_2$  where  $\alpha_1$  is multindex consists from first  $k_1$  indecies and  $\alpha_2$  consits from  $k_2$  subsequent indecies.

$$\begin{aligned} \|\phi \otimes \psi\|_N^S &= \sup_{(x,y) \in \mathbb{R}^{k_1} \times \mathbb{R}^{k_2}} \sup_{|\alpha_1, \alpha_2| \leq N} (1 + |x|^2 + |y|^2)^N |D^{\alpha_1} \phi(x)| |D^{\alpha_2} \psi(y)| \\ &\leq \sup_{(x,y) \in \mathbb{R}^{k_1} \times \mathbb{R}^{k_2}} \sup_{|\alpha_1| \leq N, |\alpha_2| \leq N} (1 + |x|^2)^N (1 + |y|^2)^N |D^{\alpha_1} \phi(x)| |D^{\alpha_2} \psi(y)| \\ &\leq \|\phi\|_N^S \|\psi\|_N^S. \end{aligned} \quad (12.18.1.2)$$

□

**Corollary 12.18.1.2.** *If  $\phi \in S_{k_1}$  and  $\psi \in S_{k_2}$ , then  $\phi \otimes \psi \in S^{k_1+k_2}$ .*

**Corollary 12.18.1.3.** *Let  $\phi \in S_{k_1}$ , then the mapping  $S_{k_2} \ni \psi \mapsto \phi \otimes \psi \in S^{k_1+k_2}$  is continuous.*

*Proof.* Take any  $\psi_n \rightarrow 0$  in  $S_{k_2}$ . Thus  $\|\psi_n\|_N^S \rightarrow 0$  for  $N = 0, 1, \dots$ . Hence  $\|\phi \otimes \psi_n\|_N^S \leq \|\phi\|_N^S \|\psi_n\|_N^S \rightarrow 0$  for  $N = 0, 1, \dots$ . Therefore the mapping  $\psi \mapsto \phi \otimes \psi$  is continous in  $S_{k_1+k_2}$  □

**Definition 12.18.1.4.** *Let  $U \in S'_{2k}$ . For any  $\phi \in S_k$ , we will define  $U \bullet \phi$  as linear functional on  $S_k$  such that*

$$(U \bullet \phi)(\psi) := U(\phi \otimes \psi) \quad (12.18.1.3)$$

for any  $\psi \in S_k$ .

**Theorem 12.18.1.5.** *Let  $U \in S'_{2k}$ . If  $\phi \in S_k$ , then  $U \bullet \phi \in S'_k$ .*

*Proof.* Since by Corollary 12.18.1.3 the mapping  $\psi \mapsto \phi \otimes \psi$  is continuous and  $U$  is a continuous linear functional on  $S_{2k}$ ,  $\psi \mapsto U(\phi \otimes \psi)$  is a continuous linear functional on  $S_k$ . Therefore,  $U \bullet \phi \in S'_k$ .  $\square$

**Corollary 12.18.1.6.** *If  $U \in S'_{2k}$ , then  $S_k \ni \phi \mapsto U \bullet \phi \in S'_k$  is a linear mapping.*

We proved that  $U \bullet S_k \subset S'_k$ . We will consider situations in which the image of  $S_k$  are tempered distributions which are functions from  $S_k$ . We will write simply  $U \bullet S_k \subset S_k$ , treating  $S_k$  at the right side of inclusion as embedded in  $S'_k$ .

In the following theorems and proofs for any  $\Lambda_u$  for any  $u \in S_k$  will denote the corresponding element of  $S'_k$  exactly as in Theorem 10.5.4.8.

**Theorem 12.18.1.7.** *Let  $U \in S'_{2k}$ . If  $U \bullet S_k \subset S_k$ , then the mapping  $S_k \ni \phi \mapsto U \bullet \phi \in S_k$  is continuous.*

*Proof.* Since by Theorem 10.5.4.4  $S_n$  is a Fréchet space and by this F-space, it is enough to prove that the graph of the linear mapping  $S_k \ni \phi \mapsto U \bullet \phi \in S_k$  is closed and then by Theorem 10.5.2.14 (The closed graph theorem) it will be immediately proven that the mapping is continuous.

Take a sequence  $\phi_n \rightarrow \phi$  in  $S_k$  such that  $U \bullet \phi_n \rightarrow v$  in  $S_k$  (note that  $U \bullet S_k \subset S_k$  in sense of embedding  $S_k$  in  $S'_k$ ). Writing this in more rigorous way, we have a sequence  $f_n \in S_n$  such that  $f_n \rightarrow v \in S_k$  in topology  $S_k$  such that  $\Lambda_{f_n} = U \bullet \phi_n$ .

By Corollary 12.18.1.3 the mapping  $S_k \ni \phi \mapsto \phi \otimes \psi \in S_{2k}$  is continuous and  $U$  is a continuous linear functional on  $S_{2k}$ , thus  $S_k \ni \phi \mapsto U(\phi \otimes \psi) = (U \bullet \phi)(\psi) \in \mathbb{C}$  is a continuous linear functional on  $S_k$  for any fixed  $\psi \in S_k$ . Therefore  $(U \bullet \phi_n)(\psi) \rightarrow (U \bullet \phi)(\psi)$  for any fixed  $\psi \in S_k$ , which means that  $U \bullet \phi_n \rightarrow U \bullet \phi$  in  $S'_k$  with weak-\* topology. But by Theorem 10.5.4.8,  $U \bullet \phi_n = \Lambda_{f_n} \rightarrow \Lambda_v$  in  $S'_k$  with weak-\* topology. Since  $S'_k$  with weak-\* topology it is a Hausdorff TVS and hence Hausdorff, we have  $\Lambda_v = U \bullet \phi$ . Thus in sense of embedding  $S_k$  in  $S'_k$ , we have  $v = U \bullet \phi$ . This establishes that the graph of the linear mapping  $S_k \ni \phi \mapsto U \bullet \phi \in S_k$  is closed and by this completes the proof.  $\square$

**Theorem 12.18.1.8.** *If  $U \in S'_{2k}$  such that  $U^T \bullet S_k \subset S_k$ , then*

$$(U \bullet \phi)(\psi) = \Lambda_\phi(U^T \bullet \psi) \quad (12.18.1.4)$$

*for any  $\phi \in S_k$  and  $\psi \in S_k$ .*

*Proof.*

$$\begin{aligned}
 \Lambda_\phi(U^T \bullet \psi) &= \int \phi(U^T \bullet \psi) = (U^T \bullet \psi)(\phi) \\
 &= U^T(\psi \otimes \phi) = U((\psi \otimes \phi)^T) = U(\phi \otimes \psi) = (U \bullet \phi)(\psi)
 \end{aligned}
 \tag{12.18.1.5}$$

□

In spite of the above theorem, we can extend  $U \bullet (\cdot)$  to  $S'_k$ .

**Definition 12.18.1.9.** Let  $U \in S'_{2k}$  such that  $U^T \bullet S_k \subset S_k$ . For any  $v \in S'_k$ , we will define  $U \bullet v$  as a linear functional on  $S_k$  such that

$$(U \bullet v)(\psi) := v(U^T \bullet \psi) \tag{12.18.1.6}$$

for any  $\psi \in S_k$ .

**Theorem 12.18.1.10.** Let  $U \in S'_{2k}$  such that  $U^T \bullet S_k \subset S_k$ . If  $v \in S'_k$ , then  $U \bullet v \in S'_k$ .

*Proof.* By Theorem 12.18.1.7, the mapping  $S_k \ni \psi \mapsto U^T \bullet \psi \in S_k$  is continuous. Thus by Definition 12.18.1.9,  $U \bullet v \in S'_k$ . □

**Theorem 12.18.1.11.** Let  $U \in S'_{2k}$  such that  $U^T \bullet S_k \subset S_k$ . The linear mapping  $S'_k \ni v \mapsto U \bullet v \in S'_k$  is continuous in  $S'_k$  with weak-\* topology.

*Proof.* Take any  $v_n \rightarrow v$  in  $S'_k$  with weak-\* topology. Obviously  $v_n(U^T \bullet \psi) \rightarrow v(U^T \bullet \psi)$  for any fixed  $\psi \in S_k$ . Thus by Definition 12.18.1.9, the mapping  $S'_k \ni v \mapsto U \bullet v \in S'_k$  is continuous in  $S'_k$  with weak-\* topology. □

## 12.19 Friday, 23 August 2019

Question of the day: What is a dual to  $S'_k$  with strong topology? Is this possible that  $S_k$ ? If so, can't we somehow deduce that for each linear continuous  $L : S_k \rightarrow S'_k$  (for starters in  $S'_k$  strong dual),  $L^T : S'_k \rightarrow S_k$  and thus  $L^T(S_k) \subset S_k$ ? But that would mean that convergence in  $S_k$  in strong dual  $S'_k$  topology implies convergence in  $S_k$ . Can this be true??

### 12.19.1 Rigorous Dirac Formulation - continuation (1)

I have noticed that we may apply Schwartz kernel theorem to improve the reasoning from subsection (12.18.1). As completely different thing, we will improve a bit general matrix definition. We inverted it compared with Definition 12.18.1.4.

**Definition 12.19.1.1. (*Generalised matrix*)** Let  $u : \mathbb{R}^k \rightarrow S'_k$  and  $\mu$  be a complex or positive Borel measure on  $\mathbb{R}^k$  be Borel measurable. We define

$$(u_\alpha)_{\mu; \alpha \in \Omega} := U \quad (12.19.1.1)$$

iff  $U \in S'_{2k}$  and

$$U^T \bullet \phi = \int_{\mathbb{R}^k} \phi(\alpha) u_\alpha d\mu(\alpha), \quad (12.19.1.2)$$

for any  $\phi \in S_k$ . We say that  $(u_\alpha)_{\mu; \alpha \in \mathbb{R}^k}$  exists if there is such  $U$ . If  $\mu$  is a Lebesgue measure, we will omit it writing just  $(u_\alpha)_{\alpha \in \Omega}$ .

We will demonstrate an example to show why arbitrary Borel measure  $\mu$  is needed. Let's first introduce certain usefull abbreviation  $\phi^y(x) := \phi(x, y)$ .

**Example 12.19.1.2.** Let  $u : \mathbb{R}^k \rightarrow S'_k$ . Let  $\mu$  be concentrated on set  $\{y_1, y_2\} \subset \mathbb{R}^k$  such that  $\mu(y_1) = \mu(y_2) = 1$ . There exists  $U \in S'_{2k}$  such that

$$U(\phi) = u_{y_1}(\phi^{y_1}) + u_{y_2}(\phi^{y_2}) = (u_\alpha)_{\mu; \alpha \in \mathbb{R}^k} \quad (12.19.1.3)$$

**Theorem 12.19.1.3.** Let  $U \in S'_{2k}$  and  $u : \mathbb{R}^k \rightarrow S'_k$  be a family of tempered distributions such that  $U = (u_\alpha)_{\alpha \in \mathbb{R}^k}$ .

$$U \bullet \phi = \underset{a.e.}{[\mathbb{R}^k \ni \alpha \mapsto u_\alpha(\phi)]} \text{ for any } \phi \in S_k. \quad (12.19.1.4)$$

*Proof.* Let's fix  $\phi \in S_k$ . By Definition 12.19.1.1 we have

$$(U \bullet \phi)(\psi) = (U^T \bullet \psi)(\phi) = \int \psi(\alpha) u_\alpha(\phi) d\alpha \quad (12.19.1.5)$$

for any  $\psi \in S_k$ . Thus thesis.  $\square$

**Definition 12.19.1.4.** We will call a family  $u : \mathbb{R}^k \rightarrow S'_k$  weakly continuous iff a function  $\mathbb{R}^k \ni \alpha \mapsto u_\alpha(\phi)$  is continuous for every  $\phi \in S'_k$ .

**Theorem 12.19.1.5.** If  $U \in S_{2k}$  and  $U \bullet S_k \subset S_k$  and  $u : \mathbb{R}^k \rightarrow S'_k$  is a weakly continuous family of tempered distributions such that  $(u_\alpha)_{\alpha \in \mathbb{R}^k} = U$ , then

$$U^T \bullet \delta_\alpha = u_\alpha \text{ for every } \alpha \in \mathbb{R}^k. \quad (12.19.1.6)$$



*Proof.* Take any  $\phi \in S_k$ . We have

$$(U^T \bullet \delta_\alpha)(\phi) = \delta_\alpha(U \bullet \phi) = u_\alpha(\phi). \quad (12.19.1.7)$$

The last equality is by Theorem 12.19.1.3 and the fact that family  $u_\alpha$  is weakly continuous.  $\square$

**Definition 12.19.1.6.** Let  $U \in S'_{2k}$  and  $U \bullet S_k \subset S_k$  and  $u : \mathbb{R}^k \rightarrow S'_k$  is a family of tempered distributions such that  $(u_\alpha)_{\alpha \in \mathbb{R}^k} = U$ . Let  $\lambda \in S'_k$ .

$$\int \lambda u_\alpha d\alpha := U^T \bullet \lambda. \quad (12.19.1.8)$$

**Theorem 12.19.1.7.** If  $U \in S'_{2k}$  and  $U^T \bullet S_k \subset S_k$ , then  $(U \bullet \delta_\alpha)_{\alpha \in \mathbb{R}^k} = U^T$ .

*Proof.* Take any  $\phi, \psi \in S_k$

$$\begin{aligned} \left( \int \phi(\alpha)(U \bullet \delta_\alpha) d\alpha \right)(\psi) &= \int \phi(\alpha)(U \bullet \delta_\alpha)(\psi) d\alpha = \\ &= \int \phi(\alpha) \delta_\alpha(U^T \bullet \psi) d\alpha = \left( \int \phi(\alpha) \delta_\alpha d\alpha \right)(U^T \bullet \psi) = \Lambda_\phi(U^T \bullet \psi) = (U \bullet \phi)(\psi). \end{aligned} \quad (12.19.1.9)$$

Thus by Definition 12.19.1.1 thesis.  $\square$

**Corollary 12.19.1.8.** If  $U \in S'_{2k}$  and  $U^T \bullet S_k \subset S_k$  and  $\lambda \in S'_k$ , then

$$\int \lambda(U \bullet \delta_\alpha) d\alpha = U \bullet \lambda. \quad (12.19.1.10)$$

**Theorem 12.19.1.9.** If  $U \in S'_{2k}$ ,  $U^T \bullet S_k \subset S_k$  and  $V \in S'_{2k}$ ,  $V^T \bullet S_k \subset S_k$  then there exists unique  $W \in S'_{2k}$ , such that

$$W \bullet \phi = U \bullet (V \bullet \phi) \text{ for every } \phi \in S_k. \quad (12.19.1.11)$$

*Proof.* Let's define a mapping  $L(\phi) := U \bullet (V \bullet \phi)$  for any  $\phi \in S_k$ . By Theorem 12.18.1.7 applied to  $V$  and Theorem 12.18.1.11 applied to  $U$ , we have  $L : S_k \rightarrow S'_k$  is continuous with weak-\* topology on  $S'_k$ . Therefore by Theorem 10.5.5.3, there exists an unique  $W \in S'_{2k}$  such that  $W \bullet \phi = L(\phi)$ .  $\square$

The above theorem enables us to formulate the following definition.

**Definition 12.19.1.10.** Let  $U \in S'_{2k}$ ,  $U^T \bullet S_k \subset S_k$  and  $V \in S'_{2k}$ ,  $V^T \bullet S_k \subset S_k$ .

$$U \bullet V := W \quad (12.19.1.12)$$

iff

$$W \bullet \phi = U \bullet (V \bullet \phi) \text{ for every } \phi \in S_k. \quad (12.19.1.13)$$

**Theorem 12.19.1.11.** If  $U \in S'_{2k}$ ,  $U^T \bullet S_k \subset S_k$  and  $V \in S'_{2k}$ ,  $V^T \bullet S_k \subset S_k$  then

$$(U \bullet V)^T = V^T \bullet U^T. \quad (12.19.1.14)$$

*Proof.* Take any  $\phi, \psi \in S_k$

$$\begin{aligned} ((U \bullet V) \bullet \phi)(\psi) &= (U \bullet (V \bullet \phi))(\psi) = (V \bullet \phi)(U^T \bullet \psi) = \Lambda_\phi(V^T \bullet (U^T \bullet \psi)) \\ &= \Lambda_\phi((V^T \bullet U^T) \bullet \psi) = (((V^T \bullet U^T)^T) \bullet \phi)(\psi). \end{aligned} \quad (12.19.1.15)$$

□

**Corollary 12.19.1.12.** If  $U \in S'_{2k}$ ,  $U^T \bullet S_k \subset S_k$  and  $V \in S'_{2k}$ ,  $V^T \bullet S_k \subset S_k$  then  $(V \bullet U)^T \bullet S_k \subset S_k$

**Theorem 12.19.1.13.** Let  $V \in S'_{2k}$  such that  $V \bullet S_k \subset S_k$  and  $v : \mathbb{R}^k \rightarrow S'_k$  be a family of tempered distributions such that  $(v_\alpha)_{\alpha \in \mathbb{R}^k} = V$ . If  $U \in S'_{2k}$  and  $U^T \bullet S_k \subset S_k$  and  $\lambda \in S'_k$ , then

$$(U \bullet v_\alpha)_{\alpha \in \mathbb{R}^k} = (U \bullet V^T)^T \text{ and } (U \bullet V^T)^T \bullet S_k \subset S_k \quad (12.19.1.16)$$

and

$$U \bullet \int \lambda v_\alpha d\alpha = \int \lambda (U \bullet v_\alpha) d\alpha. \quad (12.19.1.17)$$

*Proof.* By Definition 12.19.1.6

$$U \bullet \int \lambda v_\alpha d\alpha = U \bullet (V^T \bullet \lambda) = (U \bullet V^T) \bullet \lambda. \quad (12.19.1.18)$$

First, we will show that

$$(U \bullet v_\alpha)_{\alpha \in \mathbb{R}^k} = (U \bullet V^T)^T. \quad (12.19.1.19)$$

Take any  $\phi, \psi \in S_k$ .

$$\begin{aligned} \left( \int \phi(\alpha) (U \bullet v_\alpha) d\alpha \right) (\psi) &= \int \phi(\alpha) (U \bullet v_\alpha) (\psi) d\alpha = \left( \int \phi(\alpha) v_\alpha d\alpha \right) (U^T \bullet \psi) \\ &= (V^T \bullet \phi) (U^T \bullet \psi) = (U \bullet (V^T \bullet \phi)) (\psi) = ((U \bullet V^T) \bullet \phi) (\psi). \end{aligned} \quad (12.19.1.20)$$

We showed that (12.19.1.19). Note that by Theorem 12.19.1.11 and assumptions about  $U$  and  $V$ , we have  $(U \bullet V^T)^T \bullet S_k = (V \bullet U^T) \bullet S_k \subset S_k$ . Now, by Definition 12.19.1.6,

$$\int \lambda(U \bullet v_\alpha) d\alpha = (V \bullet U^T)^T \bullet \lambda = (U \bullet V^T) \bullet \lambda. \quad (12.19.1.21)$$

The above together with (12.19.1.18) gives thesis.  $\square$

## 12.20 Monday, 26 August 2019

**Definition 12.20.0.1.** Define  $\overline{(\cdot)} : S'_k \rightarrow S'_k$  as

$$\overline{u}(\phi) := \overline{u(\overline{\phi})}, \quad (12.20.0.1)$$

where  $u \in S'_k$  and  $\phi \in S_k$ .

Note that  $\overline{\Lambda_f} = \Lambda_{\overline{f}}$ . Indeed

$$\overline{\Lambda_f}(\phi) = \overline{\Lambda_f(\overline{\phi})} = \overline{\int f \overline{\phi}} = \int \overline{f} \phi = \Lambda_{\overline{f}}(\phi). \quad (12.20.0.2)$$

This justifies the above definition.

**Lemma 12.20.0.2.** If  $U \in S'_{2k}$  and  $\phi \in S_k$ , then

$$\overline{U \bullet \phi} = \overline{U} \bullet \overline{\phi}. \quad (12.20.0.3)$$

*Proof.* Take any  $\psi \in S_k$ .

$$\overline{U \bullet \phi}(\psi) = \overline{U(\phi \otimes \overline{\psi})} = \overline{U}(\overline{\phi} \otimes \psi) = \overline{U} \bullet \overline{\phi}(\psi). \quad (12.20.0.4)$$

$\square$

**Theorem 12.20.0.3.** If  $U \in S'_{2k}$ ,

$$\overline{U^T} = \overline{U}^T. \quad (12.20.0.5)$$

*Proof.* Take any  $\phi \in S_{2k}$

$$\overline{U^T}(\phi) = \overline{U^T(\overline{\phi})} = \overline{U(\overline{\phi}^T)} = \overline{U(\overline{\phi^T})} = \overline{U}(\phi^T) = \overline{U}^T(\phi). \quad (12.20.0.6)$$

$\square$

**Theorem 12.20.0.4.** *If  $U \in S'_{2k}$  and  $U^T \bullet S_k \subset S_k$  and  $v \in S'_k$ , then*

$$\overline{U \bullet v} = \overline{U} \bullet \overline{v}. \quad (12.20.0.7)$$

*Proof.* Take any  $\phi \in S_k$ .

$$\overline{U \bullet v}(\phi) = \overline{v(U^T \bullet \phi)} = \overline{v}(\overline{U^T \bullet \phi}) = (\overline{U} \bullet \overline{v})(\phi). \quad (12.20.0.8)$$

□

**Theorem 12.20.0.5.** *Let  $U \in S'_{2k}$  and  $u : \mathbb{R}^k \rightarrow S'_k$  be a family of tempered distributions such that  $U = (u_\alpha)_{\alpha \in \mathbb{R}^k}$ , then*

$$\overline{U} = (\overline{u_\alpha})_{\alpha \in \mathbb{R}^k}. \quad (12.20.0.9)$$

*Proof.* Take any  $\psi \in S_k$ .

$$\begin{aligned} \int_{\mathbb{R}^k} \phi(\alpha) \overline{u_\alpha}(\psi) d\alpha &= \int_{\mathbb{R}^k} \phi(\alpha) \overline{u_\alpha(\overline{\psi})} d\alpha = \overline{\int_{\mathbb{R}^k} \phi(\alpha) u_\alpha(\overline{\psi}) d\alpha} \\ &= \overline{(U^T \bullet \overline{\phi})(\overline{\psi})} = (\overline{U^T \bullet \phi})(\psi). \end{aligned} \quad (12.20.0.10)$$

□

**Theorem 12.20.0.6.** *Let  $U \in S'_{2k}$  and  $u : \mathbb{R}^k \rightarrow S'_k$  be a family of tempered distributions such that  $U = (u_\alpha)_{\alpha \in \mathbb{R}^k}$  and  $U \bullet S_k \subset S_k$ . Let  $\lambda \in S'_k$ . Then*

$$\overline{\int \lambda u_\alpha d\alpha} = \int \overline{\lambda} \overline{u_\alpha} d\alpha. \quad (12.20.0.11)$$

*Proof.* We get this immediately by Theorem 12.20.0.5 and by Theorem 12.20.0.4. □

**Definition 12.20.0.7.** *Let  $U \in S'_k$  and  $U^T \bullet S_k \subset S_k$  and  $u : \mathbb{R}^k \rightarrow S'_k$  is a family of tempered distributions such that  $(u_\alpha)_{\alpha \in \mathbb{R}^k} = U$ . For any  $v \in S'_k$  we define*

$$\langle v | u_\alpha \rangle := U \bullet \overline{v}. \quad (12.20.0.12)$$

**Theorem 12.20.0.8.** *Let  $U \in S'_k$  and  $U^T \bullet S_k \subset S_k$  and  $u : \mathbb{R}^k \rightarrow S'_k$  is a family of tempered distributions such that  $(u_\alpha)_{\alpha \in \mathbb{R}^k} = U$ .*

*Let  $V \in S'_k$  and  $V \bullet S_k \subset S_k$  and  $v : \mathbb{R}^k \rightarrow S'_k$  is a family of tempered distributions such that  $(v_\beta)_{\beta \in \mathbb{R}^k} = V$ . If  $\lambda \in S'_k$ , then*

$$\int \overline{\lambda} \langle v_\beta | u_\alpha \rangle d\beta = \left\langle \int \lambda v_\beta \middle| u_\alpha \right\rangle. \quad (12.20.0.13)$$

*Proof.*

$$\int \bar{\lambda} \langle v_\beta | u_\alpha \rangle d\beta = \int \bar{\lambda} (U \bullet \bar{v}_\beta) d\beta = U \bullet \int \bar{\lambda} \bar{v}_\beta d\beta = U \bullet \overline{\int \lambda v_\beta d\beta} = \left\langle \int \lambda v_\beta \middle| u_\alpha \right\rangle. \quad (12.20.0.14)$$

The second equality in the above equation is by Theorem 12.19.1.13, the third equality is by Theorem 12.20.0.6.  $\square$

**Definition 12.20.0.9.** A family of tempered distributions  $u : \mathbb{R}^k \rightarrow S'_k$  is called an orthonormal continous basis of  $S'_k$  iff

1. There exists  $U \in S'_{2k}$  such that  $U \bullet S_k \subset S_k$  and  $(u_\alpha)_{\alpha \in \mathbb{R}^k} = U$ .

2. For any  $v \in S'_k$  there exists  $\lambda \in S'_k$  such that

$$v = \int \lambda u_\alpha d\alpha. \quad (12.20.0.15)$$

3. we have

$$\langle u_\beta | u_\alpha \rangle = \delta_\beta \quad (12.20.0.16)$$

for any  $\beta \in \mathbb{R}^k$ .

**Theorem 12.20.0.10.** Let  $u : \mathbb{R}^k \rightarrow S'_k$  be a family of tempered distributions.  $u_\alpha$  is an orthonormal continous basis of  $S'_k$  iff there exists an  $U \in S'_{2k}$  such that  $U \bullet S_k \subset S_k$ ,  $U \bullet \bar{U}^T = \bar{U}^T \bullet U = I$  and  $(u_\alpha)_{\alpha \in \mathbb{R}^k} = U$ .

## 12.21 Wednesday, 28 August 2019

### 12.21.1 Rigorous Dirac Formulation - continuation (2)

We will rewrite reasonings from 12.19.1 in more generic way. That will hopefully enable us later to apply this apparatus to mix of continous and discrete orthonormal basis.

**Topological preparation** We will use symbol  $\hookrightarrow$  to denote continuous embedding.

**Definition 12.21.1.1.** Let  $S$  be TVS. For any  $y \in S'$  and  $x \in S$ , we define  $(\cdot, \cdot) : S \times S' \rightarrow \mathbb{C}$  as

$$(x, y) := y(x). \quad (12.21.1.1)$$

**Definition 12.21.1.2.** Let  $S$  be a TVS. We say that  $S$  is embeded continously and comunicativly in  $S'$  and we denote this by  $S \hookrightarrow_C S'$  if for identity mapping  $i : S \rightarrow S'$  holds

$$(\phi, i(\psi)) = (\psi, i(\phi)) \quad (12.21.1.2)$$

for any  $\phi, \psi \in S$ .

Usually we will omit  $i$  writing only  $(\phi, \psi) = (\psi, \phi)$ .

**Corollary 12.21.1.3.** Let  $S$  be a TVS such that  $S \hookrightarrow_C S'$ . Then

$$(\phi, \psi) = (\psi, \phi) \text{ for all } \phi, \psi \in S. \quad (12.21.1.3)$$

*Proof.* This follows directly from Definition 12.21.1.2 □

Unless stated otherwise,  $S'$  in this section carries weak-\* topology.

We define trasposition of continuous linear map after [Tre70]. We will use  $A^t$  in subscript instead of inconvenient for edition in latex  ${}^tA$ .

**Definition 12.21.1.4.** Let  $X, Y$  be TVS. For any continuous and linear  $A : X \rightarrow Y$  we define  $A^t : Y' \rightarrow X'$  as follows

$$(A^t u) := u \circ A. \quad (12.21.1.4)$$

**Corollary 12.21.1.5.** Let  $X, Y$  be TVS. If  $A : X \rightarrow Y$  is a continuous linear mapping,  $A^t : Y' \rightarrow X'$  is continous in weak-\* topologies.

**Theorem 12.21.1.6.** If  $E$  is a locally convex Hausdorff TVS, then  $(E')'$  is isomorphic to  $E$  with isomorphism  $(E')' \ni L \mapsto x_L \in E$  where  $x'(x_L) = L(x')$  for any  $x' \in E'$ .

*Proof.* [See Tre70, 35.1] □

After [Tre70] for topological space  $E$ , we will denote weak-\* topology on  $E'$  as  $\sigma(E', E)$ . Note that topology  $\sigma(E', E)$  doesn't depend on topology of  $E$ . Obviously  $E'$  as set depends on topology of  $E$ .

**Theorem 12.21.1.7.** Let  $E$  be a metrizable locally convex TVS and  $F$  be a locally convex Hausdorff TVS, and  $A : E \rightarrow F$  is linear. If  $A$  is continous when  $E$  carries topology  $\sigma(E, E')$  and  $F$  carries topology  $\sigma(F, F')$ , then  $A$  is continous in original topologies of  $E$  and  $F$ .

*Proof.* [See Tre70, 37.6] □

**Theorem 12.21.1.8.** *Let  $S$  be a Fréchet space. For any continuous linear mapping  $A : S \rightarrow S'$ , a mapping  $A^t : (S'' = S) \rightarrow S'$  is continuous as a mapping  $S \rightarrow S'$  ( $S'$  with weak-\* topology) and*

$$(\psi, A\phi) = (\phi, A^t\psi) \quad (12.21.1.5)$$

for any  $\phi, \psi \in S$ .

*Proof.* By Corollary 12.21.1.5  $A^t : S'' \rightarrow S'$  is continuous in weak-\* topologies. By Theorem 12.21.1.6 we may substitute  $S = S''$ . Then  $A^t : S \rightarrow S'$  is continuous when  $S$  carries topology  $\sigma(S, S') = \sigma(S'', S')$  and  $S'$  carries  $\sigma(S', S) = \sigma(S', S'')$ . By Theorem 10.5.2.28  $S'$  is a locally convex Hausdorff space, thus by Theorem 12.21.1.7,  $A^t : S \rightarrow S'$  is continuous in original topologies  $S$  in  $S'$  (for  $S'$  this is still weak-\* topology). The equation (12.21.1.5) follows from Corollary 12.21.1.5. Indeed  $(\psi, A\phi) = (A\phi)(\psi) = (A^t\psi)(\phi) = (\phi, A^t\psi)$ .  $\square$

**Corollary 12.21.1.9.** *Let  $S$  be a Fréchet space. If  $A : S \rightarrow S'$  and  $B : S \rightarrow S'$  are continuous linear maps such as  $(\psi, A\phi) = (\phi, B\psi)$  for all  $\phi, \psi \in S$  then  $A^t = B$ .*

**Corollary 12.21.1.10.** *Let  $S$  be a Fréchet space. If  $A : S \rightarrow S'$  is a continuous linear map, then  $(A^t)^t = A$ .*

**Theorem 12.21.1.11.** *Let  $S$  be a Fréchet space and  $S \hookrightarrow S'$ . If  $A : S \rightarrow S'$  is a continuous linear mapping such that  $A(S) \subset S$ , then  $A$  is continuous as  $A : S \rightarrow S$ .*

*Proof.* It is enough to prove that the graph of the linear mapping  $S \ni \phi \mapsto A\phi \in S$  is closed and then by Theorem 10.5.2.14 (The closed graph theorem) it will be immediately proven that the mapping is continuous. Take any  $\phi_n \rightarrow \phi$  in  $S$ , such that  $A\phi_n \rightarrow v$  in  $S$ . Since  $A : S \rightarrow S'$  is continuous, we have  $A\phi_n \rightarrow A\phi$  in  $S'$ . But since  $S \hookrightarrow S'$ ,  $A\phi_n \rightarrow v$  in  $S'$ . By Theorem 10.5.2.28  $S'$  is a locally convex Hausdorff space, thus  $A\phi = v$ . We showed that the graph of  $A$  is closed what completes the proof.  $\square$

**Theorem 12.21.1.12.** *Let  $S$  be a Fréchet space and  $S \hookrightarrow_C S'$ . If  $A : S \rightarrow S'$  is a continuous linear mapping and  $A^t(S) \subset S$ , we can extend  $A$  to a continuous linear mapping  $A_\bullet : S' \rightarrow S'$  in the following way*

$$(A_\bullet u)(\phi) = (A^t\phi, u). \quad (12.21.1.6)$$

*Proof.* It's clear that  $A_\bullet : S' \rightarrow S'$  is continuous in weak-\* topology. It is enough to show that extension is consistent with  $A : S \rightarrow S'$ . Indeed, take any  $\phi, \psi \in S$ . By Corollary 12.21.1.3 and Theorem 12.21.1.5, we have  $(A^t\phi, \psi) = (\psi, A^t\phi) = (\phi, A\psi) = (A\psi)(\phi)$ .  $\square$

**Definition 12.21.1.13.** Let  $S$  be a Fréchet space and  $S \hookrightarrow_C S'$ . If  $A : S \rightarrow S'$  is a continuous linear mapping and  $A^t(S) \subset S$ . by  $A_\bullet$  we will denote the extension of  $A$  from Theorem 12.21.1.12.

**Remark 12.21.1.14.** Let  $S$  be a Fréchet space and  $S \hookrightarrow_C S'$ . If  $A : S \rightarrow S'$  is a continuous linear mapping and  $A^t(S) \subset S$ , then

$$(\phi, A_\bullet u) = (A^t \phi, u) \quad (12.21.1.7)$$

for any  $u \in S'$  and any  $\phi \in S$ .

*Proof.* Follows directly from Theorem 12.21.1.12.  $\square$

**Theorem 12.21.1.15.** Let  $S$  be a Fréchet space and  $S \hookrightarrow_C S'$ . If  $A \in L(S, S')$  with  $A^t(S) \subset S$  and  $B \in L(S, S')$  with  $B^t(S) \subset S$ , then  $(A_\bullet B)^t = B^t A^t$ .

*Proof.* Take any  $\psi, \phi \in S$ .

$$(\psi, A_\bullet B \phi) = (A^t \psi, B \phi) = (\phi, B^t A^t \psi). \quad (12.21.1.8)$$

The first equality is by Theorem 12.21.1.5 and the second equality is by Theorem 12.21.1.10. Now by Corollary 12.21.1.10 we have thesis.  $\square$

**Theorem 12.21.1.16.** Let  $S$  be a Fréchet space and  $S \hookrightarrow_C S'$ . If  $A \in L(S, S')$  with  $A^t(S) \subset S$  and  $B \in L(S, S')$  with  $B^t(S) \subset S$ , then  $(A_\bullet B)_\bullet = A_\bullet B_\bullet$ .

*Proof.* Take any  $u \in S'$  and  $\phi \in S$ .

$$(\phi, A_\bullet B_\bullet u) = (A^t \phi, B_\bullet u) = (B^t A^t \phi, u) = ((A_\bullet B)^t \phi, u) = (\phi, (A_\bullet B)_\bullet). \quad (12.21.1.9)$$

The first two equalities are by Remark 12.21.1.14. Third equality is by Theorem 12.21.1.15. And again the last equality is by Remark 12.21.1.14.  $\square$

**Theorem 12.21.1.17.** Let  $S$  be a Fréchet space and  $S \hookrightarrow_C S'$ . If  $A : S \rightarrow S'$  is a continuous linear mapping such that  $A : S \xrightarrow[onto]{1-1} S$  and  $A^t : S \xrightarrow[onto]{1-1} S$ , then  $(A^{-1})^t = (A^t)^{-1}$ .

*Proof.* Take any  $\psi, \phi \in S$ . Consider

$$(A^{-1} \psi, \phi) = (A^{-1} \psi, A^t (A^t)^{-1} \phi) = ((A^t)^{-1} \phi, A A^{-1} \psi) = ((A^t)^{-1} \phi, \psi). \quad (12.21.1.10)$$

Since  $S \hookrightarrow_C S'$ , we have

$$(\phi, A^{-1} \psi) = (\psi, (A^t)^{-1} \phi). \quad (12.21.1.11)$$

Thus by Corollary 12.21.1.9 we proved thesis.  $\square$



We will assume axiomatic definition of vector complex conjugate

**Definition 12.21.1.18.** Let  $S$  be a TVS such that  $S \hookrightarrow_C S'$ . Mapping  $\overline{(\cdot)} : S \rightarrow S$  will be called a vector complex conjugate iff the following conditions are satisfied

1.  $\overline{(\cdot)} : S \rightarrow S$  is continuous antilinear mapping
2.  $\overline{\overline{\phi}} = \phi$  for any  $\phi \in S$ .
3.  $(\phi, \overline{\psi}) = \overline{(\overline{\phi}, \psi)}$  for any  $\phi, \psi \in S$ .

**Definition 12.21.1.19.** Let  $S$  be a TVS such that  $S \hookrightarrow_C S'$ . For any  $u \in S'$  we define  $\overline{u}$  such that

$$\overline{u}(\phi) := \overline{u(\overline{\phi})}. \quad (12.21.1.12)$$

**Corollary 12.21.1.20.** Let  $S$  be a TVS such that  $S \hookrightarrow_C S'$ . If  $u \in S'$ , then  $\overline{u} \in S'$ .

**Corollary 12.21.1.21.** Let  $S$  be a TVS such that  $S \hookrightarrow_C S'$ . Then  $\overline{(\cdot)} : S' \rightarrow S'$  is a continuous antilinear mapping such that  $\overline{\overline{u}} = u$  for any  $u \in S'$ .

**Corollary 12.21.1.22.** Let  $S$  be a TVS such that  $S \hookrightarrow_C S'$ .

$$(\phi, \overline{u}) = \overline{(\overline{\phi}, u)} \text{ for any } \phi \in S \text{ and } u \in S'. \quad (12.21.1.13)$$

**Corollary 12.21.1.23.** Let  $S$  be a TVS such that  $S \hookrightarrow_C S'$  and  $i : S \rightarrow S'$  is identity mapping.

$$i\overline{\phi} = \overline{i\phi} \text{ for any } \phi \in S. \quad (12.21.1.14)$$

The above means simply that the definition of  $\overline{(\cdot)}$  coincide on elements from  $S$  and  $S'$ .

**Definition 12.21.1.24.** Let  $S$  be a TVS such that  $S \hookrightarrow_C S'$ .

$$\langle \phi | u \rangle := (\overline{\phi}, u). \quad (12.21.1.15)$$

**Definition 12.21.1.25.** Let  $S$  be a TVS such that  $S \hookrightarrow_C S'$  and  $A \in L(S, S')$ .

$$A^* \phi = \overline{A^t \overline{\phi}} \text{ for any } \phi \in S. \quad (12.21.1.16)$$

**Theorem 12.21.1.26.** Let  $S$  be a Fréchet space such that  $S \hookrightarrow_C S'$ . If  $A \in L(S, S')$ , then  $A^* \in L(S, S')$  and

$$\langle \phi | A\psi \rangle = \overline{\langle \psi | A^* \phi \rangle} \text{ for any } \phi, \psi \in S. \quad (12.21.1.17)$$

*Proof.*

$$\langle \phi | A\psi \rangle = (\overline{\phi}, A\psi) = (\psi, A^t \overline{\phi}) = \overline{(\psi, A^t \overline{\phi})} = \overline{(\overline{\psi}, \overline{A^t \overline{\phi}})} = \overline{\langle \overline{\psi} | \overline{A^* \phi} \rangle}. \quad (12.21.1.18)$$

□

### In context of measurable spaces

**Definition 12.21.1.27.** Let  $(\Omega, \mu)$  be a measurable space. We will denote by  $F(\Omega)$  a vector space of all complex valued measurable functions and by  $F_0(\Omega)$  a vector space of all measurable functions equal 0 almost everywhere in  $\mu$ .

Let  $S$  be a vector subspace of  $F(\Omega)/F_0(\Omega)$ . We define

$$F_\mu(\Omega; S) := \{u \in F(\Omega)/F_0(\Omega) : S \ni \phi \mapsto \int u\phi d\mu \in \mathbb{C} \text{ is continuous}\} \quad (12.21.1.19)$$

We will endow  $F_\mu(\Omega; S)$  with weak-\* topology generated by  $S$ .

In the context of measurable space  $(\Omega, \mu)$  for any  $f \in F(\Omega)$

$$[f] := \{g \in F(\Omega) : f - g \in F_0(\Omega)\}. \quad (12.21.1.20)$$

It is important to note that in general it might be not true that  $F_\mu(\Omega; S) \hookrightarrow S'$ , because you might find  $u \in F_\mu(\Omega; S)$  such that  $u \neq 0$  for which  $\int u\phi d\mu = 0$  for all  $\psi \in S$ . That's because  $S$  might be “too small” to separate all elements from  $F_\mu(\Omega; S)$ . Hence the need of the following definition.

**Definition 12.21.1.28.** Let  $S$  be as in Definition 12.21.1.27. We assume that  $S$  is TVS with its own topology. Let  $E$  be a vector subspace of  $F_\mu(\Omega; S)$  and  $E$  carries weak-\* topology generated by  $S$ . We will say that  $S$  is strongly  $L^2$  embedded in  $E$  and denote this by  $S \hookrightarrow_{L^2} E$  iff  $S \hookrightarrow L^2(\Omega; \mathbb{C}) \hookrightarrow E \hookrightarrow S'$

The following theorem will show that such  $E$  might exist.

**Theorem 12.21.1.29.** Let  $(\Omega, \mu)$  be a measurable space. Let  $S$  be as in Definition 12.21.1.27. Let  $S$  be TVS with its own topology. If  $S \hookrightarrow L^2(\Omega; \mathbb{C})$  and  $S$  is dense in  $L^2(\Omega; \mathbb{C})$ , then  $S \hookrightarrow_{L^2} L^2(\Omega; \mathbb{C})$ .

*Proof.* Since  $S$  is embedded continuously in  $L^2(\Omega)$ , it is easy to show that  $L^2(\Omega) \subset F_\mu(\Omega; S)$ . Indeed, consider the inequality below for any  $\phi, \phi_n, \psi \in L^2(\Omega)$ .

$$\left| \int \psi \phi_n d\mu - \int \psi \phi d\mu \right| = \left| \int \psi (\phi_n - \phi) d\mu \right| \leq \|\psi\|_{L^2} \|\phi_n - \phi\|_{L^2} \quad (12.21.1.21)$$

Assume that  $\psi \in L^2(\Omega)$  and  $\phi_n \rightarrow \phi$  in  $S$ . Then  $\phi_n \rightarrow \phi$  in  $L^2(\Omega)$  and therefore  $\psi \in F_\mu(\Omega; S)$ . Let  $E := L^2(\Omega)$ . We will endow  $E$  with weak-\* topology generated by  $S$ . It is quite clear how to show that  $L^2(\Omega; \mathbb{C}) \hookrightarrow E$ . Consider again inequality (12.21.1.21) with  $\psi \in S$  and  $\phi_n \rightarrow \phi$  in  $L^2(\Omega)$ . By inequality (12.21.1.21) they converges in weak-\* topology generated by  $S$ , thus  $L^2(\Omega)$  is embedded continuously in  $E$ . We will show that  $E \hookrightarrow S'$ .

Let  $j : E \rightarrow S'$  in a way that  $j(u)(\phi) = \int u\phi d\mu$  for any  $u \in E$  and  $\phi \in S$ . Since both  $E$  and  $S'$  carries weak-\* topologies generated by  $S$ , it's clear that  $j$  is continuous. To prove that  $E \hookrightarrow S'$  it is enough to show that  $j$  is an injection. Take  $u \in E$  such that  $j(u) = 0$ , we will show that  $u = 0$ . Since  $S$  is dense in  $L^2(\Omega)$  we have  $S \ni \phi_n \rightarrow \bar{u}$  in  $L^2(\Omega)$ . Thus

$$0 = \int u\phi_n d\mu \rightarrow \int u\bar{u} d\mu = \|u\|_{L^2}^2. \quad (12.21.1.22)$$

Hence we have  $u = 0$ . We completed the reasoning that  $E \hookrightarrow S'$ .  $\square$

**Definition 12.21.1.30.** Let  $(\Omega, \mu)$  be a measurable space and let  $S$  be a vector subspace of  $F(\Omega)/F_0(\Omega)$ . We will say that  $\delta : \Omega \rightarrow S^*$  is a family of Dirac deltas iff for any  $f \in F(\Omega)$  such that  $[f] \in S$ , we have

$$\delta_\alpha(f) = f(\alpha) \text{ for almost all } \alpha \in \Omega. \quad (12.21.1.23)$$

**Definition 12.21.1.31.** Let  $(\Omega, \mu)$  be measurable space and let  $S$  be TVS. Let  $u : \Omega \rightarrow S'$ .

1. We will say that  $u$  is measurable iff  $\Omega \ni \alpha \mapsto u_\alpha(\phi)$  is measurable for any  $\phi \in S$ .

2.

$$\int_\Omega u_\alpha \mu(d\alpha) := v \in S' \quad (12.21.1.24)$$

if and only if

$$\int_\Omega u_\alpha(\phi) \mu(d\alpha) = v(\phi) \text{ for any } \phi \in S. \quad (12.21.1.25)$$

We say that integral from (12.21.1.24) exists if and only if such  $v \in S'$  exists.

**Theorem 12.21.1.32.** Let  $S$  be TVS and let  $E$  be a vector subspace of  $F_\mu(\Omega; S)$ . If  $S \hookrightarrow_{L^2} E$ , then  $S \hookrightarrow_C S'$ .

*Proof.* Since  $E$  carries weak-\* topology, we have  $E \hookrightarrow S'$ . Thus  $S \hookrightarrow S'$ . By Definition 12.21.1.28, for any  $\phi \in S$  and  $u \in E$  we have

$$(\phi, u) = \int u\phi d\mu. \quad (12.21.1.26)$$

Thus, for any  $\phi, \psi \in S$ , we have  $(\phi, \psi) = (\psi, \phi)$ .  $\square$

**Definition 12.21.1.33.** Let  $(\Omega, \mu)$  be a measurable space, let  $S$  be as in Definition 12.21.1.27 and let  $S'$  be a TVS. Let  $u : \Omega \rightarrow S'$  and let  $U : S \rightarrow S'$  be a continuous linear mapping. We define that

$$(u_\alpha)_{\mu; \alpha \in \Omega} := U \quad (12.21.1.27)$$

iff

$$U^t \phi = \int \phi(\alpha) u_\alpha \mu(d\alpha) \text{ for any } \phi \in S. \quad (12.21.1.28)$$

**Definition 12.21.1.34.** Let  $(\Omega, \mu)$  be a measurable space, let  $S$  be as in Definition 12.21.1.27 and let  $S'$  be a TVS. Let  $E$  be a vector subspace of  $F_\mu(\Omega; S')$ . We will say that  $u : \Omega \rightarrow S'$  is measurable of class  $E$  iff

$$[\Omega \ni \alpha \mapsto u_\alpha(\phi) \in \mathbb{C}] \in E \quad (12.21.1.29)$$

for any  $\phi \in S$ .

**Lemma 12.21.1.35.** Let  $(\Omega, \mu)$  be a measurable space, let  $S$  be as in Definition 12.21.1.27 and let  $S'$  be a Fréchet space. Let  $E$  be a vector subspace of  $F_\mu(\Omega; S')$  and  $S \hookrightarrow_{L^2} E$ . Let  $u : \Omega \rightarrow S'$  be measurable of class  $E$ . If  $U \in L(S, S')$  such that  $(u_\alpha)_{\mu; \alpha \in \Omega} = U$ , then

$$U\psi = [\Omega \ni \alpha \mapsto u_\alpha(\psi)] \text{ for any } \psi \in S. \quad (12.21.1.30)$$

*Proof.* Take any  $\psi \in S$ . Consider a linear functional

$$S \ni \phi \mapsto (\phi, U\psi) = (\psi, U^t \phi) = (\psi, \int \phi(\alpha) u_\alpha \mu(d\alpha)) = \int \phi(\alpha) u_\alpha(\psi) \mu(d\alpha) \quad (12.21.1.31)$$

This functional is clearly continuous as  $U\psi \in S'$ . Thus, by Definition 12.21.1.27, we have  $[\Omega \ni \alpha \mapsto u_\alpha(\psi)] \in F_\mu(\Omega; S')$ . But  $u : \Omega \rightarrow S'$  is measurable of class  $E$ , thus  $[\Omega \ni \alpha \mapsto u_\alpha(\psi)] \in E$ . Since  $E \hookrightarrow S'$ , it is apparent from (12.21.1.31) that  $[\Omega \ni \alpha \mapsto u_\alpha(\psi)] = U\psi$ .  $\square$

**Theorem 12.21.1.36.** Let  $(\Omega, \mu)$  be a measurable space, let  $S$  be as in Definition 12.21.1.27 and let  $S'$  be a Fréchet space. Let  $E$  be a vector subspace of  $F_\mu(\Omega; S')$  and  $S \hookrightarrow_{L^2} E$ . Let  $u : \Omega \rightarrow S'$  be measurable of class  $E$ . Let  $U \in L(S, S')$  and  $U(S) \subset S$  such that  $(u_\alpha)_{\mu; \alpha \in \Omega} = U$ . If  $f \in E$ , then

$$\int f(\alpha) u_\alpha \mu(d\alpha) = (U^t)_\bullet f. \quad (12.21.1.32)$$

*Proof.* By Lemma 12.21.1.35, we have  $[\Omega \ni \alpha \mapsto u_\alpha(\psi)] = U\psi$ . But because  $U(S) \subset S$ , we have  $U\psi \in S$ . Consider

$$(\psi, (U^t)_\bullet f) = (U\psi, f) = \int f(\alpha) u_\alpha(\psi) \mu(d\alpha). \quad (12.21.1.33)$$

□

Theorem 12.21.1.36 justifies the following definition.

**Definition 12.21.1.37.** Let  $(\Omega, \mu)$  be a measurable space and let  $S$  be a Fréchet space and  $S \hookrightarrow_C S'$ . Let  $U \in L(S, S')$  such that  $U(S) \subset S$  and let  $u : \Omega \rightarrow S'$  such that  $(u_\alpha)_{\mu; \alpha \in \Omega} = U$ . Let  $\lambda \in S'$ . We define

$$\int \lambda u_\alpha \mu(d\alpha) := (U^t)_\bullet \lambda. \quad (12.21.1.34)$$

**Theorem 12.21.1.38.** Let  $(\Omega, \mu)$  be a measurable space and let  $S$  be a Fréchet space and  $S \hookrightarrow_C S'$ . Let  $V \in L(S, S')$  such that  $V(S) \subset S$  and let  $v : \Omega \rightarrow S'$  be such that  $(v_\alpha)_{\mu; \alpha \in \Omega} = V$ . If  $U \in L(S, S')$  with  $U^t(S) \subset S$  and  $\lambda \in S'$ , then

$$(U_\bullet v_\alpha)_{\mu; \alpha \in \Omega} = (U_\bullet V^t)^t \text{ and } (U_\bullet V^t)^t(S) \subset S. \quad (12.21.1.35)$$

and

$$U_\bullet \int \lambda v_\alpha \mu(d\alpha) = \int \lambda (U_\bullet v_\alpha) \mu(d\alpha). \quad (12.21.1.36)$$

*Proof.* First we will show that  $(U_\bullet v_\alpha)_{\mu; \alpha \in \Omega} = (UV^t)^t$ . Take any  $\phi, \psi \in S$ .

$$\begin{aligned} (\psi, \int \phi(\alpha) U_\bullet v_\alpha \mu(d\alpha)) &= \int \phi(\alpha) (\psi, U_\bullet v_\alpha) \mu(d\alpha) = \int \phi(\alpha) (U^t \phi, v_\alpha) \mu(d\alpha) \\ &= (U^t \psi, \int \phi(\alpha) v_\alpha \mu(d\alpha)) = (U^t \psi, V^t \phi) = (\psi, U_\bullet V^t \phi). \end{aligned} \quad (12.21.1.37)$$

Now by Theorem 12.21.1.15, we have  $(U_\bullet V^t)^t = VU^t$ . This completes showing (12.21.1.35). Now, we will show (12.21.1.36).

$$U_\bullet \int \lambda v_\alpha \mu(d\alpha) = U_\bullet (V^t)_\bullet \lambda = (U_\bullet V^t)_\bullet = \int \lambda (U v_\alpha) \mu(d\alpha). \quad (12.21.1.38)$$

Where first equality is by Definition 12.21.1.37, second equality is by Theorem 12.21.1.16 and the last equality is by (12.21.1.35) and again Definition 12.21.1.37. □

**Corollary 12.21.1.39.** *Let  $(\Omega, \mu)$  be a measurable space, let  $S$  be as in Definition 12.21.1.27 and let  $S'$  be a Fréchet space. Let  $E$  be a vector subspace of  $F_\mu(\Omega; S)$  and  $S \hookrightarrow_{L^2} E$ . Let  $v : \Omega \rightarrow S'$  be measurable of class  $E$ . If  $V \in L(S, S')$  such that  $V : S \xrightarrow[\text{onto}]{1-1} S$  and  $V^t : S \xrightarrow[\text{onto}]{1-1} S$  and  $(v_\alpha)_{\mu; \alpha \in \Omega} = V$ , then  $\Omega \ni \alpha \mapsto ((V^t)^{-1})_\bullet v_\alpha$  is a family of Dirac deltas.*

*Proof.* By Theorem 12.21.1.17 we have  $((V^t)^{-1})^t = ((V^t)^t)^{-1}$ . Thus by Corollary 12.21.1.10  $((V^t)^{-1})^t = V^{-1}$ . Thus by Theorem 12.21.1.12  $((V^t)^{-1})_\bullet$  exists. Let  $u_\alpha := ((V^t)^{-1})_\bullet v_\alpha$ . Now by (12.21.1.36)  $(u_\alpha)_{\mu; \alpha \in \Omega} = (((V^t)^{-1})_\bullet V^t)^t = I$ . Now, by Lemma 12.21.1.35, we have

$$\psi = [\Omega \ni \alpha \mapsto u_\alpha(\psi)] \text{ for any } \psi \in S. \quad (12.21.1.39)$$

Thus by Definition 12.21.1.30,  $u_\alpha$  is a family of Dirac deltas.  $\square$

## 12.22 Sunday, 8 September 2019

### 12.22.1 Rigged Hilbert Space

Definitions for many terms used in this subsection are from [GV64].

**Definition 12.22.1.1.** *Let  $\Phi \subset H \subset \Phi'$  be a rigged Hilbert space and  $(\Omega, \mu)$  be measurable space where  $L_\mu^2(\Omega; \mathbb{C})$  is isomorphic with  $H$  through unitary operator  $U : H \rightarrow L_\mu^2(\Omega; \mathbb{C})$ . We call  $U$  a realisation of  $\Phi \subset H \subset \Phi'$  as a space of functions via isomorphism  $L_\mu^2(\Omega; \mathbb{C}) \cong H$ .*

When it doesn't cause disambiguity for any element  $\phi \in \Phi$  we will use the same symbol  $\phi$  to denote function  $U\phi$  and consequently  $\Phi$  to denote  $U(\Phi)$ . In that cases we will denote  $U$  symbolically as  $\phi \mapsto \phi(\alpha)$ .

**Definition 12.22.1.2.** *Let  $\phi \mapsto \phi(\alpha)$  be a realisation of a rigged Hilbert space  $\Phi \subset H \subset \Phi'$  as a space of functions via isomorphism  $L_\mu^2(\Omega; \mathbb{C}) \cong H$ . We will call  $\delta : \Omega \rightarrow \Phi'$  a family of Dirac deltas iff for any measurable  $f : \Omega \rightarrow \mathbb{C}$  such that  $[f] \in \Phi$  we have*

$$\delta_\alpha(f) = f(\alpha) \text{ for almost all } \alpha \in \Omega. \quad (12.22.1.1)$$

**Theorem 12.22.1.3.** *Let  $\phi \mapsto \phi(\alpha)$  be a realisation of a rigged Hilbert space  $\Phi \subset H \subset \Phi'$  as a space of functions via isomorphism  $L_\mu^2(\Omega; \mathbb{C}) \cong H$ . There exists a family of Dirac deltas  $\delta : \Omega \rightarrow \Phi'$ .*

*Proof.* [See GV64, Ch. I.4.3]  $\square$

From now in context of a a rigged Hilbert space  $\Phi \subset H \subset \Phi'$  on we will always use representation of  $[\phi] \in \Phi$  for which  $\phi(\alpha) = \delta_\alpha(\phi)$  for any  $\alpha \in \Omega$ .

## 12.23 Sunday, 23 January 2022

This is about alternative formulation of relativistic quantum theory, where we will introduce observables related to 4-momentum. Energy operator will be then

$$E\phi = i\hbar \frac{\partial}{\partial x^0} \phi, \quad (12.23.0.1)$$

(Hamiltonian in this interpretation will not have meaning identical with energy operator but will be related exactly as you would expect from Schrödinger's equation  $E\phi = H\phi$ ) and momentum as usual.

$$P_k\phi = -i\hbar \frac{\partial}{\partial x^k} \phi. \quad (12.23.0.2)$$

Consequently, we will have  $T$  time operator or  $X_0$  if one likes.

$$T\phi = x_0\phi. \quad (12.23.0.3)$$

Note that

$$[T, E] = -i\hbar. \quad (12.23.0.4)$$

Indeed,

$$\begin{aligned} [T, E]\phi &= (TE - ET)\phi = x_0 i\hbar \frac{\partial}{\partial x^0} \phi - i\hbar \frac{\partial}{\partial x^0} (x_0 \phi) \\ &= x_0 i\hbar \frac{\partial}{\partial x^0} \phi - i\hbar \phi - x_0 i\hbar \frac{\partial}{\partial x^0} \phi = -i\hbar \phi. \end{aligned}$$

The above is obviously a time-energy Heisenberg uncertainty principle.

Note that we immediately get an invariance of uncertainty principle under Lorentz transformation. Assume  $\beta \in (0, 1)$  is an arbitrary velocity ( $c = 1$ ) and  $\gamma = (1 - \beta^2)^{-1/2}$ . Let's take a Lorentz transformation of 4-vector observables

$$X' = \gamma X - \beta \gamma T, \quad (12.23.0.5)$$

$$T' = \gamma T - \beta \gamma X. \quad (12.23.0.6)$$

Let's take also Lorentz transformation of 4-momentum observables

$$P'_x = \gamma P_x - \beta \gamma E, \quad (12.23.0.7)$$

$$E' = \gamma E - \beta \gamma P_x. \quad (12.23.0.8)$$

For this moment we may forget definitions of our operators. All that matters are their commutators  $[X, P_x] = i\hbar$  and  $[T, E] = -i\hbar$  and  $[X, T] = [P_x, E] = [T, P_x] = [X, E] = 0$  (Note that commutation relations are analogous to Minkowski's metric tensor which corresponds nicely with why energy operator is defined with opposite sign than momentum operator).

Indeed,

$$[X', P'_x] = \gamma^2 [X, P_x] + \beta^2 \gamma^2 [T, E] = i\hbar \frac{1 - \beta^2}{1 - \beta^2} = i\hbar. \quad (12.23.0.9)$$

$$[T', E'] = \gamma^2 [T, E] + \beta^2 \gamma^2 [X, P_x] = i\hbar \frac{\beta^2 - 1}{1 - \beta^2} = -i\hbar. \quad (12.23.0.10)$$

Invariance of  $[X, P_x] = i\hbar$  and  $[T, E] = -i\hbar$  has fundamental meaning given the defining role of these commutators in quantum mechanics. We can express it that we got exactly the same quantum mechanics in each Lorentz frame of reference.

Interpretation of this formulation of quantum mechanics, which will give us the same results as at least classical quantum mechanics for non-relativistic case is following. We treat  $\phi$  as a quantum state which describes the whole history of a particle. When we want to know what are the properties of the particle in time  $t$  for a given frame of reference, we collapse state  $\phi$  by projecting it on the subspace  $\{\psi : T\psi = t\psi\}$ , I. e, we first make an assumption that we have just measured time  $T$  of the state  $\phi$  and got measurement  $t$ , then we can do any other sort of things on the collapsed state to establish its property at time  $t$ .

## 12.24 Sunday, 07 March 2022

Let assume we have a group  $U(\varepsilon)$  of linear transformations of  $\mathbb{R}^n$ . Let  $A$  be it's generator, i.e:

$$\left. \frac{d}{d\varepsilon} U(\varepsilon)x \right|_{\varepsilon=0} = Ax. \quad (12.24.0.1)$$



or using Einstein summation convention:

$$\left. \frac{d}{d\varepsilon} U(\varepsilon)^\mu_\nu x^\nu \right|_{\varepsilon=0} = A^\mu_\nu x^\nu. \quad (12.24.0.2)$$

or in exponential form

$$U(\varepsilon) = e^{\varepsilon A}. \quad (12.24.0.3)$$

Consider transformation on  $\phi : \mathbb{R}^n \rightarrow \mathbb{C}$  defined as

$$(\hat{U}(\varepsilon)\phi)(x) := \phi(U(-\varepsilon)x). \quad (12.24.0.4)$$

Note that  $\hat{U}(\varepsilon)$  moves the shape of function  $\phi$  against its domain exactly in the same direction as  $U(\varepsilon)$  transforms domain. Note that

$$\begin{aligned} \left. \frac{d}{d\varepsilon} (\hat{U}(\varepsilon)\phi)(x) \right|_{\varepsilon=0} &= \left. \frac{d}{d\varepsilon} \phi(U(-\varepsilon)x) \right|_{\varepsilon=0} \\ &= \partial_\mu \phi(U(-\varepsilon)x) \left. \frac{d}{d\varepsilon} U(-\varepsilon)^\mu_\nu x^\nu \right|_{\varepsilon=0} = -\partial_\mu \phi(x) A^\mu_\nu x^\nu. \end{aligned} \quad (12.24.0.5)$$

Thus generator of  $\hat{U}(\varepsilon)$  denoted as  $\hat{A}$  is given by

$$(\hat{A}\phi)(x) = -\partial_\mu \phi(x) A^\mu_\nu x^\nu. \quad (12.24.0.6)$$

## 12.25 Saturday, 26 November 2022

Some considerations relevant to subsection 6.11.1

We will make now further assumptions to simplify calculations. We will assume that perturbation is very slowly “turned on” in the past  $t_0 \rightarrow -\infty$  and that there is certain fixed perturbation frequency  $\omega$ , so that  $W(t) = e^{\varepsilon t} W e^{-i\omega t}$  (note that  $\varepsilon$  is different small number than  $\varepsilon$ ), where  $W$  is certain constant in time perturbation operator. Note also that such  $W(t)$  is not self-adjoint. Purpose of this will be explained later. If you feel uncomfortable with this, just set  $\omega = 0$  for the time being.

To make notation simpler use  $\omega_{\beta\alpha} = E_\beta - E_\alpha$  and  $W_{\beta\alpha} = \langle \phi_\beta | W | \phi_\alpha \rangle$ .

Note that with above assumptions, we have

$$\rho_n^{\gamma_n, \gamma_0}(t) = \int_{-\infty}^t ds_n \int_{-\infty}^{s_n} ds_{n-1} \cdots \int_{-\infty}^{s_2} ds_1 \int d\gamma_{n-1} \cdots \int d\gamma_1 \prod_{k=1}^n \exp(is_k(\omega_{\gamma_k \gamma_{k-1}} - \omega - i\varepsilon)) W_{\gamma_k \gamma_{k-1}}. \quad (12.25.0.1)$$

For fixed  $\alpha = \gamma_0, \gamma_1, \dots, \gamma_{n-1}, \gamma_n = \beta$ , let's define

$$\sigma_{n,m}(t)[f] = \int_{-\infty}^t ds_n \int_{-\infty}^{s_n} ds_{n-1} \cdots \prod_{k=m+1}^n \exp(is_k(\omega_{\gamma_k \gamma_{k-1}} - \omega - i\epsilon)) \int_{-\infty}^{s_{m+1}} f ds_m \quad (12.25.0.2)$$

Note that

$$\rho_n^{\gamma_n, \gamma_0}(t) = \int d\gamma_{n-1} \cdots \int d\gamma_1 \prod_{k=1}^n W_{\gamma_k \gamma_{k-1}} \sigma_{n,1}(t)[\exp(is(\omega_{\gamma_1 \gamma_0} - \omega - i\epsilon))]. \quad (12.25.0.3)$$

Note the following basic properties of  $\sigma_{n,m}(t)[f]$ :

$$\begin{cases} \sigma_{n,n}(t)[f] = \int_{-\infty}^t f(s) ds, \\ \sigma_{n,m}(t)[f] = \sigma_{n,m+1}(t)[\exp(is(\omega_{\gamma_{m+1} \gamma_m} - \omega - i\epsilon)) \int_{-\infty}^s f(s') ds'], \end{cases} \quad (12.25.0.4)$$

and thus

$$\begin{aligned} & \sigma_{n,m}(t)[\exp(is(\omega_{\gamma_m \alpha} - m\omega - mi\epsilon))] \\ &= \frac{-i}{\omega_{\gamma_m \alpha} - m\omega - im\epsilon} \sigma_{n,m+1}(t)[\exp(is(\omega_{\gamma_{m+1} \alpha} - (m+1)\omega - (m+1)i\epsilon))]. \end{aligned} \quad (12.25.0.5)$$

Hence

$$\begin{aligned} \rho_n^{\beta, \alpha}(t) &= \\ & (-i)^n \frac{e^{n\epsilon t} e^{it(\omega_{\beta \alpha} - n\omega)}}{\omega_{\beta \alpha} - n\omega - ni\epsilon} \int d\gamma_{n-1} \cdots \int d\gamma_1 \prod_{k=1}^n W_{\gamma_k \gamma_{k-1}} \prod_{k=1}^{n-1} \frac{1}{\omega_{\gamma_k \alpha} - k\omega - ik\epsilon}. \end{aligned}$$

Let's give explicit formulas for  $\omega = 0$ :

$$\rho_1^{\beta, \alpha}(t) = -i \frac{e^{\epsilon t} e^{it\omega_{\beta \alpha}}}{\omega_{\beta \alpha} - i\epsilon} W_{\beta \alpha}, \quad (12.25.0.6)$$

$$\rho_2^{\beta, \alpha}(t) = -i \frac{e^{2\epsilon t} e^{it\omega_{\beta \alpha}}}{\omega_{\beta \alpha} - i2\epsilon} \int d\gamma \frac{W_{\beta \gamma} W_{\gamma \alpha}}{\omega_{\gamma \alpha} - i\epsilon}. \quad (12.25.0.7)$$

# Bibliography

- [BCL<sup>+</sup>12] Denys Bondar, Renan Cabrera, Robert Lompay, Misha Yu Ivanov, and Herschel Rabitz. Operational dynamic modeling transcending quantum and classical mechanics. *Physical review letters*, 109:190403, 11 2012.
- [BP02] Heinz-Peter Breuer and Francesco Petruccione. *The Theory of Open Quantum Systems*. Oxford University Press, 2002.
- [CGCARB19] Renan Cabrera, Andre Gontijo Campos, Herschel A. Rabitz, and Denys Bondar. Operational dynamical modeling of spin 1/2 relativistic particles: The dirac equation and its classical limit. *The European Physical Journal Special Topics*, 227, 01 2019.
- [Cla05] George W. Clark. The contributions of bruno b. rossi to particle physics and astrophysics. *Proceedings of Atti del XXV Congresso Nazionale di Storia della Fisica e dell’Astronomia*, pages R1.1–R1.16, 2005.
- [Col12] Susan Jane Colley. *Vector Calculus*. Pearson Education, Inc., 4th edition, 2012.
- [Des10] Bipin R. Desai. *Quantum Mechanics with Basic Field Theory*. Cambridge University Press, 2010.
- [Dir81] P.A.M. Dirac. *The Principles of Quantum Mechanics*. Oxford University Press, 1981.
- [dlM05] Rafael de la Madrid. The role of the rigged hilbert space in quantum mechanics. *European Journal of Physics*, 26(2):287–312, feb 2005.

- [Dra08] A Dragić. Measurement of cosmic ray muon flux in the belgrade ground level and underground laboratories. *Nuclear Instruments and Methods in Physics Research, Section A: Accelerators, Spectrometers, Detectors and Associated Equipment*, 591:470–475, 2008.
- [DT12] Riccardo D’Auria and Mario Trigiante. *From Special Relativity to Feynman Diagrams. A Course of Theoretical Particle Physics for Beginners*. Springer-Verlag Italia, 2012.
- [Dud02] R. M. Dudley. *Real Analysis and Probability*. Cambridge University Press, 2002.
- [Geo15] Svetlin G. Georgiev. *Theory of Distributions*. Springer International Publishing Switzerland, 2015.
- [GG03] Manuel Gadella and F Gómez. On the mathematical basis of the dirac formulation of quantum mechanics. *International Journal of Theoretical Physics*, 42:2225–2254, 01 2003.
- [Gie00] François Gieres. Mathematical surprises and dirac’s formalism in quantum mechanics. *Reports on Progress in Physics*, 63(12), 2000.
- [Gre01] Walter Greiner. *Quantum Mechanics. An introduction*. Springer-Verlag Berlin, 4th edition, 2001.
- [GV64] I. M. Gel’fand and N. Ya. Vilenkin. *Generalized Functions*, volume 4. Applications of Harmonic Analysis. Academic Press, 1964.
- [Hal13] Brian C. Hall. *Quantum Theory for Mathematicians*. Number 267 in Graduate Texts in Mathematics. Springer, 2013.
- [hd] Jason DeVito (<https://math.stackexchange.com/users/331/jasondevito>). Sub-determinants of an orthogonal matrix. Mathematics Stack Exchange. URL:<https://math.stackexchange.com/q/122735> (version: 2012-03-21).
- [KN91] I. S. Kim and M. E. Noz. *Phase Space Picture of Qunatum Mechanics; Group Theoretical Approach*, volume 40 of *Lecture Notes in Physics Serie*. World Scientific Publishing, 1991.

- [KR83] Richard Y. Kadison and John R. Ringrose. *Fundamentals of the theory of operator algebras. Volume I: Elementary Theory*. Academic Press, Inc., united kingdom edition, 1983.
- [Kuo10] Yi-Hong Kuo. Determination of the angular distribution of cosmic rays at sea level. Bachelor's thesis, Massachusetts Institute of Technology, June 2010.
- [LB18] Tom Lancaster and J. Stephen Blundell. *Quantum Field Theory for the Gifted Amateur*. Oxford University Press, 2018.
- [Lou90] William H. Louisell. *Quantum Statistical Properties of Radiation*. John Wiley and Sons. Inc., wiley classics library edition published 1990 edition, 1990.
- [mat] *Mathematica 11.3*, Wolfram Research Inc. Version: 11.3.0.0, Platform: Linux x86 (64-bit).
- [Mau76] Krzysztof Maurin. *Analysis. Part I: Elements*. PWN - Polish Scientific Publishers, 1976.
- [Mau80] Krzysztof Maurin. *Analysis. Part II: Integration, Distributions, Holomorphic Functions, Tensor and Harmonic Analysis*. PWN - Polish Scientific Publishers, 1980.
- [MH08] L MICU and Horia Hulubei. On the two-body problem in quantum mechanics. *Romanian Journal of Physics*, 53, 01 2008.
- [Mik98] Milan Miklavcic. *Applied Functional Analysis and Partial Differential Equations*. World Scientific Publishing, 1998.
- [MJ03] Adrian C. Melissinos and Napolitano Jim. *Experiments in Modern Physics*. Academic Press, An imprint of Elsevier Science, 2003.
- [Moy49] J. E. Moyal. Quantum mechanics as a statistical theory. *Mathematical Proceedings of the Cambridge Philosophical Society*, 45(1):99–124, 1949.
- [Nel67] Edward Nelson. *Dynamical Theories of Brownian Motion*. Princeton University Press, second edition, august 2001. posted on the web edition, 1967.

- [RB80] Michael Reed and Simon Barry. *Methods of Modern Mathematical Physics. I: Functional Analysis*. Academic Press, Inc., revised and enlarged edition edition, 1980.
- [Ros30] Bruno Rossi. Method of registering multiple simultaneous impulses of several geiger's counters. *Nature*, 125:636, April 1930.
- [Rud76] Walter Rudin. *Principles of Mathematical Analysis*. McGraw Hill-Book Co., third edition edition, 1976.
- [Rud87] Walter Rudin. *Real And Complex Analysis*. McGraw Hill-Book Co., 1987.
- [Rud91] Walter Rudin. *Functional Analysis*. McGraw-Hill, Inc., international edition edition, 1991.
- [She13] P.J. Shepherd. *A Course in Theoretical Physics*. John Wiley & Sons, Ltd., 2013.
- [Spi95] Michael Spivak. *Calculus on Manifolds. A Modern Approach to Classical Theorems of Advanced Calculus*. Addison-Wesley Publishing Company, 1995.
- [Sup61] Patrick Suppes. Probability concepts in quantum mechanics. *Philosophy of Science*, 28(4):378–389, 1961.
- [Tes14] Gerald Teschl. *Mathematical Methods in Quantum Mechanics: With Applications to Schrodiner Operators*, volume 157 of *Graduate studies in mathematics*. American Mathematical Society, second edition edition, 2014.
- [Tho16] Mark Thomson. *Modern Particle Physics*. Cambridge University Press, 2016.
- [Tre70] Francois Trèves. *Topological Vector Spaces, Distributions and Kernels*. Academic Press, 1970.
- [VN82] Ya F Verolainen and A Ya Nikolaich. Radiative lifetimes of excited states of atoms. *Soviet Physics Uspekhi*, 25(6):431, 1982.
- [Von75] S. V. Vonsovsky. *Magnetism of Elementary Particles*. Mir Publishers, 1975.

- [Wal84] Robert M. Wald. *General Relativity*. The University of Chicago Press, 1984.
- [War83] Frank W. Warner. *Foundations of Differentiable Manifolds and Lie Groups*. Number 94 in Graduate Texts in Mathematics. Springer-Verlag Berlin Heidelberg GmbH, 1983.
- [Wei80] Joachim Weidmann. *Linear operators in Hilbert spaces*. Number 68 in Graduate texts in mathematics. Springer-Verlag New York Inc., 1980.